

## Preface

### Introduction

Welcome to the second volume of this course. The first volume laid a lot of ground work for learning and studying Greek and this volume, naturally, continues the study. It is now useful and possible to include quotations from the Greek New Testament; an innovation in showing these quotations is that the reference is printed in Greek, which gives more practice in reading Greek and an acquaintance with the titles of the books of the New Testament. All translations are mine; sometimes these can appear a little ‘clumsy’; the reason is that I wish ‘to show the joins’ in the translation so as to help with understanding the Greek. My more happy translations are probably subconscious memories of other translations with which I am familiar, possibly over-familiar.

From Lesson 32, when we begin the 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension, continuous passages are included for every lesson. These have been adapted from the Septuagint; I was very reluctant to adapt the New Testament since that is a sacred book.

### Acknowledgements

I would like to thank numerous people for their encouragement and assistance in preparing this course; it seems a pity to put them in any sort of order, because that can imply some idea of importance, but one needs to start somewhere! Firstly, I would like to thank Bishop Andrew Shergold of the Philippine Independent Catholic Church for his encouragement and advice in beginning to teach this subject; something I had never done before. Next I wish to thank all my students for their enthusiasm and desire to know more of this quite complex language. Their eye for detail has often exposed some embarrassing errors in my exercises. Their questions have often kept me on my toes; superficial explanations are dismissed with a demand for better reasons. Daphne Browne, one of my students, has been an excellent and pernickety proof reader; Beryl Spikings and Sandy Affleck graciously proof read my Questions and answers and Susan Garvin pointed out a number of errors. I also wish to thank Samantha Newington at the JACT Durham Greek and Latin Summer school for her encouragement in embarking on some adaptations so as to provide continuous texts; I wasn’t sure I could do it but Samantha said, ‘oh yes you can, Steve, you are quite advanced’. More recently, Terry Walsh, Head of Classics at Ratcliffe College, also at the Durham Summer School over a glass or three of wine, encouraged me in this venture and made numerous useful suggestions which kept me on the straight and narrow. Then, and this goes back more decades than I wish to recall, I would like to thank Miss Crisp and Mrs Susan Herbert who first taught me Classical Greek at evening classes in London. And finally, to my long-suffering wife Sue as I have spent much time on the preparation of this course.

### A note about the exercises

Generally, each Lesson contains *two* sets of exercises labelled A and B. The thinking is that one set of exercises should give sufficient practice, but if you would like extra practice, then do both! They should each be at about the same level of difficulty (or ease, if you prefer!).

Another strategy is to do the A exercises first and return to the B exercises after a few more lessons. The exercises *should* be a lot easier the second time round.

# Table of Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>i</b>
Introduction.....	i
Acknowledgements.....	i
A note about the exercises .....	i
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>ii</b>
<b>23. Lesson 23 – The Infinitive</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>23.1 Lesson 23 Outline</b> .....	1
23.2 Vocabulary Lesson 23 .....	2
23.3 The Infinitive .....	2
23.3.1 <i>The Infinitive in English</i> .....	2
23.3.2 <i>The Infinitive in Greek</i> .....	2
23.4 δύναμαι .....	4
23.5 Prolicative Infinitive.....	4
23.5.1 <i>The Prolicative Infinitive in English</i> .....	4
23.5.2 <i>The Prolicative Infinitive in Greek</i> .....	5
23.6 Opening Prayer .....	5
23.7 Exercises – A .....	6
23.7.1 <i>Translate into English</i> .....	6
23.7.2 <i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	6
23.8 Exercises – B .....	6
23.8.1 <i>Translate into English</i> .....	6
23.8.2 <i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	7
<b>24. Lesson 24 – Strong Aorist Active</b> .....	<b>9</b>
<b>24.1 Lesson 24 Outline</b> .....	9
24.2 Vocabulary Lesson 24 .....	10
24.3 Strong Tenses in English .....	11
24.3.1 <i>The main vowel in the Present Tense is altered in the Past Tense</i> .....	11
24.3.2 <i>The main vowel is changed and the ending is changed or added</i> .....	11
24.3.3 <i>There is no change from the Present Tense to the Past Tense</i> .....	11
24.3.4 <i>The form of the Past Tense is completely different to the Present Tense</i> .....	12
24.4 Strong Aorist.....	12
24.5 Stems of Verbs.....	13
24.6 Principal Parts.....	13
24.6.1 <i>Principal Parts - Strong Aorist</i> .....	14
24.6.2 <i>Principal Parts - Weak Aorist</i> .....	14
24.7 Strong Aorist Passive.....	15
24.8 Strong Aorist Imperative and Infinitive.....	15
24.8.1 <i>Aorist Imperative</i> .....	15
24.8.2 <i>Aorist Infinitive</i> .....	15
24.9 βαίνω and γινώσκω.....	16
24.10 Disappearance of the Strong Aorist.....	16
24.11 Opening Prayer .....	16
24.12 Exercises – A .....	17
24.12.1 <i>Translate into English</i> .....	17
24.12.2 <i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	17
24.13 Exercises – B .....	17
24.13.1 <i>Translate into English</i> .....	17
24.13.2 <i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	18
<b>25. Lesson 25 – Middle Voice and Deponent Verbs</b> .....	<b>19</b>
25.1 Lesson 25 Outline .....	19

25.2	Vocabulary Lesson 25 .....	20
25.3	Introduction – Middle Voice and Deponent Verbs .....	21
25.4	The Middle Voice .....	21
25.4.1	<i>To do something for oneself</i> .....	21
25.4.2	<i>To get something done for oneself</i> .....	21
25.4.3	<i>To do something to oneself</i> .....	21
25.5	Conjugation of the Middle Voice .....	22
25.5.1	<i>Indicative</i> .....	22
25.5.2	<i>Verbs ending in a mute</i> .....	22
25.5.3	<i>Imperative</i> .....	23
25.5.4	<i>Infinitive</i> .....	23
25.6	Deponent Verbs .....	23
25.7	ἔρχομαι .....	24
25.8	Verbs with a Future Middle.....	25
25.9	Opening Prayer .....	25
25.10	Exercises – A .....	26
25.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	26
25.10.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	26
25.11	Exercises – B .....	26
25.11.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	26
25.11.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	27
<b>26.</b>	<b>Lesson 26 – τίθημι.....</b>	<b>29</b>
26.1	Lesson 26 Outline .....	29
26.2	Vocabulary Lesson 26 .....	30
26.3	–μι verbs – an Introduction.....	31
26.3.1	<i>Presentation in this Lesson</i> .....	31
26.4	τίθημι - Conjugation .....	32
26.4.1	<i>Active Voice</i> .....	32
26.4.2	<i>Passive Voice</i> .....	33
26.4.3	<i>Middle Voice</i> .....	33
26.5	Use of τίθημι in the New Testament.....	33
26.6	Hebrew Names .....	35
26.7	Opening Prayer .....	35
26.8	Exercises - A.....	36
26.8.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	36
26.8.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	36
26.9	Exercises - B .....	36
26.9.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	36
26.9.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	37
<b>27.</b>	<b>Lesson 27 – δίδωμι.....</b>	<b>39</b>
27.1	Lesson 27 Outline .....	39
27.2	Vocabulary Lesson 27 .....	40
27.3	δίδωμι - Conjugation .....	40
27.3.1	<i>Active Voice</i> .....	40
27.3.2	<i>Middle Voice</i> .....	41
27.3.3	<i>Passive Voice</i> .....	41
27.4	Use of δίδωμι in the New Testament.....	42
27.5	Opening Prayer .....	42
27.6	Exercises A .....	43
27.6.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	43
27.6.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	43
27.7	Exercises - B.....	43

27.7.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	43
27.7.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	44
<b>28.</b>	<b>Lesson 28 – Revision V</b> .....	<b>45</b>
28.1	Lesson 28 Outline.....	45
28.2	Vocabulary Lesson 28 .....	46
28.3	Parsing .....	47
28.3.1	<i>Verbs</i> .....	47
28.3.2	<i>Nouns</i> .....	48
28.3.3	<i>Adjectives</i> .....	49
28.4	Exercises – A .....	50
28.4.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	50
28.4.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	50
28.5	Exercises – B .....	50
28.5.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	50
28.5.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	51
28.6	Exercises – C .....	51
28.7	Opening Prayer.....	52
<b>29.</b>	<b>Lesson 29 – Future and Aorist of Liquid and Nasal Verbs</b> .....	<b>53</b>
29.1	Lesson 29 Outline.....	53
29.2	Vocabulary Lesson 29 .....	54
29.3	Future tenses .....	55
29.4	Future of Liquid and Nasal Verbs .....	55
29.5	‘Attic’ Future .....	56
29.6	Future Middle Tenses .....	56
29.7	A note about the use of Liddell & Scott and Arndt & Gingrich.....	57
29.8	Aorist of Liquid and Nasal Verbs.....	57
29.9	Opening Prayer.....	58
29.10	Exercises – A .....	59
29.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	59
29.10.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	59
29.11	Exercises – B .....	59
29.11.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	59
29.11.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	60
<b>30.</b>	<b>Lesson 30 – Indirect Speech</b> .....	<b>61</b>
30.1	Lesson 30 Outline.....	61
30.2	Vocabulary Lesson 30 .....	62
30.3	Indirect Speech in English.....	62
30.4	Indirect Speech in Greek .....	63
30.4.1	<i>Accusative and Infinitive</i> .....	63
30.4.2	<i>ὅτι with the Indicative</i> .....	64
30.4.3	<i>Verbs used to introduce Indirect Speech</i> .....	65
30.4.4	<i>ὅτι Recitative</i> .....	65
30.5	Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech .....	66
30.6	Opening Prayer.....	66
30.7	Exercises – A .....	67
30.7.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	67
30.7.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	67
30.8	Exercises – B .....	67
30.8.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	67
30.8.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	68
<b>31.</b>	<b>Lesson 31 – The Infinitive II, Further Uses, ὄτι, γίνομαι</b> .....	<b>69</b>
31.1	Lesson 31 Outline.....	69

31.2	Vocabulary Lesson 31 .....	70
31.3	English Grammar.....	70
31.3.1	<i>Purpose Clauses</i> .....	70
31.3.2	<i>Consecutive Clauses</i> .....	71
31.3.3	<i>Temporal Clauses</i> .....	71
31.4	The Articular Infinitive.....	71
31.4.1	<i>Introduction</i> .....	71
31.4.2	<i>Purpose Clauses</i> .....	72
31.4.3	<i>Temporal Clauses</i> .....	72
31.5	Consecutive Clauses .....	73
31.6	Impersonal Verbs.....	73
31.6.1	<i>Other tenses of δεῖ</i> .....	73
31.7	A note about ὅτι and γίνομαι .....	73
31.7.1	<i>ὅτι</i> .....	73
31.7.2	<i>γίνομαι</i> .....	74
31.8	Opening Prayer .....	74
31.9	Exercises – A .....	75
31.9.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	75
31.9.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	75
31.10	Exercises – B .....	75
31.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	75
31.10.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	76
<b>32.</b>	<b>Lesson 32 – 3<sup>rd</sup> declension Consonant Stems, Masculine and Feminine.....</b>	<b>77</b>
32.1	Lesson 32 Outline .....	77
32.2	Vocabulary Lesson 32 .....	78
32.3	The Third Declension .....	80
32.3.1	<i>Introduction and some English Nouns</i> .....	80
32.3.2	<i>Third Declension categories</i> .....	80
32.3.3	<i>Third Declension endings</i> .....	80
32.3.4	<i>Formation of the Dative Plural</i> .....	81
32.4	Guttural Stems .....	81
32.5	Labial Stems .....	81
32.6	Stems ending in a Dental (τ, δ, θ) and ν .....	81
32.7	Stems in -ντ, -κτ.....	82
32.8	Stems in the Liquids λ, ρ .....	82
32.9	Opening Prayer .....	82
32.10	Exercises – A .....	83
32.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	83
32.10.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	83
32.11	Exercises – B .....	83
32.11.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	83
32.11.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	84
32.12	Exercises – C .....	84
32.12.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	84
32.12.2	<i>Vocabulary for Exercise C</i> .....	84
<b>33.</b>	<b>Lesson 33 – Revision VI.....</b>	<b>85</b>
33.1	Lesson 33 Outline .....	85
33.2	Vocabulary Lesson 33 .....	86
33.3	Opening Prayer .....	86
33.4	Parsing .....	87
33.4.1	<i>Verbs</i> .....	87
33.4.2	<i>Nouns</i> .....	88

33.4.3	Adjectives .....	89
33.5	Exercises – A .....	90
33.5.1	Translate into English.....	90
33.5.2	Translate into Greek .....	90
33.6	Exercises – B .....	90
33.6.1	Translate into English.....	90
33.6.2	Translate into Greek .....	91
33.7	Exercises – C .....	91
33.7.1	Translate into English.....	91
33.7.2	Vocabulary for Exercise C.....	91
<b>34.</b>	<b>Lesson 34 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Neuter Nouns, Irregular Nouns .....</b>	<b>93</b>
34.1	Lesson 34 Outline .....	93
34.2	Vocabulary Lesson 34 .....	94
34.3	Neuter Nouns .....	96
34.4	Irregular Nouns .....	96
34.5	Opening Prayer .....	97
34.6	Exercises – A .....	98
34.6.1	Translate into English.....	98
34.6.2	Translate into Greek .....	98
34.7	Exercises – B .....	98
34.7.1	Translate into English.....	98
34.7.2	Translate into Greek .....	99
34.8	Exercises – C .....	100
34.8.1	Translate into English.....	100
34.8.2	Vocabulary for Exercise C.....	100
<b>35.</b>	<b>Lesson 35 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Nouns, Vowel Stems; τις and τίς.....</b>	<b>101</b>
35.1	Lesson 35 Outline .....	101
35.2	Vocabulary Lesson 35 .....	102
35.3	υ Stems .....	103
35.4	ι and εϋ Stems .....	103
35.5	Indefinite and interrogative pronouns τις, τίς and ὅστις.....	104
35.6	Opening Prayer .....	104
35.7	Exercises – A .....	105
35.7.1	Translate into English.....	105
35.7.2	Translate into Greek .....	105
35.8	Exercises – B .....	105
35.8.1	Translate into English.....	105
35.8.2	Translate into Greek .....	106
35.9	Exercises – C .....	106
35.9.1	Translate into English.....	106
35.9.2	Vocabulary for Exercise C.....	106
<b>36.</b>	<b>Lesson 36 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Adjectives, Numbers .....</b>	<b>109</b>
36.1	Lesson 36 Outline .....	109
36.2	Vocabulary Lesson 36 .....	110
36.3	Third Declension Adjectives .....	111
36.4	Adjectives of three terminations.....	112
36.5	Adjectives of two terminations.....	112
36.6	Irregular adjectives .....	112
36.7	Adjectives of one termination.....	113
36.8	Numbers.....	113
36.9	Opening Prayer .....	114
36.10	Exercises – A .....	114

36.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	114
36.10.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	114
36.11	Exercises – B .....	115
36.11.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	115
36.11.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	115
36.12	Exercises – C .....	115
36.12.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	115
36.12.2	<i>Vocabulary for Exercise C</i> .....	116
<b>37.</b>	<b>Lesson 37 – Formation and Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs</b> .....	<b>117</b>
37.1	Lesson 37 Outline.....	117
37.2	Vocabulary Lesson 37 .....	118
37.3	English Grammar.....	119
37.3.1	<i>Comparative and Superlative adjectives</i> .....	119
37.3.2	<i>Adverbs</i> .....	120
37.4	Accidence of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives .....	120
37.4.1	<i>First formation</i> .....	120
37.4.2	<i>Second formation</i> .....	121
37.4.3	<i>Irregular comparison</i> .....	122
37.5	Adverbs.....	122
37.5.1	<i>Accidence</i> .....	122
37.5.2	<i>Comparison of Adverbs</i> .....	122
37.6	Use of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives .....	123
37.6.1	<i>Comparison</i> .....	123
37.6.2	<i>Elativ use</i> .....	123
37.6.3	<i>Adverbs</i> .....	123
37.7	Opening Prayer .....	124
37.8	Exercises – A .....	125
37.8.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	125
37.8.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	125
37.9	Exercises – B .....	125
37.9.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	125
37.9.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	126
37.10	Exercise – C.....	126
37.10.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	126
37.10.2	<i>Vocabulary for Exercise C</i> .....	126
<b>38.</b>	<b>Lesson 38 – Revision VII</b> .....	<b>129</b>
38.1	Lesson 38 Outline.....	129
38.2	Vocabulary Lesson 38 .....	130
38.3	Opening Prayer .....	130
38.4	Parsing .....	131
38.4.1	<i>Verbs</i> .....	131
38.4.2	<i>Nouns</i> .....	132
38.4.3	<i>Adjectives</i> .....	133
38.5	Exercises – A .....	135
38.5.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	135
38.5.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	135
38.6	Exercises – B .....	135
38.6.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	135
38.6.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	136
38.7	Exercises – C .....	136
38.7.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	136
38.7.2	<i>Vocabulary for Exercise C</i> .....	137

<b>39.</b>	<b>Lesson 39 – Perfect and Pluperfect, οἶδα.....</b>	<b>139</b>
39.1	Lesson 39 Outline.....	139
39.2	Vocabulary Lesson 39.....	140
39.3	English Grammar.....	140
39.4	Greek Perfect and Pluperfect.....	141
39.4.1	<i>Active Voice</i> .....	141
39.4.2	<i>Middle and Passive Voice</i> .....	141
39.4.3	<i>General notes on the Perfect Active, Middle and Passive.</i> .....	142
39.4.4	<i>Notes on the Perfect Active</i> .....	142
39.4.5	<i>Notes on the Pluperfect Active</i> .....	142
39.4.6	<i>The Conjugation of the Perfect Passive</i> .....	142
39.5	Reduplication.....	143
39.5.1	<i>The verb begins with a single consonant</i> .....	143
39.5.2	<i>The verb begins with two consonants, the double consonants ζ, ξ, ψ or ρ</i> .....	143
39.5.3	<i>Two consonants, ζ, ξ, ψ or ρ</i> .....	143
39.5.4	<i>Two consonants the second being a liquid or a nasal</i> .....	143
39.5.5	<i>The verb begins with a vowel</i> .....	144
39.6	Reduplication for compound verbs.....	144
39.7	The meaning of the Perfect.....	144
39.8	τίθημι and δίδωμι.....	146
39.9	οἶδα.....	146
39.10	Opening Prayer.....	146
39.11	Exercises – A.....	147
39.11.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	147
39.11.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	147
39.12	Exercises – B.....	147
39.12.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	147
39.12.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	148
39.13	Exercises – C.....	148
39.13.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	148
39.13.2	<i>Vocabulary for Exercise C</i> .....	149
<b>40.</b>	<b>Lesson 40 – Direct and Indirect Questions, more uses of the cases.....</b>	<b>151</b>
40.1	Lesson 40 Outline.....	151
40.2	Vocabulary Lesson 40.....	152
40.3	Direct Questions.....	153
40.3.1	<i>Single Questions</i> .....	153
40.3.2	<i>Double Questions</i> .....	155
40.3.3	<i>Deliberative Questions</i> .....	155
40.4	Indirect Questions.....	155
40.4.1	<i>Construction</i> .....	155
40.4.2	<i>A note on the use of πόσος</i> .....	156
40.4.3	<i>Indirect Questions in the New Testament</i> .....	156
40.5	Some more uses of the Cases.....	157
40.5.1	<i>Accusative Case</i> .....	157
40.5.2	<i>Dative Case</i> .....	157
40.6	Opening Prayer.....	157
40.7	Exercises – A.....	158
40.7.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	158
40.7.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	158
40.8	Exercises – B.....	158
40.8.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	158
40.8.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	159
40.9	Exercise – C.....	159
40.9.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	159



40.9.2	Vocabulary for Exercise C.....	159
<b>41.</b>	<b>Lesson 41 – ἴστημι.....</b>	<b>161</b>
41.1	Lesson 41 Outline.....	161
41.2	Vocabulary Lesson 41.....	162
41.3	Conjugation of ἴστημι.....	164
41.3.1	Active Voice.....	164
41.3.2	Middle Voice.....	165
41.3.3	Principal Parts.....	165
41.4	A Recap on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.....	165
41.5	Notes on the uses of the tenses of ἴστημι.....	166
41.6	Principal Parts of Compound Verbs of ἴστημι.....	167
41.6.1	Indicative.....	167
41.6.2	Infinitive.....	167
41.6.3	Imperative.....	168
41.7	The uses of ἴστημι in the New Testament.....	168
41.7.1	Transitive.....	168
41.7.2	Intransitive.....	168
41.7.3	In compounds.....	169
41.8	Opening Prayer.....	169
41.9	Exercises – A.....	170
41.9.1	Translate into English.....	170
41.9.2	Translate into Greek.....	170
41.10	Exercises – B.....	170
41.10.1	Translate into English.....	170
41.10.2	Translate into Greek.....	171
41.11	Exercise – C.....	171
41.11.1	Translate into English.....	171
41.11.2	Vocabulary for Exercise C.....	172
<b>42.</b>	<b>Lesson 42 – Revision of Verbs – A Retrospective View.....</b>	<b>173</b>
42.1	Lesson 42 Outline.....	173
42.2	Introduction.....	174
42.3	English Verb Structure.....	174
42.3.1	The Verb Finite.....	174
42.3.2	The Verb Infinitive.....	178
42.4	Contractions.....	180
42.5	Some notes on the structure of the Greek Verb.....	181
42.5.1	Tenses and Moods.....	182
42.5.2	The augment.....	182
42.5.3	The meaning of the tenses in different moods of the verb.....	183
42.5.4	Formation of the Second or Strong Aorist.....	183
42.5.5	Formation of the contracted Future.....	183
42.5.6	Use of Prepositions in verbs.....	184
42.5.7	Summary of endings of Greek Verbs.....	184
42.5.8	Imperative Mood.....	185
42.5.9	Subjunctive Mood.....	186
42.5.10	Optative Mood.....	186
42.5.11	Some patterns to assist.....	187
42.6	Opening Prayer.....	188
42.7	Vocabulary Lesson 42.....	188
42.8	Exercises – A.....	189
42.8.1	Translate into English.....	189
42.8.2	Translate into Greek.....	189

42.9	Exercises – B .....	189
42.9.1	<i>Translate into English</i> .....	189
42.9.2	<i>Translate into Greek</i> .....	190
42.10	Exercise C – Continuous Passages .....	190
42.10.1	<i>Continuous Passage 1</i> .....	190
42.10.2	<i>Vocabulary for Continuous passage 1</i> .....	191
42.10.3	<i>Continuous Passage 2</i> .....	192
42.10.4	<i>Vocabulary for Continuous Passage 2</i> .....	193
<b>43.</b>	<b>List of passages used .....</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>44.</b>	<b>Vocabulary Greek – English .....</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>45.</b>	<b>Vocabulary English – Greek .....</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>46.</b>	<b>Proper names.....</b>	<b>227</b>
46.1	Greek to English .....	227
46.2	English to Greek .....	227
<b>47.</b>	<b>Place names.....</b>	<b>229</b>
47.1	Greek to English .....	229
47.2	English to Greek .....	229
<b>48.</b>	<b>Excerpts from the New Testament .....</b>	<b>231</b>
48.1	Introduction .....	231
48.2	The Lord’s Prayer.....	231
48.2.1	<i>Matthew</i> .....	231
48.2.2	<i>Luke</i> .....	232
48.3	The Beatitudes .....	232
48.4	The Grace .....	232
48.5	Nunc Dimittis .....	232
48.6	Psalm 22 from the LXX.....	233
48.7	Selected Passages .....	233
48.7.1	<i>Lesson 23</i> .....	233
48.7.2	<i>Lesson 24</i> .....	233
48.7.3	<i>Lesson 25</i> .....	233
48.7.4	<i>Lesson 26</i> .....	234
48.7.5	<i>Lesson 27</i> .....	234
48.7.6	<i>Lesson 28</i> .....	234
48.7.7	<i>Lesson 29</i> .....	234
48.7.8	<i>Lesson 30</i> .....	234
48.7.9	<i>Lesson 31</i> .....	234
<b>49.</b>	<b>Index of Contents .....</b>	<b>235</b>
	<b>Document Control.....</b>	<b>237</b>





## Lesson 23 – The Infinitive

### 23.1 Lesson 23 Outline

- 23.2 Vocabulary 23
- 23.3 The Infinitive
  - 23.3.1 The Infinitive in English
  - 23.3.2 The Infinitive in Greek
- 23.4 δύναιμι
- 23.5 Prolative Infinitive
  - 23.5.1 Prolative Infinitive in English
  - 23.5.2 Prolative Infinitive in Greek
- 23.6 Opening Prayer
- 23.7 Exercises A
  - 23.7.1 Translate into English
  - 23.7.2 Translate into Greek
- 23.8 Exercises B
  - 23.8.1 Translate into English
  - 23.8.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

χαρὶν ἔχομέν σοι ᾧ κύριε ὅτι δυνάμεθα μάθειν ταυτήν τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε δυνησόμεθα ἀναγνῶναι τὸν λόγον σου. καίπερ γινῶντες ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς μάθειν πολλὰ, χαίρομεν δὴ μαθανόντες καὶ ἀκουόντες τοὺς τε λόγους καὶ τὰ νοήματά σου. βοήθησον οὖν ᾧ κύριε νῦν καὶ ἀεί.

Ἀμήν.

On desperate seas long wont to roam,  
Thy hyacinth hair, thy classic face,  
Thy Naiad airs have brought me home,  
To the glory that was Greece  
And the grandeur that was Rome

‘To Helen’  
Edgar Allan

## 23.2 Vocabulary Lesson 23

Verbs		
ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα	compel, I (9)	
ἀπαντάω, ἀπαντήσω, ἠπάντησα	meet, I (2)	takes a dative of the person met
δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, ἐδυνασάμην	am able, I (210)	
θέλω, θελήσω, ἐθέλησα	wish, I; want, I (208)	also ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω, ἠθελησα
κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα	command, I; order, I (26)	
μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα	intend, I (109)	
ὀδεύω, ὀδεύσω, ὤδευσα	travel, I (1)	
πειράζω, πειράσω, ἐπείρασα	try, I; attempt, I (38)	In Attic Greek the verb was πειράω, but Koine now uses πειράζω; the conjugation of the Future and Aorist is the same as πειράω.
Adjectives		
ἄξιος, ἄξια, ἄξιον	worthy (6)	
ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν	hostile (32)	also used as a noun for ‘enemy’
σύμμαχος, -ον	allied	Note that this has only <i>two</i> terminations

## 23.3 The Infinitive

### 23.3.1 The Infinitive in English

In English the Infinitive of the verb is formed by prefixing ‘to’ to the verb. Thus, the infinitive of various verbs is formed in the following manner:

Verb	Infinitive
I have	to have
I run	to run
I walk	to walk
I hide	to hide

Because the English Infinitive is formed from *two* words, there is the possibility, much frowned upon, of ‘splitting the infinitive’ as in the (in)famous example from ‘Star Trek’ – ‘to boldly go’. Opinions regarding this practice are sharply divided; some regard it as the abomination of all abominations, others do not care one way or the other. In many other Indo-European languages this is not possible, because the infinitive is *one* word.

### 23.3.2 The Infinitive in Greek

The Greek Infinitive has four tenses, but only two of these are in common use in the New Testament. The four tenses are:

- Present

- Aorist
- Perfect
- Future

In this Lesson we will deal with the Present and Aorist tenses only.

The Infinitive is conjugated as follows for verbs whose stem ends in a vowel or for the contracted verbs -άω, έω and όω:

		λύω	τιμάω	φιλέω	δηλόω
Active	Present	λύειν	τιμᾶν (ά-εεν)	φιλεῖν (έ-εεν)	δηλοῦν (ό-εεν)
	Aorist	λύσαι	τιμῆσαι	φιλήσαι	δηλώσαι
Passive	Present	λύεσθαι	τιμᾶσθαι (ά-εσθαι)	φιλεῖσθαι (έ-εσθαι)	δηλοῦσθαι (ό-εσθαι)
	Aorist	λυθῆναι	τιμηθῆναι	φιληθῆναι	δηλωθῆναι

Note that the Present Active Infinitive of these verbs is formed as a contraction from -εεν not -ειν. This is because -ειν was originally a contraction from -εεν. Thus for τιμάω the infinitive is τιμᾶν and not τιμῆν, and for δηλόω it is δηλοῦν and not δηλοῖν.

For verbs whose stem ends in a consonant the conjugation is as follows:

		εἰμί	διώκω	πράσσω	βλέπω	γράφω
Active	Present	εἶναι	διώκειν	πράσσειν	βλέπειν	γράφειν
	Aorist	-	διῶξαι	πράξαι	βλέψαι	γράψαι
Passive	Present	-	διώκεσθαι	πράσσεσθαι	βλέπεσθαι	γράφεσθαι
	Aorist	-	διωχθῆναι	πραχθῆναι	βλεφθῆναι	γραφθῆναι

Notice that the same changes of consonant take place as those for the Aorist, both Active and Passive (Lessons 16 and 19).

With some reservations, the translation of the Infinitive is shown in this table:

		Active	Passive
Present	to loose	λύειν	to be loosed
Aorist	to have loosed	λύσαι	to have been loosed
			λυθῆναι

The English translation of the Aorist tense given here can be somewhat misleading for two reasons.

1. The concept of a 'past tense' of the Infinitive in English is rather artificial as can be seen from the 'translations' given. This artificiality is increased if one were to consider the Future and Perfect tenses.
2. Although the two forms of the Infinitive are described as tenses (which is a very convenient way of describing them), these 'tenses' do not, except in one use and one use only, which will be discussed later in this course, have a temporal meaning. In other words, the Present Infinitive does not (usually) refer to present time and the Aorist Infinitive does not (usually) refer to past time.

## 23.4 δύναμαι

δύναμαι (I am able *or* I can) is conjugated as follows:

		Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist
Singular	1	δύναμαι	ἐδυνάμην	δυνήσομαι	ἐδυνησάμην
	2	δύνασαι	ἐδύνασο	δυνήσῃ	ἐδυνήσω
	3	δύναται	ἐδύνατο	δυνήσεται	ἐδυνήσατο
Plural	1	δυνάμεθα	ἐδυνάμεθα	δυνησόμεθα	ἐδυνησάμεθα
	2	δύνασθε	ἐδύνασθε	δυνήσεσθε	ἐδυνήσασθε
	3	δύνανται	ἐδύναντο	δυνήσονται	ἐδυνήσαντο

This conjugation requires some explanation since there are some endings that have not been seen before. δύναμαι belongs to a class of verbs called *deponent* (from Latin **depono**, I set aside) because they have *set aside* the active voice and *appear* passive (or Middle as we shall see in Lesson 25) in *form* but *active* in meaning. As we shall see in later Lessons, the endings for the Future and Aorist are the same as the endings for the Future and Aorist Middle Voice; the endings for the present and Imperfect tenses are similar to those for ἵστημι (I stand) which is explained in Lesson 41.

This mixture of Passive and Active is evident (if we cared to pay attention to our grammar) in the English for this verb. ‘I am able’ is *passive* in form (like I am loosed) but *active* in meaning.

Here are some examples of its usage in the New Testament:

δύναται ὁ θεὸς ἐκ τῶν λίθων τούτων ἐγεῖραι τέκνα τῷ Ἀβρααμ.

Κατὰ Ματθαῖον 3:9

God is able to raise children of Abraham from these stones

... οὐ δύναται εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν τοῦ θεοῦ.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 3:5

... he is not able to enter into the kingdom of God.

## 23.5 Prolative Infinitive

### 23.5.1 The Prolative Infinitive in English

In English we frequently have sentences such as:

I wish **to learn** this technique

I am able **to finish** this task

I am compelled **to depart**

In each of these sentences the word in **bold** is an infinitive and the grammatical term used to describe this is the **Prolative Infinitive**. A **Prolative Infinitive** is an Infinitive which is used to complete the meaning of the verb.

A related construction is to use the **epexegetic** infinitive, or limiting infinitive. This will be discussed in Lesson 31.



### 23.5.2 The Prolative Infinitive in Greek

Like English, Greek also employs the Prolative Infinitive and, perhaps happily, the two languages almost coincide in terms of the verbs with which it is used. Typical verbs with which to use the Prolative Infinitive are:

ἀναγκάζω	I compel
διδάσκω	I teach
θέλω	I want or wish
κελεύω	I command
παρακαλέω	I urge, exhort, comfort

Indirect commands (as in ‘I ordered him to do something’) take an Infinitive in Greek as they do in English. The negative for such Indirect Commands is **μῆ** not **οὐ**.

Here are some examples of the Prolative Infinitive from the New Testament:

καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ Ναθαναήλ· ἐξ Ναζαρέτ δύναται τι ἀγαθόν εἶναι;

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 1:46

And Nathaniel said to him, ‘can something good be out of Nazareth?’

εὐθέως ἠνάγκασεν τοὺς μαθητὰς ἐμβῆναι εἰς τὸ πλοῖον

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 14:22

Immediately he compelled the disciples to embark into the ship

### 23.6 Opening Prayer

#### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

χαρὶν ἔχομέν σοι ὦ κύριε ὅτι δυνάμεθα μάθειν ταυτήν τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε δυνησόμεθα ἀναγνῶναι τὸν λόγον σου. καίπερ γινῶντες ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς μάθειν πολλὰ, χαίρομεν δὴ μαθόντες καὶ ἀκουόντες τοὺς τε λόγους καὶ τὰ νοήματά σου. βοήθησον οὖν ὦ κύριε νῦν καὶ αἰεὶ.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

We give you thanks, O Lord, that we are able to learn this language so that we will be able to read your word. Although we know that we must learn much, we do rejoice that we are learning and hearing your words and thoughts. So help us Lord now and always.

Amen

## 23.7 Exercises – A

### 23.7.1 Translate into English

1. ὑπὸ τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἠναγκάσθην πέμψαι τὰ δῶρα.
2. κέλευέ με ὦ κύριε, καὶ τοῦτο ποιήσω.
3. διδάσκει με γράψαι ἀγαθὰς ἐπιστολάς.
4. οὐ δύνασαι ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὦ φίλε μου;
5. μὴ δύνασαι ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὦ φίλε μου;
6. οὐ δύνασαι ἀναγκάσαι αὐτὸν φιλησαι τοὺς ἐχθροὺς αὐτοῦ.
7. θέλω ἀπαντᾶν τοῖς φίλοις μου ἐν τῷ ναῷ.
8. ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μαθητὰς κηρύξαι τὸ εὐαγγέλιον.
9. ἐδυνησάμεθα ἀκοῦσαι τοὺς τοῦ προφήτου λόγους.
10. ὁ στρατηγὸς παρεκάλεσε τοὺς στρατιώτας βοηθεῖν τοῖς συμμάχοις ἡμῶν.
11. δυνήσει ὁδεύειν πρὸς ἐκείνην τὴν κώμην;
12. θέλεις ἀπαντᾶν τοῦτω;

### 23.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. I wish to send these gifts to the elders.
2. He was compelled by the soldiers to help the man.
3. I cannot drink this wine.
4. He commanded me to guide the blind man.
5. Do you wish to be healed?
6. He is teaching me to write a new language.
7. We showed the master the things which we bought.
8. We tried to collect fruit from the trees.
9. The disciples were taught to listen by the wise teacher.
10. We are not able to send this gift to the elders.
11. Freedom is a good gift.
12. I intend to say these things to the people.

## 23.8 Exercises – B

### 23.8.1 Translate into English

1. δύνασαι φέρειν τὸν σταυρόν μου;
2. οὐ θέλω ταραξαι τὸν λαόν.
3. ὁ Παῦλός τε καὶ Σιλᾶς ὤδευσαν διὰ τῆς Γαλατίας καὶ κατήγγελλον τὸ εὐαγγέλιον.
4. ὁ δοῦλος ἠναγκάσθη φέρειν τὸ φορτίον ὑπὸ τοῦ κυρίου αὐτοῦ.
5. ἐβοήθησα αὐτῷ ἄγειν τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τὴν ἀγοράν.
6. ὁ μὲν κόσμος τοὺς μαθητὰς μισεῖ, ὁ δὲ θεὸς αὐτοὺς φιλεῖ.
7. ἐθεραπεύσαμεν τὸν δοῦλον ὃς ἠδικήθη ὑπὸ τοῦ κακοῦ.
8. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἐλάλησε τοῖς ἐν τῇ κώμῃ καὶ ἐκήρυξε τὰ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
9. ὁ προφήτης ἐθέλησε ἀγγέλλειν τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ τῷ λαῷ.
10. οὐ δύναμαι λέγειν τοῖς Φαρισαίοις.
11. ἠπάντησα τοῖς φίλοις μου οἱ ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ ἦσαν.

12. ἐπέειρασα προσκαλεῖν τοὺς δούλους μου, ἀλλὰ οὐκ ἤκουσαν.

### 23.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. We are not able to serve the Lord in a hostile land.
2. I intend to write this letter to the brothers and I shall rebuke them.
3. We can help the brothers to do this work.
4. Let him repent and try to do good things.
5. Order him to sell those horses.
6. You did not try to help us.
7. The slaves were serving the people of God and were receiving<sup>1</sup> their reward.
8. We are seeking a place in which there is a house near the field.
9. He was compelled by the brothers to tell the elders what he did.
10. I cannot tell you what he is bringing to the temple.
11. We tried to read the books which were in the temple.
12. The laws which the prophets wrote for the people are worthy.

<sup>1</sup>Use λαμβάνω



## Lesson 24 – Strong Aorist Active

### 24.1 Lesson 24 Outline

- 24.2 Vocabulary 24
- 24.3 Strong Tenses in English
- 24.4 Strong Aorist
- 24.5 Stems of Verbs
- 24.6 Principal Parts
- 24.6.1 Principal Parts – Strong Aorist
- 24.6.2 Principal Parts – Weak Aorist
- 24.7 Strong Aorist Passive
- 24.8 Strong Aorist Imperative and Infinitive
- 24.9 βαίνω and γινώσκω
- 24.10 Disappearance of the Strong Aorist
- 24.11 Opening Prayer
- 24.12 Exercises A
- 24.12.1 Translate into English
- 24.12.2 Translate into Greek
- 24.13 Exercises B
- 24.13.1 Translate into English
- 24.13.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον, κύριε, μαθησόμεθα ἄλλον χρόνον τῶν ῥημάτων, ὃς καὶ ὀνομάζεται τὸν δεύτερον ἀόριστον. ἴσθι μεθ’ ἡμῶν καὶ βοήθει ἡμῖν μαθοῦσι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα ἵνα συνιῶμεν τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην.

Ἀμήν.

“Vos exemplaria Graeca

Nocturna versate manu, versate diurna”

“For your own good, turn the pages of your Greek  
exemplars by night and by day”

Horati  
Ars Poetica

## 24.2 Vocabulary Lesson 24

This vocabulary repeats some verbs which have been seen before; the object is to illustrate the various stems and endings of these verbs.

ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ <sup>1</sup> , ἤγγειλα	announce, I	
ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον	lead, I	
ἀμαρτάνω, ἀμαρτανῶ <sup>1</sup> , ἤμαρτον	make a mistake, I; sin, I	
ἀποθνήσκω, ἀποθανοῦμαι <sup>2</sup> , ἀπέθανον	die, I	
βαίνω, βήσομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔβην <sup>4</sup>	come, I; go, I	Does not occur in the New Testament by itself, but frequently in compounds, ἀναβαίνω, καταβαίνω, κτλ.
βάλλω, βαλῶ <sup>1</sup> , ἔβαλον	throw, I (122)	
δάκνω, δήξομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔδακον	bite, I (1)	
ἔλκω, εἰλκύσω, εἴλκυσα	drag, I (2)	
ἐπαινέω, ἐπαινῆσω, ἠπήνησα	praise, I (5)	Note the formation of the Aorist
ἐσθίω, φάγομαι <sup>2,3</sup> , ἔφαγον	eat, I (158)	
εὕρισκω, εὕρήσω, εὔρον	find, I (176)	eureka! Strictly speaking <u>h</u> eureka!
θάπτω, θάψω, ἔθαψα	bury, I (11)	
λαμβάνω, λήμψομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔλαβον	take, I (258)	
λέγω, ἐρῶ <sup>1</sup> , εἶπον <sup>4</sup>	say, I (2353)	
λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον	leave, I (6)	This occurs more in compounds such as καταλείπω
μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔμαθον	learn, I (25)	whence mathematics
ὁράω, ὄψομαι <sup>2</sup> , εἶδον	see, I (454)	
πάσχω, πείσομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔπαθον	suffer, I (42)	pathetic
πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον	drink, I (73)	
πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔπεσον	fall, I (90)	
σπείρω, σπερῶ <sup>1</sup> , ἔσπειρα	sow, I (52)	
τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα	turn, I (9)	This occurs more in compounds such as ἐπιτρέπω
τρέφω, θρέψω, ἔθρεψα	nourish, I (9)	hypertrophy, opposite of atrophy
τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔδραμον	run, I (19)	This is a conflation of <i>two</i> verbs, like, I go, I went in English
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔτυχον	chance, I; happen, I (12)	
τύπτω, πατάξω <sup>4</sup> , ἐπάταξα <sup>4</sup>	hit, I	see τρέχω
φέρω, οἴσω <sup>4</sup> , ἤνεγκον <sup>4</sup>	carry, I (66)	see τρέχω
φεύγω, φεύξομαι <sup>2</sup> , ἔφυγον	flee, I (29)	
<b>Nouns</b>		

δάκτυλος, ὁ	finger (9)	dactylic, pterodactyl, from πτέρων a wing + δακτύλος
<b>Proper Name</b>		
Μωϋσῆς, ὁ	Moses	This declines like προφήτης; note the diaeresis on υ

Notes

<sup>1</sup>This type of future tense will be covered in Lesson 29

<sup>2</sup>This type of future tense will be covered in Lesson 25

<sup>3</sup>In Attic the future was ἔδομαι, compare Latin, edo, I eat.

<sup>4</sup>This is irregular

## 24.3 Strong Tenses in English

Since we know English so well we tend not to notice the irregularities; it is obvious (to us) that the past tense of ‘I run’ is ‘I ran’ and so forth. As noted in Lesson 16 the usual (regular) way to form the past tense is to append –ed to the present tense thus:

I stay – I stayed

I walk – I walked

I love – I loved

and so on.

There are, however, many exceptions to this and these are sometimes called *Strong Tenses*. Since we are dealing with the Strong Aorist in Greek in this Lesson, this is a useful term and affords a reasonable parallel. These Strong Tenses in English are formed in various ways; what follows does not pretend to be a complete explanation.

### 24.3.1 The main vowel in the Present Tense is altered in the Past Tense

Here are some examples of this:

I run – I ran

I hide – I hid This example illustrates the idiosyncratic nature of English spelling, but note that both words are of one syllable and only the vowel *sound* has changed.

I lead – I led

I write – I wrote

### 24.3.2 The main vowel is changed and the ending is changed or added

These verbs have *two* changes as between the Present Tense and the Past Tense

I do – I did

I think – I thought

### 24.3.3 There is no change from the Present Tense to the Past Tense

Some verbs have the same form in both the Present and the Past Tenses:

I cut – I cut Usually the distinction is made obvious by the use of a periphrastic tense such as ‘I am cutting it’

I hit – I hit

I put – I put

I read – I read The pronunciation of the past tense is different and this is almost like the examples in 24.3.1

### 24.3.4 The form of the Past Tense is completely different to the Present Tense

Some verbs are *very* irregular; these are (usually) the most common verbs and have often arisen because of the conflation of two *different* verbs into one.

I go – I went The past tense came from the verb ‘I wend’, which is still in use today, occasionally.

These are just some of the irregularities or ‘Strong Tenses’ that occur in English verbs and, after a moment’s thought, many more will occur to you. The same sort of irregularities occur in Greek.

### 24.4 Strong Aorist

This is also known as the Second Aorist; both terms are in very common use, frequently one will find *both* used in the same passage. Some grammarians prefer Weak/Strong, others prefer First/Second.

Some Greek verbs form the Aorist tense in a different way to that explained in Lessons 16 and 19 and this is known as the *Strong Aorist*. The *root* of the verb usually differs from the root of the verb in the present tense. It might be supposed that it is the Aorist tense that is different; in actual fact it is the *Present* tense that has changed from the Aorist. Sometimes the change is so radical that a *different* root has been used. This will become clear in the following table which shows those verbs we have met so far that have strong Aorist Tenses:

Present tense	English	Present root	Aorist tense	Aorist root
ἄγ-ω	I lead	ἄγ-	ἤγαγον	ἀγαγ-
ἁμαρτάν-ω	I sin	ἁμαρταν-	ἤμαρτον	ἀμαρτ-
βάλλ-ω	I throw	βαλλ-	ἔβαλον	βαλ-
ἐσθί-ω	I eat	ἐσθι-	ἔφαγον	φαγ-
εὕρισκ-ω	I find	εὕρισκ-	εὗρον	εὕρ-
ἔχ-ω	I have	έχ-	ἔσχον	σχ-
λαμβάν-ω	I take	λαμβαν-	ἔλαβον	λαβ-
λέγ-ω	I say	λεγ-	εἶπον	ἐπ-
λείπ-ω	I leave	λειπ-	ἔλιπον	λιπ-
μανθάνω	I learn	μανθαν-	ἔμαθον	μαθ-
ὁρά-ω	I see	όρα-	εἶδον	ιδ-
πάσχ-ω	I suffer	πασχ-	ἔπαθον	παθ-
φέρ-ω	I carry	φερ-	ἤνεγκον	ἐνεγκ-
φεύγ-ω	I flee	φευγ-	ἔφυγον	φυγ-

Notice that the Aorist tense is expressed as ἔβαλ-ον and not as ἔβαλ-α, which is what we would expect as the Aorist endings. Such endings DO occur for these verbs but we will come to that later in this lesson.

The reason for the –ον ending is that the Strong Aorist uses the *Imperfect* endings so that the tables for the Aorist for these verbs is as follows:

βάλλω, I throw		εὕρισκω, I find	
I threw	ἔβαλ-ον	I found	ἤϛρ-ον
Thou didst throw	ἔβαλ-ες	Thou didst find	ἤϛρ-ες
He/she/it threw	ἔβαλ-ε	He/she/it found	ἤϛρ-ε
We threw	ἐβάλ-ομεν	We found	ἤϛρ-ομεν



You threw	έβαλ-ετε	You found	ηῦρ-ετε
They threw	ἔβαλ-ον	They found	ηῦρ-ον

## 24.5 Stems of Verbs

Lexica always list Greek verbs (like Latin) with the first person singular present tense which might lead one to suppose that the main *stem* of the verb is the ‘present stem’. In point of fact this is not so; the verb stem is actually found from the stem of the aorist; the *present* stem is derived from it. It is not always straightforward to determine the present stem from the verb stem; there are some rules or patterns as the table below shows.

	Verb Stem	Present Stem	Present	Imperfect	Aorist
1	τιμα λυ	τιμα- λυ-	τιμά-ω λύ-ω	έ-τιμ-α-ον έ-λύ-ον	έ-τίμ-η-σα έ-λυ-σα
2	λιπ φυγ	λειπ- φευγ-	λείπ-ω φεύγ-ω	έ-λειπ-ον έ-φευ-ον	έ-λιπ-ον έ-φυγ-ον
3	τυπ βλαβ	τυπ-τ βλαπ-τ	τύπ-τ-ω βλάπ-τ-ω	έ-τυπ-τ-ον έ-βλαπ-τ-ον	έ-τυψ-α έ-βλαψ-α
4	φυλακ κραγ φραδ βαλ	φυλασσ- κραζ- φραζ- βαλλ-	φυλάσσω κράζω φράζω βαλλω	έ-φύλασσω έ-κραζω έ-φραζω έ-βαλλω	έ-φύλαξ-α έ-κραξ-α έ-φρα-σα έ-βαλ-ον
5	ευρ	ευρ-ι-σκ-	εύρίσκω	ηῦ-ρίσκ-ον	εὔρ-ον
6	λαβ	λαμβάν-	λαμβάνω	έ-λάμβαν-ον	έ-λαβ-ον

For those of you who are interested, a fuller explanation can be found in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax, §6.

## 24.6 Principal Parts

A Greek verb is known fully by *six* ‘principal’ parts, as shown in the following tables. The Perfect and Pluperfect tenses will be covered in Lesson 39. This table has been divided into two parts for Strong Aorist and Weak Aorist. Note that:

- some verbs are irregular, in that the Aorist Stem differs from the Present Stem but the endings are those of the *Weak Aorist* (έλυσσα, έλυσσας, έλυσε, etc).
- similar changes have taken place in Greek to those verbs listed in §24.4
- sometimes, the Aorist Tense is totally different
- sometimes the main vowel has changed
- there are some ‘gaps’ in the table. This is due to one of two causes:
  - the gap is due to the fact that the particular tense *cannot* occur, usually, one cannot say, ‘Was gone’
  - the gap is due to the fact that the particular tense has not been recorded

These two tables show the verbs that have been introduced thus far; in subsequent vocabularies the principal parts will be given. A complete list of Principal Parts for verbs that occur in the New Testament is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §5. It is recommended that the principal parts are *learned*.

### 24.6.1 Principal Parts - Strong Aorist

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Perfect Passive	Aorist Passive
ἄγω	ἄξω	ἤγαγον	ἤχα <sup>1</sup>	ἤγμαι	ἤχθην
ἀμαρτάνω	ἀμαρτήσομαι <sup>2</sup> ἀμαρτήσω <sup>2</sup>	ἤμαρτον	ἤμάρτικα	ἤμάρτημαι	ἤμαρτήθην
βάλλω	βαλῶ	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	βέβλημαι	ἔβλήθην
δάκνω	δήξομαι	ἔδακον			ἔδήχθην
εὐρίσκω	εὐρήσω	εὗρον	εὗρηκα	ἠύρημαι	ἠύρέθην
ἐσθίω	φάγομαι	ἔφαγον			
ἔχω	ἔξω	ἔσχον	ἔσχηκα	-	-
-θνήσκω <sup>1</sup>	-θανοῦμαι	-ἔθανον	τέθνηκα	-	-
λαμβάνω	λήμψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα	ἔλημμαι	ἐλήμφθην
λείπω	λείψω	ἔλιπον	λέλοιπα	λέλειμμαι	ἐλείφθην
μανθάνω	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα	-	-
ὁράω	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	έόρακα	έόραμαι <sup>3</sup>	ὄφθην
πάσχω	πεῖσομαι	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα	-	-
πίνω	πίομαι	ἔπιον	πέπωκα	πέπομαι <sup>3</sup>	ἐπόθην
πίπτω	πεσοῦμαι	ἔπεσον	πέπτωκα		
φέρω	οἴσω	ἤνεγκον	ἐνήνοχα <sup>3</sup>	ἐνήνεγμαι <sup>3</sup>	ἤνέχθην
φεύγω	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	πέφευγα	-	-

### 24.6.2 Principal Parts - Weak Aorist

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Perfect Passive	Aorist Passive
ἀγγέλλω	ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα		ἤγγέλθην
βαίνω <sup>1</sup>	βήσομαι	ἔβην	βέβηκα	-	-
γινώσκω	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἔγνωκα	ἔγνωσμαι	ἔγνώσθην
ἔλκω	ἐλκύσω	εἴλκυσα	εἴλκυκα <sup>3</sup>	εἴλκυσμαι <sup>3</sup>	εἴλκύσθην <sup>3</sup>
ἐλπίζω	ἐλπίσω	ἤλπισα	ἤλπικα	-	-
κλέπτω	κλέψω	ἔκλεψα	κέκλοφα	κέκλεμμαι	ἐκλάπην
κρίνω	κρινῶ	ἔκρινα	κέκρικα	κέκριμαι	ἐκρίθην
μένω	μενῶ	ἔμεινα	μεμένηκα	-	-
πέμπω	πέμψω	ἔπεμψα	πέπομψα		ἐπέμφθην
σπείρω	σπερῶ	ἔσπειρα	ἔσπαρκα		
τρέπω <sup>1</sup>	τρέψω <sup>2</sup>	ἔτρεψα	τέτροφα <sup>2</sup>	τέτραμμαι	ἐτρέπην <sup>1</sup>
τρέφω	θρέψω <sup>2</sup>	ἔθρεψα	τέτροφα <sup>2</sup>	τέθραμμαι <sup>2</sup>	ἐτρέφην <sup>2</sup>

Notes

<sup>1</sup>Only occurs in compound verbs

<sup>3</sup>This tense does not occur in the New Testament

<sup>2</sup>Both forms occur in the New Testament

## 24.7 Strong Aorist Passive

Unlike the *Active Voice*, the Strong Aorist Passive, or more accurately, the Aorist Passive for verbs with a Strong Aorist does *not* have a distinctive set of endings. For example here is the Aorist Passive for λύω, ἄγω, ὀράω and φέρω:

λύω	ἄγω	ὀράω	φέρω
ἐλύθην	ἤχθην	ὠφθην	ἠνέχθην
ἐλύθης	ἤχθης	ὠφθης	ἠνέχθης
ἐλύθη	ἤχθη	ὠφθη	ἠνέχθη
ἐλύθημεν	ἤχθημεν	ὠφθημεν	ἠνέχθημεν
ἐλύθησθε	ἤχθησθε	ὠφθησθε	ἠνέχθησθε
ἐλύθησαν	ἤχθησαν	ὠφθησαν	ἠνέχθησαν

If the stem of the Present tense of the verb ends in a *mute* (the term for the nine consonants listed below), the **θ** will combine with it in the following way:

(Gutturals)    κ γ χ + θ = χθ

(Labials)      π β φ + θ = φθ

(Dentals)     τ δ θ + θ = σθ

## 24.8 Strong Aorist Imperative and Infinitive

### 24.8.1 Aorist Imperative

The Strong Aorist Imperative uses the same endings as the Present Imperative, but the endings are attached to the Aorist stem. The following table illustrates this for several Strong Aorist verbs:

	ἄγω (αγαγ-)	βάλλω (βαλ-)	λαμβάνω (λαβ-)	λέγω (εἰπ-)	φέρω (ἐνεγκ-)
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Sing	ἄγαγε	βάλε	λαβέ	εἶπέ	ἔνεγκε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Sing	ἄγαγέτω	βαλέτω	λαβέτω	εἶπέτω	ἐνεγκέτω
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Plur	ἄγαγετε	βάλετε	λάβετε	εἴπετε	ἐνέγκετε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Plur	ἄγαγέτωσαν	βαλέτωσαν	λαβέτωσαν	εἶπέτωσαν	ἐνεγκέτωσαν

### 24.8.2 Aorist Infinitive

Similarly, with the Infinitive, the Present endings are added to the Aorist stem:

	ἄγω (αγαγ-)	βάλλω (βαλ-)	λαμβάνω (λαβ-)	λέγω (εἰπ-)	φέρω (ἐνεγκ-)
Pres. Infinitive	ἄγειν	βάλλειν	λαμβάνειν	λέγειν	φέρειν
Aor. Infinitive	ἄγαγεῖν	βαλεῖν	λαβεῖν	εἶπεῖν	ἐνεγκεῖν

## 24.9 βαίνω and γινώσκω

These two verbs are conjugated somewhat differently in the Aorist tense. Annoying, but there it is.

	βαίνω		γινώσκω	
	Indicative	Imperative	Indicative	Imperative
1 <sup>st</sup> Person Sing	ἔβην		ἔγνων	
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Sing	ἔβης	βῆθι	ἔγnows	γνώθι
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Sing	ἔβη	βάτω	ἔγνω	γνώτω
1 <sup>st</sup> Person Plur	ἔβημεν		ἔγνωμεν	
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Plur	ἔβητε	βάτε	ἔγνωτε	γνώτε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Plur	ἔβησαν	βάτωσαν	ἔγνωσαν	γνώτωσαν
Infinitive	βῆναι		γῶναι	

## 24.10 Disappearance of the Strong Aorist

There was a tendency in Attic Greek, which became more pronounced in Hellenistic and even more in Koine, for the Strong Aorist endings to disappear and to be replaced with Weak Aorist endings. This process is more or less complete in Modern Greek. Thus instead of, for example, εἶπον, εἶπες, εἶπε, εἶπομεν, εἶπατε, εἶπαν; and these two different forms occur side by side even in the same sentence. For Prose Composition, it is recommended that one should be consistent within a particular piece of writing. Either would be correct, but consistency is recommended, not that that was observed by the New Testament writers. Not all verbs were subject to this; the most frequent is εἶπαν (εἶπον).

## 24.11 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον, κύριε, μαθησόμεθα ἄλλον χρόνον τῶν ῥημάτων, ὃς καὶ ὀνομάζεται τὸν δεύτερον ἀόριστον. ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν καὶ βοήθει ἡμῖν μαθοῦσι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα ἵνα συνιῶμεν τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Today Lord, we shall learn another tense of the verb which is also called the Second Aorist. Be with us Lord and help us to learn these concepts to understand the New Testament.

Amen

## 24.12 Exercises – A

### 24.12.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἐξέβαλε τὸ δαιμόνιον ἐκ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου.
2. οἱ μαθηταὶ ἔπεσον ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν.
3. ὁ δούλος ἡμῶν ἠτοίμασε τὸ δεῖπνον καὶ αὐτὸ ἐφάγομεν.
4. κατελίπομεν τὴν κώμην καὶ περιεπατήσαμεν πρὸς Ἱερουσαλήμ.
5. ἐμάθομεν λαλῆσαι ἐν ἄλλῃ γλώσσῃ.
6. κατελίπομεν τὸν ναὸν καὶ εἶδομεν ὄχλον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ὃς ἠπαινεῖ τὸν θεόν.
7. ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἔπαθεν ἐπὶ τῷ σταυρῷ.
8. εὗρομεν τὸν θησαυρὸν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ.
9. ἤνεγκον μὲν τὰ δῶρα πρὸς τὸν ναὸν, ἔμεινας δὲ ἐν τῷ ἄγρῳ.
10. εἶπέ μοι ἃ ἔμαθες σήμερον.
11. οἱ ἐχθροὶ ἔφυγον εἰς τὴν ἐρημόν.
12. φύγε ἀπὸ τοῦ διαβόλου.

### 24.12.2 Translate into Greek

1. The children learned the language and were able to speak it.
2. The workmen took their rewards and sent gifts to the temple.
3. The prophet said good words to the people and blessed them.
4. Peter and John ran towards the tomb.
5. Sow this ground and you will be nourished.
6. The bad man bit the child's finger.
7. I sinned against my friend.
8. Mary saw Jesus in the garden.
9. The prophet went to the temple and announced the good news.
10. I took the sheep from the field and I shall lead them to the market.
11. The rich man died and they buried him in a tomb.
12. We praised God and blessed his works.

## 24.13 Exercises – B

### 24.13.1 Translate into English

1. εὗρομεν τὸν θησαυρὸν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καὶ προσηνέγομεν τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις.
2. εἶδον τὸ παῖδιον ὃ ἔτρεχε πρὸς τὸν ποταμόν.
3. εἶδομεν τὰ ἔργα τοῦ θεοῦ ἔν τε τῷ οὐρανῷ καὶ ἐπὶ τῇ γῆ καὶ αὐτὸν ἐπαινῆσαμεν.
4. θέλετε λαβεῖν τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τὴν ἀγοράν;
5. ἤγαγον οἱ στρατιῶται τοὺς δούλους ἀπὸ τῶν πλοίων πρὸς τὴν ἀγοράν.
6. μετανοήσω καὶ τρέψω πρὸς τὸν θεόν.
7. ἔκριναν οἱ κριταὶ τὸν λαὸν δικαιοσύνη.
8. ἐτρέψαμεν πρὸς τὰς τῆς δικαιοσύνης ὁδοὺς καὶ ἐσώσθημεν.
9. λίπε ταύτην τὴν γῆν καὶ βῆθι πρὸς γῆν ἣν σοι δηλώσω.
10. βᾶτω ἡ χήρα πρὸς τὸν προφήτην καὶ αὐτὸν αἰτησάτω ἱματία.
11. εἶπέ μοι ἃ εἶπες τοῖς ἐν τῷ ναῷ ἀγγέλοις.

12. λαβέτω ὁ ἄνθρωπος τὸ δῶρον ἀπ' ἐμοῦ καὶ αὐτὸ λαβέτω πρὸς τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους.

### 24.13.2 Translate into Greek

1. The son turned from his sins and went to his house.
2. We saw a man who suffered upon a cross.
3. We ate the meal and drank the wine.
4. I am leaving this village and I shall lead your children to another place.
5. The people of Philippi dragged Paul to the judges.
6. Moses came down from the summit and was carrying stones.
7. Let him eat the meal and drink the wine.
8. I shall carry this child to Jesus and he will heal him.
9. Let the dead bury their dead.
10. Write in this book what you saw and heard.
11. Look up and see the signs in the heavens.
12. Let him know the commandments of God.

## Lesson 25 – Middle Voice and Deponent Verbs

### 25.1 Lesson 25 Outline

- 25.2 Vocabulary 25
- 25.3 Introduction – Middle Voice and Deponent Verbs
- 25.4 Middle Voice
- 25.5 Conjugation of the Middle Voice
- 25.6 Deponent Verbs
- 25.7 ἔρχομαι
- 25.8 Verbs with a Future Middle
- 25.9 Opening Prayer
- 25.10 Exercises A
  - 25.10.1 Translate into English
  - 25.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 25.11 Exercises B
  - 25.11.1 Translate into English
  - 25.11.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχὴ τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

Κύριε, σήμερον μαθησόμεθα τὸ μέσον τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσης. τοῦτο τὸ νόημα οὐχ ὑπάρχει ἐν τῇ γλῶσση ἡμῶν ὥστε δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν νεότατον νόημα. βοήθει σὺν ἡμῖν ὦ κύριε μαθοῦσι ταῦτα.

Ἀμήν.

ἐγενόμην ἐν πνεύματι ἐν τῇ κυριακῇ ἡμέρᾳ καὶ ἤκουσα ὀπίσω μου φωνὴν μεγάλην ὡς σάλπιγγος  
On the Lord's day I was in the Spirit and I heard a great voice behind behind me like a trumpet.

Ἀποκάλυψις Ἰωάννου 1:10

## 25.2 Vocabulary Lesson 25

Deponent Verbs		
ἄπτομαι, ἄψομαι, ἠψάμην	touch, I (39)	takes the genitive
ἄρνέομαι, ἀρνήσομαι, ἠρνησάμην	deny, I (33)	
ἀσπάζομαι, ἀσπάσομαι, ἠσπασάμην	greet, I (59)	
δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην	receive, I (56)	
ἐργάζομαι, ἐγάσομαι, ἠργασάμην	work, I (40)	
εὖχομαι, εὕξομαι, εὐξάμην	pray, I (7)	
λογίζομαι, λογιόυμαι, ἐλογισάμην	reckon, I; consider, I (40)	Note the future tense; this will be considered in Lesson 29
μέμφομαι, μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην	blame, I (2)	
πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, ἐπορεύθην	go I; walk, I; march, I (153)	ἐπορευσάμην is shown as an alternative in Liddell & Scott
ψεύδομαι, ψεύσομαι, ἐψευσάμην	deceive, I; lie, I (12)	
ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον	come, I (632)	
ἀπέρχομαι, ἀπελεύσομαι, ἀπῆλθον	go away, I (117)	
διέρχομαι, διελεύσομαι, διῆλθον	go through, I (43)	
εἰσέρχομαι, εἰσελεύσομαι, εἰσῆλθον	go in, I; enter, I (194)	
προσέρχομαι, προσελεύσομαι, προσῆλθον	come towards, I (86)	
Other Verbs		
νίπτω, νίψω, ἔνιψα	wash, I (13)	
συνεσθίω, συμφάγομαι, συνέφαγον	eat together, I (5)	The future has been inferred.
Nouns		
πύργος, ὁ	tower (4)	
Adverb		
πόρρω	far, at a distance (4)	
Place Names		
Γαλατία, ἡ	Galatia (4)	
Καππαδοκία, ἡ	Cappadocia (2)	



## 25.3 Introduction – Middle Voice and Deponent Verbs

In English we have two ‘voices’ of the verb, Active and Passive. Greek, as we shall see, has a *third* voice called the Middle and this has no counterpart in English, or in most other Indo-European languages. Furthermore, the *form* of the Middle Voice is the same as the Passive except for two tenses: Aorist and Future. This can make interpretation of the Middle Voice somewhat tricky; sometimes a verb is passive and sometimes it is middle, but the *form* of the verb is exactly the same.

There are also verbs that are called deponent verbs and these are *passive in form but active in meaning*. Thus δέχομαι, I receive, has the *form* of the passive voice (δέχομαι, δέχει, δέχεται, δεχόμεθα, δέχεσθε, δέχονται) but actually means I receive, thou receivest, he/she/it receives, etc. which is an *active* meaning. A common feature of such verbs is that they (usually) have the sense of doing something for oneself or for one’s own advantage, which is one of the meanings of the Middle Voice.

For this reason, it is convenient to consider the Middle Voice and Deponent verbs together.

## 25.4 The Middle Voice

We have already studied two ‘Voices’ of the Greek verb: Active and Passive. The meaning and use of these Voices is the same as in English and other Indo-European Languages; Latin, French, German and so forth also have Active and Passive Voices. Greek, however, like Sanskrit, has a *third* Voice called ‘the Middle Voice’. There is no real equivalent to the Middle Voice in English.

Although there is a third Voice in Greek called the Middle, the following points should be noted:

- The Middle Voice only differs in the Aorist and Future; for all of the other tenses the *form* of the Middle is the same as the Passive.
- There are some verbs (referred to as *Deponent* verbs) which do not have an Active Voice as such, they *appear* as *Passive* though they are used in an *Active* sense. It will be noticed that these verbs all have the sense of doing something for one’s own advantage.

The Middle Voice has several meanings but the main idea is that of self-advantage; note, however, that although the Middle Voice *can* have a reflexive meaning, this does not mean that the Middle voice *is* reflexive; λύεται does *not* mean ‘he looses himself’; that would be expressed by λύει ἑαυτόν. This will become clearer as we consider the chief uses of the Middle Voice which are:

1. To do something for oneself.
2. To get something done for oneself
3. To do something to oneself.

### 25.4.1 To do something for oneself

If we say ‘λύω τὸν ἵππον’, this means ‘I loose the horse’, but if we say ‘λύομαι τὸν ἵππον’ this means ‘I loose *my* horse’. Note that the verb ‘λύομαι’, which *appears* passive, cannot, in this sentence, be passive; we cannot say ‘I am loosed the horse’.

### 25.4.2 To get something done for oneself

A slightly different use can be seen in the sentence ‘διδάσκομαι τὸν υἱόν’. As noted in §25.4.1, this cannot mean ‘I am taught the son’; that does not make sense. The meaning of this sentence is ‘I get my son taught’. It is not (in this case) necessary to use ‘μοῦ’ to describe the word ‘son’. It would be possible to say ‘διδάσκομαι τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ’, which is ‘I get *his* son taught’.

### 25.4.3 To do something to oneself.

This is probably best illustrated by the verb ἐνδύω:

ἐνδύω – I put clothes on *someone else*

ἐνδύομαι – I put clothes on *myself*

Here are two quotations from the New Testament that illustrate the difference between the Middle and Passive uses:

ἀλλ' ἐνδύσασθε τὸν κύριον Ἰησοῦν Χριστόν

Πρὸς Ῥωμαίους 13:14

but put on the Lord Jesus Christ

... ἕως ἐνδύσησθε ἐξ ὕψους δύναμιν.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 24:49

... until you have been clothed with power from on high.

## 25.5 Conjugation of the Middle Voice

As remarked above, the Middle Voice differs from the Passive only in the Aorist and Future. The conjugation for λύω, τιμάω, φιλέω and δηλόω is shown in the tables in the following sections.

### 25.5.1 Indicative

			λύω	τιμάω	φιλέω	δηλόω
Aorist	Singular	1	ἐλυσάμην	ἐτιμησάμην	ἐφιλησάμην	ἐδηλωσάμην
		2	ἐλύσω	ἐτιμήσω	ἐφιλήσω	ἐδηλώσω
		3	ἐλύσατο	ἐτιμήσατο	ἐφιλήσατο	ἐδηλώσατο
	Plural	1	ἐλυσάμεθα	ἐτιμησάμεθα	ἐφιλησάμεθα	ἐδηλωσάμεθα
		2	ἐλυσάσθε	ἐτιμήσασθε	ἐφιλήσασθε	ἐδηλώσασθε
		3	ἐλυσαντο	ἐτιμήσαντο	ἐφιλήσαντο	ἐδηλώσαντο
Future	Singular	1	λύσομαι	τιμήσομαι	φιλήσομαι	δηλώσομαι
		2	λύσει	τιμήσει	φιλήσει	δηλώσει
		3	λύσεται	τιμήσεται	φιλήσεται	δηλώσεται
	Plural	1	λυσόμεθα	τιμησόμεθα	φιλησόμεθα	δηλωσόμεθα
		2	λύσεσθε	τιμήσεσθε	φιλήσεσθε	δηλώσεσθε
		3	λύσονται	τιμήσονται	φιλήσονται	δηλώσονται

### 25.5.2 Verbs ending in a mute

Verbs whose stem ends in a mute exhibit the same changes shown in Lesson 16, so the σ will combine with it in the following way:

(Gutturals) κ γ χ + σ = ξ

(Labials) π β φ + σ = ψ

(Dentals) τ δ θ + σ = σ

These letters (or sounds) are called *mutēs* because each of them needs a vowel either preceding or following.

These changes can be seen in the following table:

Verb	English	Future	Aorist	Consonant
				κ
ἐκλέγομαι	I choose, select		ἐξελεξάμην	γ
δέχομαι	I receive	δέξομαι	έδεξάμην	χ

				σσ
ἄπτομαι	I touch	ἄψομαι	ἠψάμην	π
ἀμείβομαι	I reward	ἀμείψομαι	(ἠμειψάμην)	β
μέμφομαι	I blame	μέμψομαι	έμεμψάμην	φ
ἐργάζομαι	I work	ἐργάσομαι	ἠργασάμην	ζ (δς)
				θ

### 25.5.3 Imperative

The Aorist Middle Imperative is conjugated thus:

Singular	2	λῦσαι	τίμησαι	φίλησαι	δήλωσαι	ἄρξαι
	3	λυσάσθω	τιμησάσθω	φιλησάσθω	δηλωσάσθω	ἄρξάσθω
Plural	2	λύσασθε	τιμήσασθε	φιλήσασθε	δηλώσασθε	ἄρξασθε
	3	λυσάσθωσαν	τιμησάσθωσαν	φιλησάσθωσαν	δηλωσάσθωσαν	ἄρξάσθωσαν

### 25.5.4 Infinitive

The Aorist Middle Infinitive is conjugated thus:

λύσασθαι	τιμήσασθαι	φιλήσασθαι	δηλώσασθαι	ἄρξασθαι
----------	------------	------------	------------	----------

In Attic Greek there was also a *Future* Middle Infinitive, but this is not used in the New Testament

## 25.6 Deponent Verbs

As was remarked in §25.3, there are a number of verbs that do not have an Active Voice, yet the meaning of the verb is Active; they are said to be *Passive in form but Active in meaning*. From the vocabulary these verbs are:

Present	Future	Aorist	English	Notes
ἄπτομαι	ἄψομαι	ἠψάμην	touch, I (39)	takes the genitive
ἀρνέομαι	ἀρνήσομαι	ἠρνησάμην	deny, I (33)	
ἀσπάζομαι	ἀσπάσομαι	ἠσπασάμην	greet, I (59)	
δέχομαι	δέξομαι	έδεξάμην	receive, I (56)	
ἐργάζομαι	ἐργάσομαι	ἠργασάμην	work, I (40)	
εὔχομαι	εὔξομαι	εὔξάμην	pray, I (7)	also, ηὐχαμην
λογίζομαι	λογοιῶμαι	έλογισάμην	reckon, I; consider, I (40)	An exception in the future
πορεύομαι	πορεύσομαι	έπορεύθην	go, I; walk, I; march, I (153)	An exception in the aorist
ψεύδομαι	ψεύσομαι	έψευσάμην	deceive, I; lie, I (12)	

Note that the aorist and future tenses for these verbs have the form of the Aorist and Future Middle as shown in §25.5, with two exceptions! These exceptions will be considered in Lesson 29.

## 25.7 ἔρχομαι

This very common verb has the following principal parts; the principal verb is shown first followed by the compound verbs:

Present	English	Future	Aorist	Perfect
ἔρχομαι	I come	ἐλεύσομαι	ἦλθον	ἐλήλυθα
ἀπέρχομαι	I come from	ἀπελεύσομαι	ἀπῆλθον	ἀπελήλυθα
εἰσέρχομαι	I come in	εἰσελεύσομαι	εἰσῆλθον	εἰσελήλυθα
διέρχομαι	I come through	διελεύσομαι	διῆλθον	διελήλυθα
προσέρχομαι	I come towards	προσελεύσομαι	προσῆλθον	προσελήλυθα

The Imperative and Infinitive are conjugated as follows:

		ἔρχομαι	ἀπέρχομαι	εἰσέρχομαι	διέρχομαι	προσέρχομαι
Present	S 2	ἔρχου	ἀπέρχου	εἰσέρχου	διέρχου	προσέρχου
	Imperative	S 3	ἔρχεσθω	ἀπερχέσθω	εἰσερχέσθω	διερχέσθω
	P 2	ἔρχεσθε	ἀπέρχεσθε	εἰσερχεσθε	διέρχεσθε	προσέρχεσθε
	P 3	ἔρχεσθωσαν	ἀπερχέσθωσαν	εἰσερχέσθωσαν	διερχέσθωσαν	προσερχέσθωσαν
Aorist	S 2	ἐλθέ	ἀπέλθε	εἰσέλθε	διέλθε	προσέλθε
	Imperative	S 3	ἐλθέτω	ἀπελθέτω	εἰσελθέτω	διελθέτω
	P 2	ἔλθετε	ἀπέλθετε	εἰσελθετε	διέλθετε	προσέλθετε
	P 3	ἐλθέτωσαν	ἀπελθέτωσαν	εἰσελθέτωσαν	διελθέτωσαν	προσελθέτωσαν
Pr. Inf		ἔρχεσθαι	ἀπέρχεσθαι	εἰσερχεσθαι	διέρχεσθαι	προσέρχεσθαι
Ao. Inf		ἐλθεῖν	ἀπελθεῖν	εἰσελθεῖν	διελθεῖν	προσελθεῖν

### Notes

- It will be evident that this verb is highly irregular; fortunately (!) it occurs so frequently it quickly becomes second nature.
- The Future tense is like a Future Middle (see §25.5), the Aorist has an *active* form similar to the verbs shown in Lesson 24.
- There is no Perfect Passive or Aorist Passive
- ἔρχομαι is often used in the sense of ‘I go’, as well as ‘I come’; this is also a feature of all of the compound forms and all tenses.

## 25.8 Verbs with a Future Middle

Some verbs do not form the future in the usual manner; the form of the Future tense is more like a Future Middle. Here are the principal parts of such verbs:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Perfect Passive	Aorist Passive
ἀκούω	ἀκούσομαι <sup>1</sup>	ἤκουσα	ἀκήκοα		ἠκούσθην
βαίνω <sup>2</sup>	βήσομαι	ἔβην	βέβηκα	-	-
γινώσκω	γνώσομαι	ἔγνων	ἔγνωκα	ἔγνωσμαι	ἐγνώσθην
δάκνω	δήξομαι	ἔδακον	δέδηχα	δέδεγμαι	ἐδήχθην
ἐσθίω	φάγομαι	ἔφαγον		-	-
-θνήσκω <sup>2</sup>	-θανοῦμαι	-ἔθανον	τέθνηκα	-	-
λαμβάνω	λήψομαι	ἔλαβον	εἴληφα	ἔλημμαι	ἐλήμφθην
μανθάνω	μαθήσομαι	ἔμαθον	μεμάθηκα	-	-
ὀράω	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	έόρακα	έόραμαι <sup>2</sup>	ὠφθην
πάσχω	πείσομαι	ἔπαθον	πέπονθα	-	-
πίνω	πίομαι	ἔπιον	πέπωκα	πέπομαι <sup>2</sup>	ἐπόθην
πίπτω <sup>3</sup>	πεσοῦμαι	ἔπεσον	πέπτωκα	-	-
φεύγω	φεύξομαι	ἔφυγον	πέφευγα	-	-

<sup>1</sup> The usual future of ἀκούω in the New Testament is ἀκούσω, but ἀκούσομαι is also found.

<sup>2</sup> These verbs only occur in the compound form

<sup>3</sup> The passive of πίπτω is expressed by the passive of βάλλω.

## 25.9 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

Κύριε, σήμερον μαθησόμεθα τὸ μέσον τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσης. τοῦτο τὸ νόημα οὐκ ὑπάρχει ἐν τῇ γλῶσση ἡμῶν ὥστε δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν νεότατον νόημα. βοήθει σὺν ἡμῖν ὦ κύριε μαθοῦσι ταῦτα.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Today, O Lord, we shall learn the middle voice of the Greek Language. This concept does not exist in our own language so that we must learn a very new idea. Help us Lord as we learn these things.

Amen.

## 25.10 Exercises – A

### 25.10.1 Translate into English

1. ἐδεξάμεθα τὰς ἀγγελίας ἅς ἐπεμψας ἡμῖν.
2. ἤργασάμην ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς .
3. οὐκ ἄρνήσομαι τὸν Ἰησοῦν.
4. τὴν οἰκίαν εἰσήλθον καὶ ἠσπασάμην τοὺς φίλους μου.
5. ἐνδυσάμεθα λευκὰ ἱμάτια.
6. ζῆτει καὶ εὐρήσεις.
7. ἀναβησόμεθα πρὸς τὸ ἄκρον καὶ τὴν θάλασσαν ὀψόμεθα.
8. μέμφεται ὁ κακὸς ἄλλους.
9. βήσεται ὁ δοῦλος πρὸς τὴν ἀγόραν καὶ ἄξει τὰ τέκνα πρὸς τὸν οἶκόν ἡμῶν.
10. ὁ Παῦλος σὺν ἄλλῳ μαθητῇ διήλθον διὰ τῆς χώρας τῶν Γαλάτων.
11. ψεύδονται μὲν οἱ ἀνοητοὶ, λέγουσι δὲ τὴν ἀληθείαν οἱ σοφοί.
12. αὐτὸν ὀψόμεθα τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς ἡμῶν.

### 25.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. The soldiers came away from the village and led the prisoners to their camp.
2. By his words he proclaimed the truth.
3. I wrote a letter to the elders of this temple.
4. Paul blessed the bread and the wine in the assembly in the house.
5. We greeted our friends and ate the meal together.
6. We heard wise words in the assembly.
7. He cannot deny what he did.
8. The false prophets deceived the people.
9. We went through the land of Cappadocia to the land of Galatia.
10. We came towards the tower which was far off.
11. This man was looking at the heavens but the other man was looking at the world.
12. Jesus entered Jerusalem and the crowds greeted him.

## 25.11 Exercises – B

### 25.11.1 Translate into English

1. ἐτοιμῶμεν πέμψαι ταύτην τὴν ἀγγελίαν πρὸς τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους.
2. ἀπάξω τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τὸν ἀγρον καὶ αὐτὰ φυλάξω ἀπὸ τῶν κλεπτῶν.
3. ἐδεξάμεθα τὰ δῶρα καὶ τὸν οἶνον ἃ ἡμῖν ἔπεμψας.
4. εἰσήλθον οἱ φίλοι ἡμῶν καὶ αὐτοὺς ἠσπασάμεθα.
5. μὴ δύνασθε φέρειν τὸ σταυρόν;
6. ἔγγιζε τῷ θεῷ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐγγίσει σοι.
7. διήλθομεν διὰ τῆς ἐρήμου καὶ εἰσήλομεν εἰς τὴν γῆν ἣν ὁ κύριος ἐποίησε ἡμῖν.
8. ἄρνοῦ τὰ τοῦ διαβόλου ἀλλὰ φίλει τὰ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
9. ἐπορεύσαντο οἱ στρατιῶται ἐκ τῆς κώμης πρὸς τὸ στρατόπεδον αὐτῶν.
10. οὐ δύνασαι ἰδεῖν τὰ δένδρα;
11. ἀσπάσασθε τοὺς μαθητὰς, τὸν Ἰωάννην, τὸν Πέτρον καὶ τὸν Φίλιππον.

12. δεξάσθω τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἣν αὐτῇ ἔπεμψα.

### 25.11.2 Translate into Greek

1. I do not lie concerning the matters of the cross.
2. The ships on the sea were being seen by me.
3. We sent the sheep which were in the first field to the village.
4. In the temple the good women were making clothes for the children.
5. Jesus was not heard by the Pharisees.
6. The men with Paul were walking towards the market in this village.
7. The sheep were being led from the fields into the market by them.
8. The good servants heard the words of the wise apostles.
9. Jesus touched the eyes of the blind man and he was able to see.
10. Are you able to go through the desert?
11. The Athenians were not persuaded by Paul.
12. The elders spoke in the assembly but the crowd did not listen to their words.





## Lesson 26 – τίθημι

### 26.1 Lesson 26 Outline

- 26.2 Vocabulary 26
- 26.3 -μι verbs – an Introduction
- 26.4 τίθημι – Conjugation
- 26.5 Use of τίθημι in the New Testament
- 26.6 Hebrew Names
- 26.7 Opening Prayer
- 26.8 Exercises A
  - 26.8.1 Translate into English
  - 26.8.2 Translate into Greek
- 26.9 Exercises B
  - 26.9.1 Translate into English
  - 26.9.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

σήμερον, Κύριε, μαθησόμεθα νεὸν ῥήμα· σφόδρα πολλάκις τοῦτο τὸ ῥήμα ἐν τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ ἐστὶν ὥστε ἡμᾶς δεῖν αὐτὸ μάθειν. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύουσι τούτους τοὺς λόγους, Κύριε.

Ἀμήν

Place me on Sunium's marbled steep,  
Where nothing, save the waves and I,  
May hear our mutual murmurs sweep,  
There, swan-like, let me sing and die:  
A land of slaves shall ne'er be mine,  
Dash down yon cup of Samian wine

Don Juan  
C III st 86, 16  
Lord Byron

## 26.2 Vocabulary Lesson 26

<b>τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα</b>	place, I; put, I (100)	
<b>ἀποτίθημι, ἀποθήσω, ἀπέθηκα</b>	Act: put away, I Mid: put away from myself, I (9)	In the NT only used in the Middle Voice
<b>ἐπιτίθημι, ἐπιθήσω, ἐπέθηκα</b>	Act: place upon, I (39) Mid: put on myself, I or for myself	
<b>παρατίθημι, παραθήσω, παρέθηκα</b>	set before, I; commend, I; explain, I (19)	The person is Dat. the thing is Acc.
<b>προστίθημι, προσθήσω, προσέθηκα</b>	Act: put to, I; also, give, I; bestow, I (18)	Active: the thing added is Acc. the thing to which it is added is Dat.
<b>συντίθημι, συνθήσω, συνέθηκα</b>	Act: put together, I; also, build, I; construct, I Mid: put together for myself, I (3)	In the NT only used in the Middle Voice
<b>ἀθετέω, ἀθετήσω, ἠθέτησα</b>	set aside, I; ignore, I (16)	This is derived from τίθημι
<b>κεῖμαι, κείσομαι</b>	lie, I (24)	In the sense of lying down; it is also used as a <i>passive</i> for τίθημι; it is conjugated like δύναμαι
<b>Nouns</b>		
<b>διδασχὴ ἢ, διδασχῆς</b>	teaching	
<b>προδότης, ὁ, προδότου</b>	traitor (3)	
<b>πτερύγιον, τό, πτερυγίου</b>	pinnacle (2)	
<b>τράπεζα, ἡ</b>	table (14)	
<b>φορτίον, τό</b>	burden (5)	
<b>Adjectives</b>		
<b>ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν</b>	left (4)	
<b>δεξιός -ά -όν</b>	right (54)	
<b>Proper Names</b>		
<b>Βαρναβᾶς, ὁ, Βαρναβᾶ</b>	Barnabus (28)	These nouns are declined using the 'Doric Genitive'.
<b>Ἰούδας, ὁ, Ἰούδα</b>	Judas (44)	
<b>Σατανᾶς ὁ, Σατανᾶ</b>	Satan (36)	
<b>Κύπρος ἡ, Κύπρου</b>	Cyprus (5)	
<b>Σαούλ, ὁ, Σαούλ</b>	Saul	This is indeclinable

## 26.3 –μι verbs – an Introduction

Most verbs in Greek are conjugated like the ones in –ω, but there is a small group of verbs, called the verbs in –μι, which are conjugated differently in the Present, Imperfect and Strong Aorist tenses. We have already met one –μι verb, εἶμι to be, but there are some others.

It is an unfortunate fact that these verbs, although few in number, are very common, and although *most* books leave them to the end, I think it is advisable to tackle them at a much earlier point in the course. As an example as to how common they are in the New Testament, δίδωμι (I give) is in the top ten, ἵστημι (I set up/stand) is in the top thirty, and τίθημι (I place), is in the top fifty. We shall study two of these verbs in the next two lessons. There are also several other –μι verbs which are compounded with prepositions which are in the top fifty.

There is a tendency in Koine Greek for *some* –μι verbs to be assimilated to –ω verbs; this assimilation is almost complete in Modern Greek.

### 26.3.1 Presentation in this Lesson

Thus far, in this course, we have encountered the following tenses:

- Present (Lesson 2)
- Imperfect (Lesson 3)
- Future (Lesson 16)
- Aorist (Lesson 16)

We have also seen the following Voices:

- Active
- Passive
- Middle

The conjugation of verbs like τίθημι and δίδωμι differs in the Present, Imperfect and Strong Aorist. In this Lesson the conjugation of τίθημι and δίδωμι is shown in the Active, Middle and Passive Voices, Indicative and Imperative Moods and the Infinitive.

## 26.4 τίθημι - Conjugation

The full conjugation of τίθημι is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §4.3.2; here is an abbreviated version of the conjugation:

### 26.4.1 Active Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Present I am placing	S 1	τίθημι	ἐτίθην		τιθέναι
	S 2	τίθης	ἐτίθεις	τίθει	
Imperfect I was placing	S 3	τίθησι(ν)	ἐτίθει	τιθέτω	
	P 1	τίθεμεν	ἐτίθεμεν		
	P 2	τίθετε	ἐτίθετε	τίθετε	
	P 3	τιθέασι(ν)	ἐτίθεσαν	τιθέτωσαν	
Future I shall place	S 1	θήσω			
	S 2	θήσεις			
	S 3	θήσει			
	P 1	θήσομεν			
	P 2	θήσετε			
	P 3	θήσουσι(ν)			
Aorist I placed	S 1		ἔθηκα		θεῖναι
	S 2		ἔθηκας	θές	
	S 3		ἔθηκε(ν)	θέτω	
	P 1		ἔθεμεν		
	P 2		ἔθετε	θέτε	
	P 3		ἔθεσαν	θέτωσαν	

#### Notes:

1. The conjugation in the Aorist in the singular (ἔθηκα ἔθηκας ἔθηκε) shows the *Weak* Aorist endings, the plural (ἔθεμεν ἔθετε ἔθεσαν) shows the *Strong* aorist endings.
2. The future infinitive as shown in Koine Greek Accidence §4.3.2 does not occur in the New Testament

## 26.4.2 Passive Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Present I am placed	S 1	τίθεμαι	ἐτιθέμην		τίθεσθαι
	S 2	τίθεσαι	ἐτίθεσο	τίθεσο	
	S 3	τίθεται	ἐτίθετο	τιθέσθω	
Imperfect I was being placed	P 1	τιθέμεθα	ἐτιθέμεθα		
	P 2	τίθεσθε	ἐτίθεσθε	τίθεσθε	
	P 3	τίθενται	ἐτίθεντο	τιθέσθωσαν	
Future I shall be placed	S 1	τεθήσομαι			
	S 2	τεθήσει			
	S 3	τεθήσεται			
	P 1	τεθησόμεθα			
	P 2	τεθήσεσθε			
	P 3	τεθήσονται			
Aorist I was placed	S 1		ἐθέμην		
	S 2		ἔθου	-	
	S 3		ἔθετο	-	
	P 1		ἐθέμεθα		
	P 2		ἔθεσθε	-	
	P 3		ἔθεντο	-	

## 26.4.3 Middle Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Aorist I was putting for myself	S 1		ἐθέμην		θέσθαι
	S 2		ἔθου	θοῦ	
	S 3		ἔθετο	θέσθω	
	P 1		ἐθέμεθα		
	P 2		ἔθεσθε	θέσθε	
	P 3		ἔθεντο	θέσθων	

## 26.5 Use of τίθημι in the New Testament

Apart from the fact that it is a **-μι** and not an **-ω** verb, **τίθημι** behaves in the same way as other *transitive* verbs. Here are some examples of the use of **τίθημι** and **ἐπιτίθημι**:

εἶτα πάλιν ἐπέθηκεν τὰς χεῖρας αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς αὐτοῦ,

Κατὰ Μάρκον 8:25

Then **he placed** his hands upon his eyes again

ὃν **ἔθηκεν** κληρόνομον πάντων, δι' οὗ καὶ ἐποιήσεν τοὺς αἰώνας.

Πρὸς Ἑβραίους 1:2

Whom **he hath appointed** the heir of all things

ὅτι **οὐκ ἔθετο** ἡμᾶς ὁ θεὸς εἰς ὀργὴν ἀλλ' εἰς περιποιήσιν σωτηρίας διὰ τοῦ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ.

Πρὸς Θεσσαλονίκεις Α 5:9

Because **God has not put** us into wrath, but into possessing salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ.

ἰδοὺ, **τίθημι** ἐν Σιών λίθον ἀκρογωνιαῖον ἐκλεκτὸν ἔντιμον καὶ ὁ πιστεύων αὐτῷ οὐ μὴ κατασχυνθῆ

Πέτρου Ἐπιστολὴ Πρῶτη 2:6

Behold, **I place** in Sion a cornerstone chosen and honoured and he who believes in it shall not be ashamed.

This last quotation, taken from Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> Revised Edition, is actually from the Old Testament, Isaiah 28:16. Usually, such quotations are taken from the LXX, but my edition of the LXX reads as follows:

διὰ τοῦτο οὕτως λέγει ὁ κύριος· Ἴδοὺ, ἐγὼ ἐμβαλῶ εἰς τὰ θεμέλια Σιών λίθον πολυτελεῖ ἐκλεκτὸν ἀκρογωνιαῖον ἔντιμον εἰς τὰ θεμέλια αὐτῆς, καὶ ὁ πιστεύων ἐπ' αὐτῷ οὐ μὴ κατασχυνθῆ.

Because of this, thus says the Lord: Behold I shall set in the foundations of Sion a costly stone, a chosen and honoured cornerstone in her foundations, and the one who believes in him shall not be ashamed.

As can be easily seen the two versions are quite different:

ἐμβαλῶ (Future) instead of τίθημι (Present)

τὰ θεμέλια – not included

λίθον πολυτελεῖ – not included

I could not locate any critical notes on this.

There are two possible reasons for this divergence:

- The writer of 1 Peter was using a different Greek version of Isaiah (now lost) to the one we now have
- The writer of 1 Peter made *his own translation* directly from the Hebrew.

I incline to the latter view as I have found several differences in other 'quotations' in 1 Peter from the LXX.

## 26.6 Hebrew Names

Most Hebrew names, it will have been noticed, are indeclinable, and this is so both in the New Testament and the Septuagint. There are some that are declined in a different way as the following table shows:

	Ἰούδας Judas (44)	Βαρναβᾶς Barnabus (28)	Σατανᾶς Satan (36)
Nominative/Vocative	Ἰούδας	Βαρναβᾶς	Σατανᾶς
Accusative	Ἰούδαν	Βαρναβᾶν	Σατανᾶν
Genitive	Ἰούδα	Βαρναβᾶ	Σατανᾶ
Dative	Ἰούδα	Βαρναβᾶ	Σατανᾶ

The form of the Genitive here is also known as the ‘Doric Genitive’

## 26.7 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

σήμερον, Κύριε, μαθησόμεθα νεὸν ῥήμα· σφόδρα πολλάκις τοῦτο τὸ ῥήμα ἐν τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ ἐστὶν ὥστε ἡμᾶς δεῖν αὐτὸ μάθειν. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύουσι τούτους τοὺς λόγους, Κύριε.

Ἀμήν

Let us pray.

Today, Lord, we shall learn a new verb; this verb is very frequent in the New Testament so that we must learn it. Help us as we study these words, Lord.

Amen

## 26.8 Exercises - A

### 26.8.1 Translate into English

1. τὸν ἄρτον ἔθηκα ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζῃ.
2. ἔλαβες τὸ βιβλίον ὃ ἔθηκα ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζῃ;
3. παρέθεμεν τὸ δεῖπνον τοῖς κλητοῖς ἡμῶν.
4. ἀπόθου τὰς ἀμαρτίας σου.
5. θέλω θεῖναι τοῦτο τὸ φορτίον ἐπὶ τῷ δούλῳ μου.
6. ἔβημεν πρὸς τὸν ναὸν καὶ τὴν μουσικὴν τῶν παιδίων ἠκούσαμεν.
7. λαβὲ τὸ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ δῶρον καὶ τὸ θεὸς ἐπὶ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ.
8. μὴ τιθέτω τὸν οἶνον πρὸ τῶν τέκνων.
9. σοὶ παραθήσω τοὺς ἀρχαίους νομοὺς;
10. ὁ μὲν σοφὸς ἄνθρωπος οἰκίαν συνέθηκε ἀπὸ λίθων· ὁ δὲ ἄλλος αὐτὴν ἐπέθηκε τῇ ἄμμῳ.
11. ἀθετεῖτε μὲν τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ λαμβάνετε δὲ τὰ τοῦ κοσμοῦ.
12. ὁ δοῦλος ἐδέξατο τὸν μισθὸν ὃν αὐτῷ ἔπεμψας.

### 26.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. I wish to put this child into that garden.
2. I shall try to set before you the things of heaven .
3. Put your sins away from yourselves.
4. I shall not set aside the laws of the prophets.
5. He can ask him what he will do.
6. I persuaded him to place his gift in the church.
7. Bless the gifts which the elder placed in the church.
8. Do not say these things but praise the Lord.
9. I put my clothes on and went out to the market.
10. Why<sup>1</sup> did you take my clothes and put them in the river?
11. The soldiers placed their camp near to this village.
12. I am not able to place the books on the table because I do not have them.

<sup>1</sup> Use διὰ τί

## 26.9 Exercises - B

### 26.9.1 Translate into English

1. ἠναγκάσθην σοὶ πωλεῖν τὴν οἰκίαν μου.
2. τοῦτον τὸν δοῦλον, ὅς με διηκόνησε, ὑμῖν παρατίθημι.
3. τὰ ἱμάτιά μου ἐθέμην.
4. ἀθετήσει τὴν διδαχὴν μου;
5. ὁ πρεσβύτερος τάξει τὸν τε ἄρτον καὶ τὸν οἶνον ἐπὶ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ.
6. ἀποθέτω τὸ τέκνον τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ.
7. μὴ ἀθετεῖτε τοὺς τοῦ θεοῦ νομοὺς μηδε πλανᾶτε ἐκ τῶν τῆς δικαιοσύνης ὁδῶν.
8. ὁ Βαρναβᾶς σὺν τῷ Παύλῳ κατήγγελε τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ λόγον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ Κύπρω.
9. εἰσέλθε εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν καὶ ἐπίθετε τοῦτο τὸν βιβλίον ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζῃ.
10. ὦ δοῦλε, θεὸς τὸ δεῖπνον ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζῃ.



11. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἐκεῖτο ἐπὶ τῷ σταυρῷ.
12. παραθέτω ὁ ἄνθρωπος ταῦτα ἡμῖν.

### 26.9.2 Translate into Greek

1. Place your burdens upon Jesus.
2. We prayed to God and he helped us.
3. We shall not set aside the teaching of Jesus.
4. Put the traitor upon the cross.
5. The dinner, which my slave prepared, is placed on the table.
6. He bought a slave in the market and forced him to come to church.
7. He came into the temple and placed the sheep upon the altar.
8. He will explain the things which he said.
9. The prophet called the people together and commended to them the laws of God..
10. Do not disturb the people but explain good things to them.
11. The left hand way is bad, but the right hand<sup>1</sup> way is good.
12. Barnabus commended Saul to the other disciples

<sup>1</sup> Making the distinction between ‘right’ meaning ‘just’ or ‘correct’ and ‘right’ as opposed to ‘left’.



## Lesson 27 – δίδωμι

### 27.1 Lesson 27 Outline

- 27.2 Vocabulary 27
- 27.3 δίδωμι - Conjugation
- 27.4 Use of δίδωμι in the New Testament
- 27.5 Opening Prayer
- 27.6 Exercises A
  - 27.6.1 Translate into English
  - 27.6.2 Translate into Greek
- 27.7 Exercises B
  - 27.7.1 Translate into English
  - 27.7.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

σήμερον, Κύριε, μαθησόμεθα ἄλλον νεὸν ῥήμα· ὡς τὸ ῥήμα τίθημι καλοῦμενον, σφόδρα πολλάκις τοῦτο τὸ ῥήμα ἐν τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ ἐστὶν ὥστε ἡμᾶς δεῖν αὐτὸ μάθειν. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύουσι τούτους τοὺς λόγους.

Ἀμήν

δίδοτε, καὶ δοθήσεται ὑμῖν· μέτρον καλὸν πεπισμένον σεσαλευμένον ὑπερεκχυννόμενον δώσουσιν εἰς τὸν κόλπον ὑμῶν·

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 6:38

## 27.2 Vocabulary Lesson 27

<b>δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα</b>	give, I (415)	
<b>ἀποδίδωμι, ἀποδώσω, ἀπέδωκα</b>	give back, I; pay, I (48)	
<b>παραδίδωμι, παραδώσω, παρέδωκα</b>	hand over, I; deliver, I; entrust, I (119)	
<b>Nouns</b>		
<b>ἄμμος, ἡ, ἄμμου</b>	sand (5)	
<b>γνώμη, ἡ</b>	opinion, counsel (9)	whence gnomic
<b>κληρονομία ἡ</b>	inheritance (15)	

## 27.3 δίδωμι - Conjugation

The full conjugation of **δίδωμι** is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §4.3.5; here is an abbreviated version of the conjugation:

### 27.3.1 Active Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Present I am giving	S 1	δίδωμι	ἔδιδουν		διδόναι
	S 2	δίδως	ἔδιδους	δίδου	
	S 3	δίδωσι(ν)	ἔδιδου	διδότω	
Imperfect I was giving	P 1	δίδομεν	ἔδίδομεν		
	P 2	δίδοτε	ἔδίδοτε	δίδοτε	
	P 3	διδόασι(ν)	ἔδίδοσαν	διδόντων	
Future I shall give	S 1	δώσω			
	S 2	δώσεις			
	S 3	δώσει			
	P 1	δώσομεν			
	P 2	δώσετε			
	P 3	δώσουσι(ν)			
Aorist I gave	S 1		ἔδωκα		δοῦναι
	S 2		ἔδωκας	δός	
	S 3		ἔδωκε	δότω	
	P 1		ἔδομεν		
	P 2		ἔδοτε	δότε	
	P 3		ἔδοσαν	δόντων	

### 27.3.2 Middle Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Present I am given	S 1	δίδομαι	ἐδιδόμην		δίδοσθαι
	S 2	δίδοσαι	ἐδίδοσο	δίδοσο	
	S 3	δίδοται	ἐδίδοτο	διδόσθω	
Imperfect I was being given	P 1	διδόμεθα	ἐδιδόμεθα		
	P 2	δίδοσθε	ἐδίδοσθε	δίδοσθε	
	P 3	δίδονται	ἐδίδοντο	διδόσθων	
Future I shall be given for myself	S 1	δώσομαι			
	S 2	δώσει			
	S 3	δώσεται			
	P 1	δωσόμεθα			
	P 2	δώσεσθε			
	P 3	δώσονται			
Aorist I was given for myself	S 1		ἐδόμην		δόσθαι
	S 2		ἔδου	δοῦ	
	S 3		έδοσατο	δόσθω	
	P 1		ἐδόμεθα		
	P 2		ἔδοσθε	δόσθε	
	P 3		ἔδοντο	δόσθων	

#### Notes

In the Aorist Active Indicative of δίδωμι, the singular shows the *Weak* Aorist forms, the plural shows the *Strong* Aorist forms. In Attic, the Weak Aorist forms for the plural (ἐδώκαμεν, ἐδώκατε, ἔδωκαν) are described as 'rare' but they do occur in the New Testament; see for example Πρὸς Γαλάτας 4:16.

### 27.3.3 Passive Voice

		Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
		Primary	Historic		
Future I shall be given	S 1	δοθήσομαι			δοθήσεσθαι
	S 2	δοθήσει			
	S 3	δοθήσεται			
	P 1	δοθησόμεθα			
	P 2	δοθήσεσθε			
	P 3	δοθήσονται			
Aorist I was being given	S 1		ἐδόθην		δοθῆναι
	S 2		ἐδόθης	-	
	S 3		ἐδόθη	-	
	P 1		ἐδόθημεν		
	P 2		ἐδόθητε	-	
	P 3		ἐδόθησαν	-	

## 27.4 Use of δίδωμι in the New Testament

Here are some examples of the use of **δίδωμι**

ἀπεκρίθη Ἰησοῦς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ· εἰ ἤδεις τὴν δωρεὰν τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τίς ἐστὶν ὁ λέγων σοι· δός μοι πεῖν, σὺ ἂν ἤτησας αὐτὸν καὶ ἔδωκεν ἂν ὕδωρ ζῶν.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 4:10

Jesus answered and said to her, 'if you knew the gift of God and who it is saying to you 'give me a drink', you would ask him and he would give living water.

ἀμὴν λέγω σοι, οὐ μὴ ἐξέλθῃς ἕως ἂν ἀποδῷς τὸν ἔσχατον κοδράντην.

Κατὰ Ματθαῖον 5:26

Truly I say to you, you shall not come out until you have paid the last penny

χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ εἰρήνη ἀπὸ θεοῦ πατρὸς ἡμῶν καὶ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ δόντος ἑαυτὸν ὑπὲρ τῶν ἁρartiῶν ἡμῶν

Πρὸς Γαλάτας 1, 4

Grace to you and peace from God our father and the Lord Jesus Christ who gave himself for our sins.

## 27.5 Opening Prayer

**Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι**

εὐχόμεθα

σήμερον, Κύριε, μαθησόμεθα ἄλλον νεὸν ῥήμα· ὡς τὸ ῥήμα τίθημι καλοῦμενον, σφόδρα πολλάκις τοῦτο τὸ ῥήμα ἐν τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ ἐστὶν ὥστε ἡμας δεῖν αὐτὸ μάθειν. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύουσι τούτους τοὺς λόγους.

Ἀμήν

Let us pray.

Today, Lord, we shall learn another new verb; like the verb called τίθημι, this verb occurs many times in the New Testament, so we must learn it. Therefore, help us Lord as we study these words.

Amen

## 27.6 Exercises A

### 27.6.1 Translate into English

1. παρέδωκα τὴν ἐπιστολὴν τῷ ἀγαθῷ δούλῳ.
2. ἀπέδωκε ὁ κλέπτης ἃ ἔκλεψε.
3. ἔδωκας μὲν διδασχὴν αὐτοῖς· ἔλαβες δὲ ἀργύριον ἀπ' αὐτῶν.
4. ἔχει κληρονομίαν, ἀλλ' οὐ σοι δώσει.
5. ἀπόδος ἃ ἐκλέψας ἀπ' ἐμοῦ.
6. ὁ θεὸς δίδωσι ζωὴν τῷ λαῷ αὐτοῦ.
7. σοι δώσω τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἣν ἐδεξάμην ἀπὸ τοῦ φίλου μου.
8. αὕτη ἡ γνώμη καλὴ ἐστίν· χαίρω αὐτῇ<sup>1</sup>.
9. οὐ δώσεις καλὰ δῶρα τοῖς τέκνοις σου;
10. κύριε, δίδασκέ με τὰς ὁδοὺς σου καὶ σε ἐπαίνησω.
11. οὐ δύναταί σοι δοῦναι ἃ οὐκ ἔχει.
12. ἐκελεύθη ἀποδοῦναι ἐμοὶ τὸν βιβλίον.  
<sup>1</sup> χαίρω takes a dative for the thing rejoiced; rarely the accusative.

### 27.6.2 Translate into Greek

1. I returned (gave back) the books to my friend.
2. The Lord gave a good land to the sons of Israel.
3. Remember to give bread to our guests.
4. I greeted my friends and gave them a gift.
5. The guests came to my house and I gave a dinner to them.
6. I gave to him the books which I had in my house.
7. I wish to give my inheritance to my children.
8. The general placed a guard on the tomb.
9. The son wandered, but Jesus sought him.
10. Pay the workman his wage.
11. He will not hand you over to your enemies.
12. The good judge released the slave and gave him money.

## 27.7 Exercises - B

### 27.7.1 Translate into English

1. ἀνεγίνωσκον τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἣν ἐμοὶ ἔδωκας.
2. ὁ Ἰούδας, ὁ προδότης, παρέδωκε τὸν Ἰησοῦν τοῖς Φαρισαίοις.
3. τὰ δῶρα, ἃ ἐμοὶ ἔδωκε ὁ λαός, ἔθηκα ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ πρὸ τῶν πρεσβυτέρων.
4. ἔμαθες τὴν διδασχὴν ἣν σοι ἔδωκα;
5. θέλομεν δοῦναι γνώμην ἡμῶν τῷ Παύλῳ.
6. οἱ στρατιῶται τῷ Ἰησοῦ ἔδοσαν οἶνον πίνειν.
7. τὸ στρατόπεδον παρεδόθη<sup>1</sup> ὑπὸ τῶν προδότων.
8. ὁ κύριος ἐκέλευσε τὸν δοῦλον λαβεῖν τὴν ἐπιστολὴν καὶ αὐτὴν ἐνεγκειν πρὸς τὸν φίλον μου.
9. ἃ μὲν δώσω τῇ δεξίᾳ, δεξόμην δὲ τῇ ἀριστερᾷ.
10. ἔβην πρὸς τὴν κώμην περὶ ἧς εἶπε.

11. ἔπεισα αὐτῷ δοῦναί σοι τὸ βιβλίον.

12. ἐκελεύθη νίψαι ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ.

<sup>1</sup> δίδωμι can be used in the passive voice; the conjugation is ἐδόθην, ἐδόθης, ἐδόθη, ἐδόθημεν, ἐδόθητε, ἐδόθησαν

### 27.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. I received the cup which you gave to me.

2. Barnabus and Paul went from Jerusalem to Cyprus and announced the good news.

3. I compelled him to travel with me through the desert.

4. Jesus gave good teaching both to the people and to his disciples.

5. They buried the money which you gave to them in that field.

6. I will bestow my land and my house upon my children.

7. With the finger of God he wrote a message.

8. The angel visited Mary and spoke to her.

9. He stole the gift which I gave to the widow.

10. In Egypt we marvelled at the temples.

11. We gave money to the people of the village and went away to another village.

12. Try to do this work.



## Lesson 28 – Revision V

### 28.1 Lesson 28 Outline

- 28.2 Vocabulary 28
- 28.3 Parsing
- 28.4.1 Verbs
- 28.4.2 Adjectives
- 28.4.3 Nouns
- 28.5 Exercises A
- 28.5.1 Translate into English
- 28.5.2 Translate into Greek
- 28.6 Exercises B
- 28.6.1 Translate into English
- 28.6.2 Translate into Greek
- 28.7 Opening prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

κύριε, ἐμάθομεν πολλὰ ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν πλείον. σήμερον, μέντοι, ἀνορθώσομεν ἃ ἤδη μεμαθήκαμεν. θέλομεν δὴ μαθεῖν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ἵνα ἀναγνώμεν τὸν λόγον σου. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ὦ κύριε, ἀγωνιζομένοις ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα.

Ἀμήν

καὶ εἶδον οὐρανὸν καινὸν καὶ γῆν καινὴν. ὁ γὰρ πρῶτος οὐρανὸς καὶ ἡ πρώτη γῆ ἀπῆλθαν καὶ ἡ θάλασσα οὐκ ἔστιν ἔτι.

Ἡ Καινὴ Διαθήκη  
Ἀποκάλυψις Ἰωάννου 21:1

## 28.2 Vocabulary Lesson 28

Verbs		
<b>ἀπειλέω, ἀπειλήσω, ἠπειλήσα</b>	threaten, I (2)	takes a dative of the person, accusative of the thing threatened
<b>καταμαθάνω, καταμαθήσομαι, κατέμαθον</b>	understand, I (1)	
<b>λιθάζω, λιθάσω, ἐλίθασα</b>	stone, I (9)	
<b>ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα</b>	owe, I (35)	takes a dative of the person owed to
<b>σκανδαλίζω, σκαναδαλίσω, ἐσκανδάλισα</b>	cause to stumble I; give offence to I (29)	
<b>συμφονέω, συμφονήσω, συμφωνήσα</b>	agree, I (6)	takes a dative
Nouns		
<b>γεωργός, ὁ</b>	farmer (18)	Note the relationship to γῆ
<b>ἔλαιον, τό</b>	olive-oil	
<b>μήλον, τό</b>	apple	This refers either to the tree or the fruit
<b>πολέμιος, ὁ</b>	enemy	Doesn't occur in the New testament but πόλεμος and πολεμέω do. Whence polemic.
Adjectives		
<b>θεμέλιος, -α, -ον</b>	belonging to the foundation (15)	
<b>Ἰούδας</b>	Judas Iscariot (29)	

## 28.3 Parsing

This section is laid out in the same way as the Parsing sections in Lesson 22.

### 28.3.1 Verbs

The 'Mood' will be one of Indicative, Imperative or Infinitive

	Verb	Greek 1st pers. sg.	English from 1st p.	Number and person	Tense	Voice	Mood
1	ἐγράψαμεν						
2	ἠγγείλαμεν						
3	ἔδωκα						
4	ἠρνοῦντο						
5	μετανόει						
6	ἔδακε						
7	τιμᾶν						
8	ἔβαλε						
9	ἐτίθεμεν						
10	ἐθερίσαμεν						
11	ἐδέξατο						
12	ἀπέδωκε						
13	θήσω						
14	ἤψω						
15	ἔδραμον						

### 28.3.2 Nouns

	Noun	Greek Nominative	Eng. from Nominative	Gender	Case	Number
1	καιρῷ					
2	λιμούς					
3	θαλάσσης					
4	διόπτρῳ					
5	θησαυρούς					
6	ῥας					
7	ἔλαια					
8	πλοῖα					
9	σταυροῖς					
10	ζωῆ					
11	φθογγούς					
12	ἐργάται					
13	χηράς					
14	ἐρήμους					
15	κῆπου					
16	οικίας					

### 28.3.3 Adjectives

	Adjective	Masc. Sing. Nominative	English from Masc Sg Nom	Gender	Case	Number
1	μακαρίας					
2	πλουσιαῖς					
3	λευκαῖς					
4	κακοῖς					
5	νέα					
6	ἀγαθέ					
7	λευκούς					
8	ὀλίγην					
9	μακραῖς					
10	πτωχῆς					
11	παλαιᾶ					
12	καινῶ					
13	σοφὴν					
14	μόνη					
15	τέταρτον					
16	τυφλοῦς					

## 28.4 Exercises – A

### 28.4.1 Translate into English

1. δότω ἃ δύναται δοῦναι.
2. πρῶτον μὲν ὁ Παῦλος ἔδωξε τοὺς μαθητὰς τοῦ Ἰησοῦ, ἔπειτα δὲ, ἐκύρυξε τὰ ἀγαθὰ περὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ πρὸς τὸν κόσμον.
3. γινωσκόμεθα μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ μισούμεθα δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ κόσμου.
4. κύριε, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀκολουθῆσαι σοί.
5. ὀψόμεθα δὲ αὐτὸν ἐν ταῖς νεφέλαις.
6. δὸς τοῦτο τὸ βιβλίον τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ.
7. οὐ δύνανται οἱ Φαρισαῖοι σκανδαλίσαι τὸν Ἰησοῦν.
8. μὴ δίδου τόπον τῷ διαβόλῳ.
9. μὴ ἀθέτει τὰς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐντολάς.
10. δοῦλε, θές τὸ δεῖπνον, ὃ ἠτοίμασας, ἐπὶ τῇ τράπεζᾳ.
11. ὁ σοφὸς τίθησι τὰ θεμέλια τοῦ οἴκου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ πέτραν.

### 28.4.2 Translate into Greek

1. Greet our friends in the market.
2. You are able to carry this burden, aren't you?
3. We paid the elders for their work in the church.
4. Stephen proclaimed the good news and they stoned him.
5. The people heard the words of the prophet and praised God.
6. He is not able to injure us.
7. Pay what you owe.
8. The disciples carried the leper into the house.
9. The thief took the money out of the temple and fled into the desert.
10. Jesus set the words of God before the people.
11. The enemy ran into the desert.
12. The man came towards us and threatened us.

## 28.5 Exercises – B

### 28.5.1 Translate into English

1. βήσομαι πρὸς τὸν οἶκον τῆς ἀδελφῆς μου καὶ δώσω τὸ δῶρόν μου αὐτῇ.
2. δέξασθε τὸ δῶρον τοῦ ἄρτου καὶ τοῦ οἴνου.
3. πώλησον ἃ ἔχεις καὶ ἀκολούθησόν μοι.
4. τούτοις μὲν πιστεύομεν, ἐκείνοις δὲ οὐκ.
5. ὁ Παῦλος καὶ οἱ μετ' αὐτοῦ ἐδίδαξαν τὸν ὄχλον ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ τε καὶ τῷ ναῷ.
6. ἐπεθέμην τὰ ἱμάτιά μου καὶ ἐξῆλθον πρὸς τὸν ναόν.
7. οὐ φιλοῦσιν οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ τὸν θεὸν ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ φιλοῦνται.
8. ἔδωκε ὁ θεὸς καλὴν γῆν τοῖς υἱοῖς τοῦ Ἰσραήλ.
9. ἤρχοντο φαγεῖν τὸν ἄρτον ὃς ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζᾳ ἦν.
10. τὰ τέκνα ἔδακε τὰ μῆλα.
11. ἐζήτησε ἡ χήρα, καὶ εὔρε.

12. μένετε ἐν Ἱερουσαλὴμ καὶ μάθετε ἃ ὑμῖν λέγω.

### 28.5.2 Translate into Greek

1. The apple fell to the ground.
2. We do not lie but we speak the truth.
3. Jesus was led away by the soldiers who crucified him.
4. I said the word friend and the door opened.
5. The farmer sowed the ground and reaped the fruit.
6. My friend and I wanted to hear what Jesus was saying.
7. The master compelled the slave to carry the burden.
8. The disciples were not able to throw out the demon.
9. I shall not ignore the commands of God.
10. We shall carry the paralysed man outside the house and we shall ask Jesus to heal him.
11. I was compelled to write a letter to them.
12. The soldiers dragged Paul and Silas out of the market place.

### 28.6 Exercises – C

The following sentences are in a mixture of the Active and Passive voice; convert the Active sentences to Passive and vice-versa.

1. τὸ παιδίον ἔδωκε τὸ δῶρον τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ.
2. οὐκ ἐπόθη ὁ οἶνος ὑπὸ τῶν παιδίων.
3. οἱ στρατιῶται ὄφθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν.
4. ὁ δοῦλος ἔθηκε τὸν οἶνον ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζῃ.
5. οὐκ ἐθεραπεύθη ὁ λέπρος ὑπ' αὐτοῦ.
6. τιθέσθω ὁ οἶνος ἐπὶ τῇ τράπεζῃ ὑπὸ τοῦ δούλου.
7. οἱ λίθοι ἐβλήθησαν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ὑπὸ τῶν τέκνων.
8. τοῦτο οὐκ ἐποίησα.
9. ἐλείφθη ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐπὶ τῇ νησὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων ναυτῶν .
10. ἐπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ προφήτου τούτῳ τῷ λαῷ.
11. ἦρε ὁ δοῦλος τὸν θησαυρόν.
12. γράφεται ἡ ἐπιστολὴ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ.

## 28.7 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχή τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

κύριε, ἐμάθομεν πολλὰ ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν πλείον. σήμερον, μέντοι, ἀνορθώσομεν ἃ ἤδη μεμαθήκαμεν. θέλομεν δὴ μαθεῖν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ἵνα ἀναγνώμεν τὸν λόγον σου. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν ὦ κύριε, ἀγωνιζομένοις ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα.

Ἀμήν

Let us pray.

Lord, we have learned many things but we must learn more. Today, however, we shall revise what we have already learned. We do wish to learn this language to read your word. Help us, therefore, O Lord as we wrestle with these concepts.

Amen.



## Lesson 29 – Future and Aorist of Liquid and Nasal Verbs

### 29.1 Lesson 29 Outline

- 29.2 Vocabulary 29
- 29.3 Future Tenses
- 29.4 Future of Liquid and Nasal Verbs
- 29.5 ‘Attic’ Future
- 29.6 Future Middle Tenses
- 29.7 A note about the use of Liddell & Scott and Arndt & Gingrich
- 29.8 Aorist of Liquid and Nasal Verbs
- 29.9 Opening prayer
- 29.10 Exercises A
  - 29.10.1 Translate into English
  - 29.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 29.11 Exercises B
  - 29.11.1 Translate into English
  - 29.11.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχή τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, γινώσκεις καὶ συνήσῃ πάντα· σ’ ἐπαίνομεν καὶ δοξαζόμεν διὰ τῆς δόξης σου. νῦν δὲ βοήθει ἡμῖν, σ’ αἰτοῦμεν, μάθειν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε ἡμεῖς δυνάμεθα ἀναγινώσκειν τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην ἢ ἐκυρηξας τῶ ὀλῶ κόσμῳ. καὶ δὴ κύριε, δὸς ἐμὲ τὴν ἐξουσίαν δίδαξαι φανερώς ὥστε οἱ μαθηταί μου συνήσουσι τὴν γραμματικὴν τέχνην τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσας.

Ἀμήν.

Καὶ ἐγένετο ἐν τῶ κρίνειν τοὺς κριτὰς καὶ ἐγένετο λιμὸς ἐν τῇ γῆ, καὶ ἐπορεύθη ἀνὴρ ἀπὸ Βαιθλεεμ τῆς Ἰουδα τοῦ παροικῆσαι ἐν ἀγρῶ Μωαβ, αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ υἱοὶ αὐτοῦ.

LXX

Ρουθ 1:1-2

## 29.2 Vocabulary Lesson 29

Some of these verbs have been given in previous vocabularies but they are repeated here for convenience.

ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα	announce, I (2)	
αἶρω, ἄρω, ἤρα	arise, I (19)	
ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι or ἀκούσω, ἤκουσα	hear, I (428)	Both forms of the future are in use in the New Testament
ἄλλομαι, ἀλοῦμαι, ἤλαμην	spring, I; jump, I (3)	Note the <i>strong</i> Aorist
ἀποστέλλω, ἀποστελῶ, ἀπέστειλα	send away, I; send out, I (132)	apostle
αὐλέω, αὐλησῶ, ἠύλησα	play the flute, I	
βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον	throw, I (122)	
βαπτίζω, βαπτίσω, ἐβάπτισα	baptise, I (77)	
διαλογίζομαι, διαλογιοῦμαι, διελογισάμην	I consider, ponder, reason (16)	
ἐγείρω, ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα	raise, I (144)	
ἐγγίζω, ἐγγιῶ, ἤγγισα	near, I; approach, I (42)	
ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα	drive, I	ἐλῶ is the Attic form of the future, one can also see ἐλάσω
ἐλπίζω, ἐλπῶ, ἤλπισα	hope, I (31)	
ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἤλθον	come, I (632)	
καθαρίζω, καθαριῶ, ἐκαθάρισα	cleanses, I; purify, I (31)	
κιθαρίζω, κιθαρίσω, ἐκιθάρισα	play the lyre, I	κιθάρα, lyre, occurs 4 times in the NT
κρίνω, κρινῶ, ἔκρινα	judge, I (114)	
λαμβάνω, λήμψομαι, ἔλαβον	take, I (258)	
λέγω, ἐρῶ, εἶπον	say, I (2353)	
μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα	stay, I (118)	can also be used for 'to wait', the person or thing awaited is accusative
ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον	see, I (454)	
σπείρω, σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα	sow, I (42)	
στέλλω, στελῶ, ἐστείλα	send, I	
τέμνω, τεμῶ, ἔτεμον	cut, I	
χέω, χεῶ, ἔχεα	pour out, I	This only occurs in compound words
φθείρω, φθερῶ, ἔφθειρα	destroy, I (8)	
<b>Nouns</b>		
ἀρετή, ἡ	virtue (5)	
ἐλάφος, ὁ	hart, stag	distinguish this from ἐλέφας, elephant
εὐσέβεια, ἡ	holiness, piety (15)	
καλλονή, ἡ	beauty	

καρπός, ὄ	fruit, crops (66)	καρπός is also used more generally as produce, crops or returns
Λευί	Levi	from Hebrew, indeclinable
ξύλον, τό	wood (3)	xylophone, xylem
<b>Adjective</b>		
νεκρός, -ή, -όν	dead (128)	necropolis
<b>Conjunction</b>		
ὡς	as, like (187)	
<b>Adverb</b>		
ἐξαίφνης	suddenly (5)	

### 29.3 Future tenses

Many Greek verbs form the future tense in a different way to that which has been discussed so far. Usually the future is indicated by the addition of σ to the stem so λύω, λύσω, πράσσω, πράξω, πέμπω, πέμψω and so on. In this Lesson we shall study three different ways of the formation of the future, though two of them are actually the same. These are:

- Future of Liquid and Nasal Verbs
- The so-called ‘Attic’ future
- Verbs that form future tense like the Middle voice

The endings of the first two are the same, but the third of these is different.

### 29.4 Future of Liquid and Nasal Verbs

The term ‘Liquid and Nasal Verbs’ may appear to be somewhat peculiar but it refers to the *stem* of the verb. The stem of a Liquid or Nasal Verb ends in either a liquid consonant (λ or ρ) or a nasal consonant (μ or ν) and refers to the *organ* by which these consonants are produced.

	ἀγγέλλω	βάλλω	μένω	σπείρω	τέμνω
S 1	ἀγγελῶ	βαλῶ	μενῶ	σπειρῶ	τεμῶ
S 2	ἀγγελεῖς	βαλεῖς	μενεῖς	σπειρεῖς	τεμεῖς
S 3	ἀγγελεῖ	βαλεῖ	μενεῖ	σπειρεῖ	τεμεῖ
P 1	ἀγγελοῦμεν	βαλοῦμεν	μενοῦμεν	σπειροῦμεν	τεμοῦμεν
P 2	ἀγγελεῖτε	βαλεῖτε	μενεῖτε	σπειρεῖτε	τεμεῖτε
P 3	ἀγγελοῦσι(ν)	βαλοῦσι(ν)	μενοῦσι(ν)	σπειροῦσι(ν)	τεμοῦσι(ν)

This different conjugation is due to the loss of σ as in (hypothetically) ἀγγελέσω to ἀγγελέω and subsequent contraction of -έω to -ῶ, as in φιλέω. The endings, -ῶ, -εῖς, -εῖ, -οῦμεν, -εῖτε, and -οῦσι(ν) are the same as φιλέω.

Some other verbs that are conjugated in the same way are:

αἶρω (I lift up, raise)	ἀρῶ	ἤρα
ἐλάυνω (I drive)	ἐλῶ	ἤλασα

## 29.5 ‘Attic’ Future

Some verbs, whose stems end in -ίζω, have a contracted future tense like the verbs with a Liquid and Nasal stem. This is a survival from Classical Greek; many such verbs actually form their future tense as ίσω. The conjugation of such verbs is as follows:

	γνωρίζω I make to know	ἐγγίζω I near, I approach	ἐλπίζω I hope	καθαρίζω I cleanse	μακαρίζω I bless
S 1	γνωριῶ	ἐγγιῶ	ἐλπιῶ	καθαριῶ	μακαριῶ
S 2	γνωριεῖς	ἐγγιεῖς	ἐλπιεῖς	καθαριεῖς	μακαριεῖς
S 3	γνωριεῖ	ἐγγιεῖ	ἐλπιεῖ	καθαριεῖ	μακαριεῖ
P 1	γνωριοῦμεν	ἐγγιοῦμεν	ἐλπιοῦμεν	καθαριοῦμεν	μακαριοῦμεν
P 2	γνωριεῖτε	ἐγγιεῖτε	ἐλπιεῖτε	καθαριεῖτε	μακαριεῖτε
P 3	γνωριοῦσι(ν)	ἐγγιοῦσι(ν)	ἐλπιοῦσι(ν)	καθαριοῦσι(ν)	μακαριοῦσι(ν)

## 29.6 Future Middle Tenses

Some verbs form the future tense as though the future were of the *Middle* voice. Here are some examples:

	ἀκούω (I hear)	βαίνω (I go)	κλαίω (I break)	ὄραω (I see)	πίπτω, (I fall)
S 1	ἀκούσομαι <sup>1</sup>	βήσομαι	κλαύσομαι <sup>2</sup>	ὄψομαι	πεσοῦμαι
S 2	ἀκούσῃ	βήσῃ	κλαύσῃ	ὄψῃ	πέσῃ
S 3	ἀκούσεται	βήσεται	κλαύσεται	ὄψεται	πεσεῖται
P 1	ἀκουσόμεθα	βησόμεθα	κλαυσόμεθα	ὀψόμεθα	πεσούμεθα
P 2	ἀκούσεσθε	βήσεσθε	κλαύσεσθε	ὄψεσθε	πεσεῖσθε
P 3	ἀκούσονται	βήσονται	κλαύσονται	ὄψονται	πεσοῦνται

### Notes:

<sup>1</sup> An alternative form is ἀκούσω

<sup>2</sup> Alternative forms are κλαιήσω or κλαήσω

Some other verbs that are conjugated in the same way are:

Present	Future	Aorist
γινώσκω (I know)	γνώσομαι	ἔγνω
ἔρχομαι (I come)	ἐλεύσομαι	ἦλθον
λαμβάνω (I take)	λήμψομαι	ἔλαβον
πίνω (I drink)	πίομαι	ἔπιον

## 29.7 A note about the use of Liddell & Scott and Arndt & Gingrich

Typical entries in Liddell & Scott and Arndt & Gingrich for these types of verbs are as follows (these are abbreviated entries):

**ἀγγέλλω**, (ἄγγελος): Ep. and Ion. f. ἀγγελέω, Att. ἀγγελῶ: aor.1 ἤγγειλα

**αἶρω** (Ep. and poet. **ἀείρω** q.v.): f. ἀρῶ

**γνορίζω**, f. Att. ἰῶ

Notice in all of these entries the presence of ῶ in the future; this indicates that the future tense is *contracted* as shown in §§29.4 and 29.5; frequently (but not always) such a future tense is shown as ‘Att.’ meaning Attic.

## 29.8 Aorist of Liquid and Nasal Verbs

The endings for the Aorist tenses of these verbs are either the endings for the Weak Aorist (-α, -ας, -ε, -αμεν, -ατε, -αν) or for the Strong Aorist (-ον, -εσ, -ε, -ομεν, -ετε, -ον), so there is nothing more to learn; not yet anyway! However, the *stem* of the verb can be different as the following table shows:

Present		Future	Aorist
ἀγγέλλω	I announce	ἀγγελῶ	ἤγγειλα
αἶρω	I lift up, raise	ἀρῶ	ἤρα
βάλλω	I throw	βαλῶ	ἔβαλον
γνορίζω	I make to know	γνοριῶ	ἐγνόρισα
ἐγγίζω	I near, approach	ἐγγιῶ	ἤγγισα
ἐγείρω	I raise	ἐγερῶ	ἤγειρα
καθαρίζω	I cleanse	καθαριῶ	ἐκαθάρισα
κρίνω	I judge	κρινῶ	ἔκρινα
λέγω	I say	ἐρῶ	εἶπον
μένω	I stay	μενῶ	ἔμεινα
σπείρω	I sow	σπερῶ	ἔσπειρα
στέλλω <sup>1</sup>	I send	στελῶ	ἔστειλα
τέμνω	I cut	τεμῶ	ἔτεμον
χέω <sup>1</sup>	I pour	χεῶ	ἔχεα
φθείρω	I destroy	φθερῶ	ἔφθειρα

<sup>1</sup>Only occurs in compound verbs in the New Testament

## 29.9 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχή τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, γινώσκεις καὶ συνίησι πάντα· σ' ἐπαίνομεν καὶ δοξαζόμεν διὰ τῆς δόξης σου. νῦν δὲ βοήθει ἡμῖν, σ' αἰτοῦμεν, μάθειν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε ἡμεῖς δυνάμεθα ἀναγινώσκειν τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην ἢ ἐκυρηξας τῶ ὅλῳ κόσμῳ. καὶ δὴ κύριε, δὸς ἐμὲ τὴν ἐξουσίαν διδάξαι φανερῶς ὥστε οἱ μαθηταί μου συνήσουσι τὴν γραμματικὴν τέχνην τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσας.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord, you know and understand everything; we praise you and glorify you for your great glory. Now help us, we pray, to learn this language so that we are able to read the New Testament which you proclaimed to the whole world. What is more, O Lord, grant me the ability to teach clearly so that my students will understand the grammatical art of the Greek language.

Amen

## 29.10 Exercises – A

### 29.10.1 Translate into English

1. ἐλευσόμεθα πρὸς τὴν αὐλὴν καὶ ἀκουσόμεθα τοὺς τοῦ Παύλου λόγους.
2. λήμψομαι τοῦτο τὸ δῶρον καὶ θήσω ἐπὶ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ.
3. τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐξέβαλον οἱ Φαρισαῖοι ἐκ τοῦ ναοῦ.
4. τῇ ἐσχάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ νεκροὶ ἐγερθήσονται καὶ κριθήσονται.
5. λείψω τὴν κόμην καὶ ἀναβήσομαι πρὸς τὸν ναόν.
6. καθαριεῖ δὲ τοὺς τοῦ Λευὶ υἱούς.
7. ἀγγελοῦμεν τὰ εὐαγγελία διὰ ὅλης τῆς γῆς.
8. ὁψόμεθα σήμεια ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς.
9. βήσομεθα πρὸς ἐκείνην τὴν κόμην καὶ μενοῦμεν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τῶν φίλων ἡμῶν.
10. ἡμᾶς βαπτίσει ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ ὅς ἐγγὺς τῆς κόμης ἐστίν.
11. ἐπέμψε ὁ κύριος ἀγαθοὺς προφήτας τοῖς υἱοῖς τοῦ Ἰσραήλ.
12. ἐκέλευσα τὸν δοῦλον τεμῆναι τὸ ξύλον.

### 29.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. I shall speak to the elders and hear what they will say.
2. The Lord shall suddenly come to his temple.
3. The slave will sow the field but the farmer will reap the crops.
4. Jesus will send out the disciples to the villages.
5. We shall know him face to face.
6. The lepers will come to Jesus and will be healed and blessed.
7. That which he has shall be taken away.
8. The Lord will bless those who follow the way of righteousness.
9. I shall drive these sheep to the market.
10. We shall throw away the works of evil and put on the armour of virtue.
11. The lame man will leap as an hart.
12. The elders will call together the people and will speak to them.

## 29.11 Exercises – B

### 29.11.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ κριτὴς κρινεῖ τὸν δοῦλον ὃς τοῦτο ἐποίησεν.
2. λαβὲ τὸν μισθόν σου καὶ κατάλιπε τούτον τὸν τόπον.
3. ἐρῶ τῷ πρεσβυτέρῳ ἃ ἐμοὶ εἶπες.
4. ἐμείναμεν σὺν τοῖς φίλοις ἡμῶν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.
5. οἱ προφῆται ἔδωκαν ἀγαθοὺς νόμους τῷ λαῷ, ἀλλ' οὐκ αὐτοῖς ὑπήκουσαν.
6. ἀναγνώσομαι τὸ βιβλίον καὶ σοὶ λαλήσω ἃ ἀναγινώσκω.
7. οἱ μαθηταὶ καὶ οἱ διδασκάλοι διελογίζοντο τὰ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
8. ὁ αἰχμαλωτὸς ἤλατο ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς καὶ ἔφυγε.
9. οὐ καταλήμψομαι τὸν Ἰησοῦν· αὐτῷ ἀκολουθήσω εἰς θάνατον.
10. μὴ προστίθετε ἁμαρτίαν τῇ ἁμαρτίᾳ.
11. ὁ κριτὴς ἔπεμψε τοὺς κλέπτας εἰς τὴν φυλακὴν.

12. τὸν κύριον λάτρευσον ἐν καλλονῇ τῆς εὐσέβειας.

### 29.11.2 Translate into Greek

1. Some will play the flute, others will play the harp.
2. I shall send out my messengers before the face of this people.
3. We do not hope in men, we hope in God.
4. You will say to the elders this message which I am giving to you.
5. The books which were written for the people of God are placed in the temple.
6. The Lord gives and the Lord takes away.
7. I shall suddenly come to this people and I shall judge them with righteousness.
8. The disciples were not able to throw the demon out of the man.
9. The Lord shall arise and shall come to his temple.
10. The evil slave took the money from the house but the elders will judge him.
11. Peter and John went to the tomb but did not see Jesus.
12. I shall repent of my sins and I shall put on Christ.



## Lesson 30 – Indirect Speech

### 30.1 Lesson 30 Outline

- 30.2 Vocabulary 30
- 30.3 Indirect Speech in English
- 30.4 Indirect Speech in Greek
- 30.5 Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech
- 30.6 Opening prayer
- 30.7 Exercises A
  - 30.7.1 Translate into English
  - 30.7.2 Translate into Greek
- 30.8 Exercises B
  - 30.8.1 Translate into English
  - 30.8.1 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε καὶ πατὴρ ἡμῶν πάντων, ἐποίησας τὸν κόσμον τε καὶ πάντα διὰ τοῦ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἡμῶν. χαρὴν ἔχομέν σοι τῶν πάντων δώρων. καὶ δὴ καὶ, κύριε, χαίρομεν δὴ ὅτι δυνάμεθα συναντᾶν ἀλλήλοις ἵνα ἐπιτηδεύσωμεν τὴν γλῶσσαν τῆς καινῆς διαθηκῆς. ὠφελεῖ ἡμᾶς ἄμεινον συνεῖναι ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν κάμε διδάξαι φανερῶς.

ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί σου, Ἀμήν.

For the same things uttered in Hebrew, and translated into another tongue, have not the same force in them; and not only these things, but the law itself, and the prophets, and the rest of the books, have no small difference, when they are spoken in their own tongue.

Ecclesiasticus  
The Prologue

## 30.2 Vocabulary Lesson 30

Verbs		
ἀπαγγέλλω, ἀπαγγεῖλω, ἀπήγγειλα	proclaim, I	
διηγέομαι, διηγέσομαι, διηγήσάμην	narrate, I; describe, I (8)	
ἐπαγγέλλομαι, -, ἐπαγγειλάμην	promise, I	The person to whom the promise is made is dative, the thing promised is accusative
κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα	punish, I (2)	
νομίζω, νομίσω, ἐνόμισα	think, I (15)	
πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα	sail, I (6)	
στρέφω, στρέψω, ἔστρεψα	turn, I (22)	
Nouns		
παράδεισος, ὁ	paradise (3)	Originally, the Greek word meant ‘a pleasure park of the Persian kings’ but after its (mis)use in the LXX, it has acquired its new meaning.
Conjunction		
ὅτι	that (1296)	ὅτι has a variety of meanings and uses; in this Lesson the usage in Indirect Speech will be examined.
Proper Names		
Μωϋσῆς, ὁ	Moses	Declined in the usual way
Χριστιανός, ὁ	Christian (3)	
Place Names		
Ἀντιόχεια, ἡ	Antioch	
Γαλιλαία, ἡ	Galilee	
Κρήτη, ἡ	Crete	
Ῥώμη, ἡ	Rome	

## 30.3 Indirect Speech in English

When we use *Direct Speech* we usually write the original words of the speaker so:

James asked ‘Where do you live?’

John said ‘I live in Buckingham.’

If this were put into Reported Speech (Indirect Speech) this would be written as follows:

James asked where John lived and John replied that he lived in Buckingham.

Notice these points about the Indirect speech:

- The dialogue is cast into the third person (‘you’ and ‘I’ converted to ‘he’)
- The *tense* of the verb is *historic*, so that ‘live’ becomes ‘lived’.

More generally, in English the *tense* of the verb is changed to be one tense further in the past than the one used by the speaker. So:

- Direct:* I am going to town.  
*Indirect (Present):* He says that he is going to town.  
*Indirect (Past):* He said that he was going to town

### 30.4 Indirect Speech in Greek

Indirect Speech in Greek can be constructed in *five* ways:

- Accusative and Infinitive
- ὅτι with the Indicative
- ὅτι with the Optative
- Participles after verbs of knowing and perceiving
- Future Infinitive

Not all of these are used in the New Testament; the first, second and fourth are the most common, the third is used only once, and the fifth (a Classical Attic construction) not at all.

In this Lesson we shall be studying the first two; the third is in Lesson 56, and the fourth in Lesson 45.

#### 30.4.1 Accusative and Infinitive

This construction, which will be familiar to those who have some knowledge of Latin, can appear to be very strange to English speakers. Nonetheless, there are examples of this usage in English, though some of them might appear to be somewhat contrived.

Consider the sentences:

We think that he is late. (*Direct speech* – ‘He is late’)

We consider that he is a good man. (*Direct speech* – ‘He is a good man’)

Both of these are examples of ‘Indirect Speech’ or ‘Reported Speech’ much beloved by the compilers of Hansard. Doubtless at school you were obliged to go through this contorted method of reporting another’s words; and you probably wondered what the point of it all was. It was the Romans who started this cumbrous method of reporting speeches; the Greeks, much more sensibly, did use ‘Indirect Speech’ in this way but far less than the Romans; the Greeks vastly preferred to say things like:

‘Nikias got up to say ‘Fellow Athenians, in my opinion this expedition to Sicily ...’.

The Romans would write this as:

‘Nikias got up and said to the Athenians that in his opinion to make an expedition to Sicily....’

One can easily see that the Roman method would lead to confusion and error whereas the Greek method is plain and direct. Perhaps that is one reason why the Roman Empire was so successful. A good example of the confusion that can arise is shown in ‘Usage and Abusage’ by Eric Partridge on page 266.

Anyway, the sentences above *could* be written in English as follows:

We think him to be late

We consider him to be a good man

It is not suggested that this is good English practice; the first sentence is ‘a vain thing, fondly invented’ to quote the Book of Common Prayer; the second is (just about) more normal. However in both sentences there is an example of ‘Accusative and Infinitive’. This cannot be done in English very much, thank goodness, since we only have an accusative case for personal and relative pronouns, but in Greek this type of construction is much more common.

Having said that, this type of construction is not that common in the New Testament; the more usual method of construction is to use ὅτι for which see §30.4.2.

So how does this work out in Greek? Remember that verbs of saying can have an object and so the object will be in the Accusative case, hence the phrase, *Accusative and Infinitive*. Here are two examples from the New Testament:

*Example 1*

λέγετε ἐν Βεελζεβούλ ἐκβάλλειν με τὰ δαιμόνια

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 11:18

You say that I throw out demons by Beelzebub. (Literally, *you say in Beelzebub me to throw out demons*)

In this example, **λέγετε** is the verb of saying (you say), **ἐκβάλλειν με** is the construction known as Accusative (**με**) and Infinitive (**ἐκβάλλειν**) and **τὰ δαιμόνια** is the object of **ἐκβάλλειν**. When this is translated into English, the usual method of Indirect Speech using the conjunction ‘that’ is used. The Accusative (**με**) becomes the subject (I) and the verb (**ἐκβάλλειν**) becomes a finite verb (throw out)

*Example 2*

πῶς λέγουσιν τὸν Χριστὸν εἶναι Δαυὶδ υἱόν;

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 20:41

How can they say that Christ is the son of David? (Lit., *how can they say Christ to be the son of David?*)

In this example **λέγουσιν** is the verb of saying (they say), **τὸν Χριστὸν εἶναι** is the construction known as Accusative (**τὸν Χριστὸν**) and Infinitive (**εἶναι**) and **Δαυὶδ υἱόν** is the *complement* of the verb to be. It is possible (just about) to translate this into English as ‘**how do they say Christ to be the son of David?**’, but this is not a normal rendering.

It is worth noting that in this usage and in this usage only, the ‘tenses’ of the infinitive retain their temporal sense, so the Present Infinitive refers to *present* time and the Aorist Infinitive refers to past time. In Attic Greek there was also a *Future* infinitive and a *Perfect* Infinitive; these last two tenses are very useful when writing Indirect Speech in this way, but the Future Infinitive is fairly rare in the New Testament; it is, however, also used in the LXX.

### 30.4.2 ὅτι with the Indicative

A more common method of writing Indirect Speech is to use **ὅτι** with the Indicative. This is very similar to English usage but there is a *very* significant difference between English and Greek here. Consider the following:

*Direct Speech:* I am going to Athens

*Indirect Speech (Present Tense):* He says that he is going to Athens

*Indirect Speech (Past Tense):* He said that he was going to Athens

Notice that in the last example, the tense used in the Indirect Speech is changed to be the past from the present. Now consider the following:

*Direct Speech:* I went to Athens

*Indirect Speech (Present Tense):* He says that he went to Athens

*Indirect Speech (Past Tense):* He said that he had gone to Athens

In this example the past tense (I went) has been changed to the *pluperfect* (he had gone)

Generally, in English, when constructing Indirect speech, the tense used in the Indirect Statement is the tense *before* the tense used in the actual words of the speaker. So:

- The Present tense becomes the Past or Imperfect
- The Past tense becomes the Pluperfect

These examples are not intended to be a complete illustration of the use of Indirect Speech in English, but to show some principles as to how Indirect Speech is used in English.

This is not how Greek constructs Indirect Speech. In Greek the *tenses used by the original speaker are retained*. So:

<i>Direct Speech:</i>	I am going to Athens	βαίνω πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας
<i>Indirect Speech (Present Tense):</i>	He says that he is going to Athens	λέγει ὅτι βαίνει πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας
<i>Indirect Speech (Past Tense):</i>	He said that he was going to Athens	εἶπε ὅτι βαίνει πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας

And:

<i>Direct Speech:</i>	I went to Athens	ἔβην πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας
<i>Indirect Speech (Present Tense):</i>	He says that he went to Athens	λέγει ὅτι ἔβη πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας
<i>Indirect Speech (Past Tense):</i>	He said that he had gone to Athens	εἶπε ὅτι ἔβη πρὸς τὰς Ἀθῆνας

The key point to remember when using **ὅτι** with the Indicative in Indirect Speech in Greek is that the tenses (and moods) used by the original speaker are *never* changed and that therefore when translating Indirect Speech into Greek one must always refer to the *original* words of the speaker. Conversely, when translating from Greek into English it will be necessary to change the tenses of the Indirect Speech in Greek so as to conform to English Idiom.

There is one important exception to this with regard to the *mood* but we will return to that in Lesson 56.

### 30.4.3 Verbs used to introduce Indirect Speech

In the examples above, the only verb used to illustrate indirect speech was the verb ‘to say’. Many other verbs can be used to introduce Indirect Speech such as (this is not intended to be a complete list):

ἀγγέλλω	I announce
ἀκούω	I hear
ἄρνέομαι	I deny
βλέπω	I see
γινώσκω	I know
ἐλπίζω*	I hope
κηρύσσω	I proclaim
λογίζομαι	I consider
νομίζω	I think
ὁράω	I see

Though some verbs of knowing and perceiving have been included in this list such verbs take a slightly different construction from the Accusative and Infinitive; this will be studied in Lesson 45 and these verbs do not occur in the exercises with this construction, but they do occur with **ὅτι** and the Indicative.

\* In Classical Greek verbs such as ἐλπίζω I hope, (μέλλω, I intend, ὑπισχνέομαι, I promise and ὄμνυμι, I swear are similar) take a *future* infinitive since their sense is *future*. This distinction has been lost in the New Testament.

### 30.4.4 ὅτι Recitative

Another use of **ὅτι** is found in the New Testament and this is called ‘ὅτι Recitative’, and this is nothing to do with Opera or Oratorio. In this case, **ὅτι** is used to introduce *Direct* speech. Here is an example:

ὁμοῖς λέγετε ὅτι βλασφημεῖς ...

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 10:36

You say ‘you are blaspheming ...’

In this instance it does not make sense to translate the **ὅτι**. This type of construction is mostly found in Κατὰ Μάρκον and Κατὰ Ἰωάννην.

### 30.5 Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Speech

Indirect Speech does not always consist of simple statements such as ‘he went to Athens’ or ‘the child was running in the garden’. Frequently, it is necessary to put statements such as ‘he took the books *which he had with him* back to the library’. In other words, the Indirect Speech includes *subordinate* clauses, like the clause in italics in the last example.

So how does this work in Greek?

It is actually a lot simpler than it looks at first sight.

There is a very simple rule for this: the mood (and tense) of the verb in the dependent clause is unchanged. This is similar to the concept that in Greek, Indirect Speech *retains the tense of the verb used by the original speaker* as opposed to English where the tense in Indirect Speech is changed from that used by the original speaker.

Here are two examples:

Direct: I am going to the temple which is in that village

βαίνω πρὸς τὸν ναὸν ὃς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ κωμῇ ἐστίν.

Indirect: He said that he was going to the temple which was in that village.

εἶπε ὅτι βαίνει πρὸς τὸν ναὸν ὃς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ κωμῇ ἐστίν

Direct: He is sending the messengers whom he knows.

πέμπει τοὺς ἀγγέλους οὓς γινώσκει

Indirect: He said that he was sending the messengers whom he knew.

εἶπε ὅτι πέμπει τοὺς ἀγγέλους οὓς γινώσκει

In Classical Greek it was possible to use the Optative after an historic verb, but this usage, as we shall see in Lesson 56, is very rare in the New Testament, but it does occur.

### 30.6 Opening Prayer

**Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι**

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε καὶ πατὴρ ἡμῶν πάντων, ἐποίησας τὸν κόσμον τε καὶ πάντα διὰ τοῦ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἡμῶν. χαρὶν ἔχομέν σοι τῶν πάντων δώρων. καὶ δὴ καὶ, κύριε, χαίρομεν δὴ ὅτι δυνάμεθα συναντᾶν ἀλλήλοις ἵνα ἐπιτηδεύσωμεν τὴν γλῶσσαν τῆς καινῆς διαθηκῆς. ὠφελεῖ ἡμᾶς ἄμεινον συνεῖναι ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν καὶ με δίδασξαι φανερῶς.

ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί σου, Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord and father of us all, you made the world and everything through our Lord Jesus Christ. We thank you for all of your gifts. Moreover, Lord, we do rejoice that we are able to meet each other to study the language of the New Testament. Help us to understand this language better and help me to teach clearly.

In your name, Amen.

## 30.7 Exercises – A

### 30.7.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ προφήτης εἶπε ὅτι γράφει τοὺς νόμους τῷ λαῷ.
2. ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπε τοῖς μαθηταῖς ὅτι βήσεται πρὸς τὸ Ἱερουσαλήμ.
3. οἱ Φαρισαῖοι νομίζουσι τὸν Ἰησοῦν βλασφημεῖν.
4. εἶπε ὅτι μανθάνει τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν γλῶσσαν.
5. τὸ παιδίον λέγει ὅτι φέρει τὰ δῶρα πρὸς τὸν ναόν.
6. εἶπον τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις ὅτι ἔδωκα τὰ ἱμάτια τῇ χήρᾳ.
7. ὁ δοῦλος ἡμῶν εἶπε ὅτι αὐτὸς τὸ δεῖπνον ἔθηκε ἐπὶ τῇ τραπέζᾳ.
8. νομίζω αὐτὸν δύνασθαι τοῦτο ποιεῖν.
9. γινώσκωμεν ὅτι οὗτος ἔκλεψε τὸ ἀργυρίον ἐκ τῆς ἐκκλησίας.
10. οἱ μαθηταὶ ἐκήρυξαν ὅτι ἐγείρεται ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἐκ τῶν νεκρῶν.
11. νομίζω ὅτι οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀγαθὸς ἐστίν.
12. ἐδοκίμασα ὅτι ἃ ἐμοὶ εἶπε κακὰ ἦν.

### 30.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. We hear that the soldiers are looking for Christians.
2. The Pharisees said that Jesus was blaspheming.
3. The disciples proclaimed that Jesus was alive.
4. We cannot hear what<sup>1</sup> he is saying.
5. The slave said that he had given the book to the elder and he said that he would read it.
6. God promised to Moses that he would give a good land to the people of Israel.
7. Saul promised that he would punish the Christians.
8. Do you think that we shall persuade him?
9. I reckon that he will do what he says.
10. Jesus said to the thief on the cross that he would be with him in paradise.
11. The elder prophesied that Paul would be sent to Rome.
12. We remembered that he said those words on the cross.

<sup>1</sup> Use a relative clause

## 30.8 Exercises – B

### 30.8.1 Translate into English

1. μετενόησε ὅτι εἶπε ταῦτα καὶ ἠδίκησε τὸν φίλον αὐτοῦ.
2. σὺ λέγεις ὅτι κύριος ἐγὼ εἰμί.
3. θαυμάζω ὅτι γινώσκεις ταῦτα.
4. ἐλπίζομεν ὅτι βλέπομεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.
5. ἤρνεῖτο ὁ Πέτρος ὅτι γινώσκει τὸν Χριστόν.
6. ἔγραψε ὁ Παῦλος τοὺς Γαλάτας ἀνοήτους εἶναι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὁδοῦ πλανῆσαι.
7. ἤκουσαμεν ὅτι ὁ Παῦλος ἦλθε εἰς τὸν Ἐφέσον καὶ ἀπήγγειλε τὸν εὐαγγέλιον.
8. ἠπεῖλυσαν οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κολάσαι τὸν δοῦλον ὃς ἔλαβε τὸ ἀργυρίον.
9. οὐκ ἐπίστευσαν οἱ Φαρισαῖοι ὅτι ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἤγειρε τὸν ἄνθρωπον ἀπὸ τοῦ νεκροῦ.
10. γινώσκεις ὅτι οὗτος ἔκλεψε τὰ δῶρα ἃ ὁ λαὸς ἔδωκε τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ;

11. ἐν τούτῳ τῷ βιβλίῳ ἀνέγνων ὅτι δύναται ὁ Ἰησοῦς σῶσαι ἁμαρτωλούς.
12. γράφει ὅτι δώσει δῶρον τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.

### 30.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. The teacher ordered the students to learn their words.
2. The man replied that he did not know Jesus and that he believed that he was a prophet.
3. I could not deny that I knew him.
4. I shall write a letter to the elders and I shall tell them that you are a worthy person.
5. The thief lied that he had not taken the money from the house.
6. He said to us that he would be sailing to Crete.
7. He recognised that the prophet was speaking the truth.
8. We think that we shall go to Antioch and meet the other disciples.
9. Peter said that he did not know the man who came from Galilee.
10. The judge threatened that the slave who did not speak would be thrown into prison.
11. He told me that he would be meeting the man whom he saw at the theatre.
12. I said that I was going to the place which he described to me.



## Lesson 31 – The Infinitive II, Further Uses, ὅτι, γίνομαι

### 31.1 Lesson 31 Outline

- 31.2 Vocabulary 31
- 31.3 English Grammar
- 31.4 The Articular Infinitive
- 31.5 Consecutive Clauses
- 31.6 Impersonal Verbs
- 31.7 A note about ὅτι and γίνομαι
- 31.8 Opening prayer
- 31.9 Exercises A
  - 31.9.1 Translate into English
  - 31.9.2 Translate into Greek
- 31.10 Exercises B
  - 31.10.1 Translate into English
  - 31.10.2 Translate into Greek

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, χαρὰ ἔχομεν ὅτι ὧδέ ἐσμεν ἵνα ἐπιτμηθῶμεν ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν. σήμερον τὸ μαθήμα χαλεπὸν ἐστίν· δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθάνειν πολλά καὶ νεὰ τὰ νοήματα. χαίρομεν δὴ προκοπτόντες ταυτῆς τῆς γλῶσσας· ἐπικούρει οὖν ἡμῖν κύριε ὥστε μαθάνομεν παντελῶς ἵνα ἀναγινώσκωμεν τὴν καινὴν διαθηκὴν εὐτροχῶς. κάμοι κύριε, ἐξουσίαν δός ὥστε διδάσκω φανερῶς.

Ἀμήν.

Ἑλλησίν τε καὶ βαρβάρους, σοφοῖς τε καὶ ἀνοήτοις ὀφειλέτης εἰμί.

Ἡ Καινὴ Διαθήκη  
Πρὸς Ρωμαίους 1:14

## 31.2 Vocabulary Lesson 31

Verbs		
αὐξάνω, αὐξήσω, ἠύξησα	grow, I, increase, I (23)	
γίνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην	happen, I; become, I (669)	
καθίζω, καθιῶ, ἐκάθισα	sit down, I (46)	For the future, καθίσω is also used; καθιῶ is the Attic future (Lesson 29)
προσεύχομαι, προσεύξομαι, προσηυξάμην	I pray (85)	
Impersonal Verbs		
δεῖ, δεήσει, ἐδέησε	it is necessary	takes an accusative and infinitive
ἔξεστι, ἐξέσται, ἐξήν	it is possible, it is allowed	takes a dative and infinitive
Adjectives		
ὅσος, -η, -ον	as great as, how great	declines like ἀγαθός
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον	so great, so long, so much	declined like οὗτος
Proper Name		
Αἴσχυλος, ὁ	Aeschylus	
Conjunction		
ὥστε	so that (83)	

## 31.3 English Grammar

It may seem almost offensive to talk about English Grammar to people who are well-educated and have been speaking English all their lives, but that, strangely, is part of the problem. We know English so well, from the inside as it were, that we do not consider as to how we speak it. Furthermore, most of us have forgotten (if we ever really knew) most of the Grammar we were taught at school, so that Grammatical Terms, such as Nouns, Prepositions, Conjunctions and so forth, which are very necessary when learning and appreciating a Classical Language, often appear as a foreign language in themselves.

This particular lesson, which relies on such a knowledge, can be quite difficult to appreciate properly (notice, by the way, that the infinitive in that last phrase was NOT split), so we will begin with a brief review of some parts of English Grammar that may be rusty or forgotten.

### 31.3.1 Purpose Clauses

These are also called *Final Clauses*. A Purpose or Final Clause expresses the purpose of the action. For example:

We are going on holiday that we might see new places.

Are you buying that house in order to live in it?

Often in English the infinitive is used to express purpose:

I am going to town *to do some shopping*.

He is writing this note *to record the events at the meeting*.

Just as in English, there are several ways to express Purpose Clauses in Greek and the ones that we shall see later in this lesson use the infinitive, but not in the same way as the English Infinitive. In Lesson 50 we shall see another method.

### 31.3.2 Consecutive Clauses

Consecutive clauses, which are also called *Consequence Clauses*, express the result of an action, for example:

I was not stupid enough *to believe him*.

The tower did not fall down, *so that everyone was amazed*.

The consecutive clause is shown in *italics*.

These two sentences illustrate an important point: the first statement does not emphasise the consequence of the first clause; the emphasis is on not being stupid.

The second sentence, however, stresses the result of the first statement.

In Classical Greek this distinction affects the Greek; however, there are only 2 occurrences of the second type of statement in the New Testament.

It is worth noting that Consecutive Clauses and Purpose Clauses can, in English, overlap; where does *Purpose* end and *Consequence* start? And vice-versa. This confusion can also arise in Latin, but not in Greek.

Consider the following two sentences:

I opened the window *to get some fresh air*.

I opened the window *so that I could breathe some fresh air*.

Was it for a *purpose* that I opened the window to get some fresh air, or was breathing the fresh air a consequence? Or both? And does it matter? It certainly matters as to which it is when translating *into* Greek because the two constructions are different and it can also matter the other way as well for exegetical purposes(!).

According to Moulton (*An Idiom Book of New Testament Greek* p.142), 'the Semitic mind was notoriously unwilling to draw a sharp dividing line between purpose and consequence'; so it is not only in English that this blurring takes place.

### 31.3.3 Temporal Clauses

Temporal Clauses in English are usually introduced by conjunctions such as when, while, and so forth. For example:

*When the disciples arrived at the tomb* they found it was empty.

*While Jesus was speaking to the people* some Pharisees asked him a question.

The temporal clause is shown in *italics*.

## 31.4 The Articular Infinitive

### 31.4.1 Introduction

The Infinitive in Greek can be used as a substantive; the closest we would have to this in English would be 'the hearing', 'the listening' 'the seeing' and so forth. In Greek the Infinitive is indeclinable, which is rather a novelty, but it can be used with any of the singular cases of the neuter article. Here are some examples:

τὸ δὲ ἐπιμένειν τῇ σαρκὶ ἀναγκαιότερον δι' ὑμᾶς.

Πρὸς Φιλιππησίους 1:24

Remaining in the flesh is more necessary because of you.

οὐ παραιτοῦμαι τὸ ἀποθανεῖν

Πράξεις Ἀποστόλων 25:11

I do not refuse death

ἀντὶ τοῦ λέγειν ὑμᾶς

Ἰακώβου Ἐπιστολή 4:15

Instead of your speaking

### 31.4.2 Purpose Clauses

εἰς or πρὸς followed by τό and the infinitive is used to indicate a purpose clause. Here are some examples from the New Testament:

καὶ ἐνέδυσαν αὐτὸν τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀπήγαγον αὐτὸν εἰς τὸ σταυρῶσαι.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 27:31

And they dressed him with his clothes and led him away to crucify him.

*Note: this could also be expressed in English as ‘led him away to crucifixion’, but it is worthwhile to note that the sense is final or purpose.*

βαλοῦσα γὰρ αὕτη τὸ μύρον τοῦτο ἐπὶ τοῦ σώματός μου πρὸς τὸ ἐνταφιάσαι με ἐποίησεν.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 26:12

Having put this oil upon my body she has made me ready for burial.

*Note: in this version the purpose clause in English is not quite so obvious.*

The infinitive with τοῦ also occurs in a Final sense:

μέλλει γὰρ Ἡρώδης ζητεῖν τὸ παιδίον τοῦ ἀπολέσαι αὐτό.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 2:13

For Herod intended to find the child in order to kill him.

This construction occurs in Classical Attic Greek in Thucydides, so it does have a venerable history.

### 31.4.3 Temporal Clauses

The prepositions ἐν, πρὸ and μετὰ are used with the infinitive to introduce temporal clauses; ἐν meaning *when* or *while*, πρὸ meaning *before* and μετὰ meaning *after*. Here are some examples from the New Testament:

ἐν δὲ τῷ καθεύδειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἦλθεν αὐτοῦ ὁ ἐχθρὸς καὶ ἐπέσπειρεν ζιζάνια ἀνά μέσον τοῦ σίτου καὶ ἀπῆλθεν.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 13:25

**And while his men were sleeping** his enemy came and sowed weeds in the middle of the corn and went away.

καὶ εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτούς, ἐπιθυμία ἐπεθύμησα τοῦτο τὸ πάσχα φαγεῖν μεθ’ ὑμῶν **πρὸ τοῦ με παθεῖν**.

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 22:15

And he said to them, I have long desired to eat this passover with you **before my suffering**;

οἷς καὶ παρέστησεν ἑαυτὸν ζῶντα **μετὰ τὸ παθεῖν αὐτὸν** ἐν πολλοῖς τεκμηρίοις,

Πράξεις Ἀποστόλων 1:3

To whom he presented himself living **after his suffering** with many proofs.

Notice in all of these examples that the construction is accusative and infinitive.

Though it is not, strictly speaking, a temporal clause there is another use of *διὰ* with the accusative which means *because*:

... καὶ εὐθὺς ἐξανέτειλεν **διὰ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν** βάθος γῆς

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 13:5

... and immediately sprang up out of the ground **because it had no** depth of earth.

### 31.5 Consecutive Clauses

The construction ‘Accusative and Infinitive’ has been noted before in Lesson 30 in connexion with Indirect Speech. Consecutive Clauses also use this type of construction. Here are some examples from the New Testament:

καὶ γίνεται λαῖλαψ μεγάλη ἀνέμου καὶ τὰ κύματα ἐπέβαλλεν εἰς τὸ πλοῖον, ὥστε **ἤδη γεμίζεσθαι τὸ πλοῖον**.

Κατὰ Μάρκον 4:37

And there was a fierce gust of wind and the waves came into the boat so that **the boat was even full**.

μᾶλλον δὲ προσετίθεντο πιστεύοντες τῷ κυρίῳ, πλήθη ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ γυναικῶν, ὥστε καὶ εἰς τὰς πλατείας ἐκφέρειν τοὺς ἀσθενεῖς καὶ τιθέναι ἐπὶ κλιναρίων καὶ κραβάττων,

Πράξεις Ἀποστόλων 5:14-15

And more believers in the Lord were added to them, a great number of men and women, so that **they carried their sick into the squares and placed them upon beds and pallets**.

### 31.6 Impersonal Verbs

Impersonal verbs will be covered more fully later in the course (Lesson 52) but there are two that are very commonly used: *δεῖ* (it is necessary) and *ἔξεστι* (it is possible *or* it is allowed). The construction of these is:

δεῖ      Accusative and Infinitive

ἔξεστι    Dative and Infinitive

In English *δεῖ* is usually rendered as ‘must’ and *ἔξεστι* as ‘can’ or ‘may’. Here are some examples:

δεῖ με βῆναι πρὸς τὴν ἀγοράν.

I must go to the market (literally, ‘it is necessary that I go to the market’)

ἔξεστί σοι λαβεῖν τὸν μισθόν.

You may take the reward (literally, ‘it is possible for you to take the reward’)

Whereas in English (and German) we use a *finite* verb to express these concepts, Greek prefers to use an *Impersonal* verb, like Latin (*licet ...*) and French (*il faut que...*)

#### 31.6.1 Other tenses of *δεῖ*

The future tense of *δεῖ*, *δεήσει*, is best translated as ‘It will be necessary ...’

The past tenses, *ἔδει* (Imperfect) and *ἐδέησε* (weak aorist), are best translated as ‘it was necessary...’ or ‘I needed to ...’

### 31.7 A note about *ὅτι* and *γίνομαι*

#### 31.7.1 *ὅτι*

In addition to the use of *ὅτι* in Indirect Speech and Direct Speech as noted in Lesson 30, there is another use of this *ὅτι* as a *causal conjunction*, because. Here are two examples from the New Testament:

σπλαγγίζομαι ἐπὶ τὸν ὄχλον, **ὅτι** ἤδη ἡμέραι τρεῖς προσμένουσίν μοι καὶ οὐκ ἔχουσιν τί φάγωσιν.

Κατὰ Μάρκον 8:2

I have pity on the people **because** they have been with me three days and they do not have something to eat.

πλὴν ἐν τούτῳ μὴ χαίρετε ὅτι τὰ πνεύματα ὑμῖν ὑποτάσσεται, χαίρετε δὲ **ὅτι** τὰ ὀνόματα ὑμῶν ἐγγέγραπται ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς.

Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this that the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice **because** your names are written in the heavens.

Note that in this sentence there are *two* different uses of ὅτι.

### 31.7.2 γίνομαι

The principal parts for γίνομαι are:

γίνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην

The future, γενήσομαι, is conjugated like other ‘Middle’ futures, see Lesson 29.

The Aorist, ἐγενόμην, is a *Strong* Aorist, so the endings are like those of the Imperfect.

γίνομαι has several distinct usages (LSJ has a whole column devoted to it and Arndt & Gingrich two whole pages):

- Come to be, become, originate. Two subsidiary meanings come from this: to be born or begotten or (of things) to arise or come about
- Be made or created
- Happen, take place
- Become something, this applies to persons and things which change their nature
- γίνομαι is also used as a substitute for εἰμί

## 31.8 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, χαρὰ ἔχομεν ὅτι ὧδέ ἐσμεν ἵνα ἐπιτηδεύωμεν ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν. σήμερον τὸ μαθήμα χαλεπὸν ἐστίν· δεῖ ἡμᾶς μανθάνειν πολλά καὶ νεὰ τὰ νοήματα. χαίρομεν δὴ προκοπτόντες ταυτῆς τῆς γλῶσσας· ἐπικούρει οὖν ἡμῖν κύριε ὥστε μανθάνομεν παντελῶς ἵνα ἀναγινώσκωμεν τὴν καινὴν διαθηκὴν εὐτροχῶς. κάμοι κύριε, ἐξουσίαν δὸς ὥστε διδάσκω φανερῶς.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord, we are joyful that we are here to study this language. Today’s lesson is difficult; we must learn many new concepts. We do rejoice that we are progressing in this language; help us Lord so that we may learn fully to read the New Testament fluently. And grant to me the ability so that I may teach clearly.

Amen

## 31.9 Exercises – A

### 31.9.1 Translate into English

1. ἐργάζομαι πρὸς τὸ δέχεσθαι μισθόν.
2. ἐν τῷ ἐγγίξειν τῷ οἴκῳ ἐβλέψαμεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῶν.
3. ταῦτα εἶπε ὅτι ἠθέλησε αὐτὸν κηρῦξαι αὐτοῖς τὸ εὐαγγέλιον.
4. μετὰ τὸ ἀκούειν τοῦ Ἰησοῦ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἐπορευόμεθα πρὸς τὸν οἶκον ἡμῶν.
5. ἠὔξησε τὸ παῖδιον καὶ γίνεται ἄνθρωπος.
6. καθιῶ ἐπὶ τῇ γῆ ἐν τῷ ἀκούειν τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
7. τοσοῦτοι οἱ ἔχθροι ὥστε ἡμᾶς νικηθῆναι.
8. ἔπεμψε ὁ Ἰησοῦς τοὺς μαθητὰς αὐτοῦ εἰς τὰς κώμας πρὸς τὸ θεραπεῦσαι τὸν λαόν.
9. ταῦτά σε διδάσκω ὥστε ὑμᾶς γνῶναι τὴν γλῶσσαν τῆς καινῆς διαθήκης.
10. τοσοῦτους λόγους εἶπε ὁ προφήτης ὥστε θαυμάσαι τὸν λαόν.
11. καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀνοίγειν αὐτὸν τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔβλεψε τὸ σημεῖον τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ θεοῦ.
12. νομίζεις τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον δεῖν τιμηθῆναι;

### 31.9.2 Translate into Greek

1. We went through the doors of the house to see the disciples of Jesus.
2. God seeks his people because he loves them.
3. After I came out of the temple I spoke to the crowd.
4. They touched the lepers to heal them.
5. Before I enter the temple I must clean myself.
6. You must climb the hill to see the sea.
7. We cannot do this task because we do not know the words.
8. While we were travelling to Athens we observed the slaves who were working in the fields.
9. Is it possible for us to see Jesus?
10. After meeting our friends we went to the theatre to see a work of Aeschylus.
11. The prophet said that the people had sinned and that they must turn to God.
12. You know that you must tell the elders what happened in the village.

## 31.10 Exercises – B

### 31.10.1 Translate into English

1. ἐν τῷ ἀκούειν τὸν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ θόρυβον, οἱ στρατιῶται ἐδίωκον τὸν ὄχλον ἐκ τῆς κώμης.
2. ἐν τῷ ἐξερχέσθαι ἐκ τοῦ ναοῦ ἐβλέψαμεν τοὺς λέπρους καὶ αὐτοὺς θεραπεῦσαι ἠρξάμεθα.
3. ἐπορευόμεθα πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰς τὸ ἀγοράσαι ἄρτον τε καὶ οἶνον.
4. ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν λαλεῖν τῷ ὄχλῳ εἰς τὸ ἀγγέλειν τὰ τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
5. προσελευσόμεθα πρὸς τὴν κώμην ὥστε ἡμᾶς δυνάσθαι βλέπειν τὸν Ἰησοῦν.
6. διὰ τὸ μὴ πιστεύειν ἡμᾶς τοῖς μαθηταῖς, οὐκ ἀκολουθοῦμεν αὐτοῖς.
7. ἔβημεν πρὸς τὴν αὐλὴν ὅτι ἐθέλησαμεν ἀκοῦσαι τοῦ Παύλου.
8. ἐν τῷ ἀγοράζειν ἡμᾶς τὰ τοῦ οἴκου ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐβλέψαμεν τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους.
9. τῷ παιδίῳ ἔδωκα βιβλίον ὅτι ἠθέλησεν αὐτὸ ἀναγνῶναι.
10. πορευόμεθα διὰ τῆς κώμης πρὸς τὸν ναὸν εἰς τὸ προσεῦξασθαι τῷ θεῷ.
11. ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν θεραπεῦσαι τε καὶ εὐαγγελίσασθαι τῷ σαββάτῳ.

12. ἐγένετο δὲ, ἐν ἐκείναις ταῖς ἡμέραις, ὅτι οἱ ἐχθροὶ εἰσέβαλον τὴν γῆν.

### 31.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. We ought to write to our friends to tell them about these things.
2. After sailing we saw a marvellous island.
3. Before eating dinner we must give thanks<sup>1</sup> to the Lord.
4. While the soldiers were going through the fields they saw the children.
5. We will need<sup>2</sup> to write to the elders to tell them what happened.
6. While I was in the house, my friend came to me.
7. We learned that Paul and Barnabus spoke to the men who were in Athens.
8. I drew near to the village while walking in the fields.
9. I said that tomorrow I shall go to the market to buy<sup>3</sup> wine and bread.
10. Because he wished to see Jesus, he climbed the tree.
11. The prophet went to the hall in the village to speak to the people.
12. He opened the gate of the field to lead the sheep towards the market.

<sup>1</sup> Use εὐλογέω

<sup>2</sup> Use δεῖ (future tense)

<sup>3</sup> After verbs of coming and going (and *some* others) it is possible to use an *infinitive* of purpose



## Lesson 32 – 3<sup>rd</sup> declension Consonant Stems, Masculine and Feminine

### 32.1 Lesson 32 Outline

- 32.2 Vocabulary 32
- 32.3 The Third Declension
- 32.4 Guttural Stems
- 32.5 Labial Stems
- 32.6 Stems ending in a Dental (τ, δ, θ) and ν
- 32.7 Stems in -ντ, -κτ
- 32.8 Stems in the Liquids λ, ρ
- 32.9 Opening prayer
- 32.10 Exercises A
  - 32.10.1 Translate into English
  - 32.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 32.11 Exercises B
  - 32.11.1 Translate into English
  - 32.11.2 Translate into Greek
- 32.12 Exercises C

### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, ἦλθες εἰς τοῦτον τὸν κόσμον ἵνα ἡμᾶς σώσῃ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀμαρτιῶν ἡμῶν. ἐλθὼν καὶ κατοικῶν ἐν ἡμῖν ἐκύρηξε τὸ εὐαγγέλιόν σου ὥστε γινώσκομεν σε καὶ εἰσερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν σου. χαίρομεν δὴ μαθάνοντες ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε δυνάμεθα ἀξιοῦν τοὺς λόγους τῆς καινῆς διαθήκης. ἴσθι οὖν κύριε μεθ' ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμᾶς ἄγε εἰς τὴν ὅλην ἀληθείαν.

Ἀμήν.

βούλει Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν;

How about 'Cloud Cuckoo land'?

Ἀριστοφάνης  
Ὀρνίθες 819

## 32.2 Vocabulary Lesson 32

Nouns with stems in liquids, λ, ρ		
άνήρ, άνδρός, ό	man, husband (216)	polyandry, having many husbands. άνήρ, man is used as opposed to γυνή, woman; άνθρωπος, man, as opposed to θήρος beast. Note the difference between <i>misandry</i> (like <i>misogyny</i> ), hating men and <i>misanthropy</i> , hating mankind.
άστήρ, άστέρος ό	star (24)	the words, aster, asteroid, asterisk, astronomy and astronaut are derived from this.
θυγατήρ, θυγατρός, ή	daughter (28)	
μάρτυς, μάρτυρος, ό	witness (35)	compare μαρτυρέω; μαρτυρία and μαρτύριον refer to witness in the abstract, whereas a μάρτυς is a person.
μητήρ, μήτρος, ή,	mother (83)	matriarchy
πατήρ, πατρός, ό	father (413)	patristics, patriarchy
ρήτωρ, ρήτορος, ό	orator (1)	rhetoric; note the 'h' after the 'r' this is the initial rough breathing
σωτήρ, σωτήρος, ό	saviour (24)	compare σωτηρία, σώζω
χείρ, χειρός, ή	hand (177)	a chiropodist, literally a handfootist, is, strictly speaking, one who treats defects of hands <i>and</i> feet.
Nouns with stems ending in a guttural		
γυνή, γυναικός, ή	woman, wife (215)	compare <i>gynaecology</i> or <i>misogynist</i>
θώραξ, θώρακος ό	breastplate, also part of the body covered by the breastplate (4)	thorax
κήρυξ, κήρυκος, ό	herald (3)	kerygma
λάρυγξ, λάρυγγος, ό	throat (1)	otorhinolaryngologist, ear, nose and throat specialist - 4 greek words in 1!
σάλπιγξ, σάλπιγγος, ό	trumpet (11)	
σάρξ, σαρκός, ή	flesh (147)	In NT used in both the physical sense as well as the metaphorical sense of the sinful nature
Nouns ending with a stem in a dental or in v		
έλπις, έλπίδος ή	hope (53)	Cf. έλπίζω
νύξ, νυκτός, ή	night (61)	Cf. nox, noctis (Latin) whence nocturnal

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ	boy, girl, child, servant (51)	Cf. παιδίον as a diminutive
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot (93)	Cf. chiropodist (above), podiatry, tripod
ρίς, ῥινος, ἡ	nose	Rhinocerus (literally, nosehorn, in German Nasehorn)
χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ	grace (155)	Grace is bestowed on those in whom the giver finds joy (χαρά)
<b>Nouns endings with a stem in v</b>		
αἰών, αἰῶνος, ὁ	age, aeon (122)	Cf. αἰώνιος
εἰς τον αἰῶνα	for ever	
εἰς τον αἰῶνα τῶν αἰώνων	for ever and ever	literally, for ever of ages.
ἀμπελών, ἀμπελῶνος, ὁ	vineyard (23)	
ἄμπελος, ἡ	vine (9)	
Ἑλληγ, Ἑλληγος, ὁ	Greek (26)	Hellenistic Greek
εἰκόν, εἰκόνο, ἡ	image (23)	Cf. icon, iconoclasm, breaking of images, this word (εἰκόν) occurs in LXX Γένεσις 1, 26)
μήν, μηνός, ὁ	month (18)	Cf. menstrual, though this word is of Latin derivation. <i>Menopause</i> , however, is of Greek derivation. <i>menology</i> , is a calendar of the months.
Σίμων, Σίμωνος, ὁ,	Simon (46)	
<b>Nouns with -ντ stem</b>		
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος, ὁ	ruler (37)	Cf. ἀρχω I rule
λέων, λέοντος, ὁ	lion (9)	
<b>Other nouns</b>		
βασίλισσα, ἡ	queen (4)	The Attic words are βασιλίς or βασίλεια
μάννα, τό	manna (4)	This is indeclinable; in the LXX it is spelt as μαν (without an accent)
μάρσιπος, ὁ	bag, pouch	marsupial
<b>Verbs</b>		
κατέχω, καθέξω (κατασχέσω), ἐκάτεσχον	I keep, possess (18)	
προσαιτέω, προσαιτήσω προσήτησα	beg, I (1)	
<b>Adverb</b>		
ἐκεῖ	there (105)	

## 32.3 The Third Declension

### 32.3.1 Introduction and some English Nouns

The Third declension contains all nouns which do not belong to the First and Second Declensions. The variety of forms can seem at first rather bewildering but there are classifications and common patterns to all of them. The third declension also contains some irregular nouns; all languages have irregular nouns but we are so used to English that we do not notice them. Here are a few:

N Singular	sheep	mouse	goose	child	man
G Singular	sheep's	mouse's	goose's	child's	man's
N Plural	sheep	mice	geese	children	men
G Plural	sheeps'	mice's	geese's	children's	men's

Greek is no different in this respect; fortunately, such nouns are very few.

### 32.3.2 Third Declension categories

Third declension nouns and adjectives are classified as follows:

1. Nouns whose stems end in a consonant
  - a. Masculine and Feminine nouns (Lesson 32, Sections 32.4 – 32.8)
  - b. Neuter and Irregular Nouns (Lesson 34, Sections 34.3 and 34.4)
  - c. Certain adjectives and pronouns (Lesson 35)
2. Nouns whose stems end in a vowel (Lesson 35)

In this Lesson we will be dealing with Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Consonant Stems.

### 32.3.3 Third Declension endings

The endings of these nouns are as follows:

	Singular	Plural
Nom, Voc	Various	ες
Accusative	α	ας
Genitive	ος	ων
Dative	ι	σι(ν)

Generally, the Vocative is the same as the Nominative but there are some exceptions, naturally!

The Nominative singular takes various forms and there is no general rule for determining the gender, so it is necessary to learn three parts of a Third Declension noun in order to know it fully and these are:

Nominative singular

Genitive singular

Gender (ὁ, ἡ, το)

The stem can be found by removing the **-ος** from the genitive singular. Lexica always give the Nominative singular first and then the genitive singular from which can be derived the root of the noun and hence all the other cases. Here are a couple of examples (abbreviated) from Liddell & Scott:

ἘΛΕΦΑΣ, αὐτός, ὁ, the elephant.

ὈΡΝΙΣ ὁ and ἡ: gen. ὄρνιθος; acc. ὄρνιθα; a bird (whence ornithology).

### 32.3.4 Formation of the Dative Plural

When –σ is added to the stem to form the dative plural, the same consonant changes take place that we saw in Lesson 16 when forming the future of verbs:

Gutturals	κ, γ, χ	+ σιν → ξιν
Labials	π, β, φ	+ σιν → ψιν
Dentals	τ, δ, θ, ν	+ σιν → σιν

Some stems do not fall so neatly into those categories:

κτ	+ σιν → ξιν
αντ	+ σιν → ασιν
εντ	+ σιν → εισιν
οντ	+ σιν → ουσιν

This will be clearer from the tables in Koine Greek Accidence §2.4.

### 32.4 Guttural Stems

For the paradigm of the Guttural Stems please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.1.

The only example I have been able to find for a third declension noun whose stem ends in χ is ὄνυξ, whence ‘onyx’ in English, but it does not appear in the New Testament! Nail in the sense of nails to fasten with is either ἥλος, ὅ or γόμφος ὅ.

Some examples:

ὁ λόγος σὰρξ ἐγένετο (Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 1:14)

The word became flesh

ἤκουσα τὸν σάλπιγγα

I heard the trumpet

ἐκύρυξα ὁ κήρυξ τὸν εὐαγγέλιον

The herald proclaimed the gospel

ἔχει ἡ χεὶρ δακτύλους καὶ ὄνυχας πέντε

The hand has five fingers and five nails

δάκτυλος ὅ – finger, πέντε – five

### 32.5 Labial Stems

For the paradigm of the Labial Stems please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.1.

Although all the books show -φ as a possible stem ending for a labial, it turns out that there aren’t any!

There is one example in the New Testament of these words:

ὁδηγοὶ τυφλοί, οἱ διωλίζοντες τὸν κώνωπα, τὴν δε κάμηλον καταπίνοντες (Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 23:24)

Blind guides, who strain a gnat but swallow a camel.

### 32.6 Stems ending in a Dental (τ, δ, θ) and ν

For the paradigm of the Dental Stems please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.2.

Some examples:

τῇ χάριτι σωζόμεθα

By grace we are saved

οἱ παῖδες ἔχαιρον ὅτι ἑβλεψαν τὸν Ἰησοῦν

The children rejoiced that they saw Jesus

ἐκ τοῦ ἀμπελῶνος ἐποιήσαμεν οἶνον  
From the vineyard we made wine

### 32.7 Stems in -ντ, -κτ

For the paradigm of these Stems please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.3

Some examples:

ἦν δὲ νύξ. (Κατα Ἰωάννην 13:30)

And it was night

οἱ ἄρχοντες ἤρχοντο τὸν λαὸν καὶ τὴν γῆν

The rulers were ruling the people and the land

λέγει ὁ Ἰησοῦς τῷ Σίμωνι ὅτι ἀκολούθει μοι

Jesus said to Simon 'Follow me'

### 32.8 Stems in the Liquids λ, ρ

For the paradigm of the Liquid Stems please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.3

Some examples:

ἔση ὁ ἅλς τῆς γῆς

Thou wilt be the salt of the earth

ἐλευσόμεθα πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀκούειν τοὺς λογοὺς τῶν ρητόρων

We shall go to Athens to hear the words of the orators

### 32.9 Opening Prayer

**Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι**

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, ἦλθες εἰς τοῦτον τὸν κόσμον ἵνα ἡμᾶς σώσῃ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀμαρτιῶν ἡμῶν. ἐλθὼν καὶ κατοικῶν ἐν ἡμῖν ἐκύρηξε τὸ εὐαγγέλιόν σου ὥστε γινώσκωμεν σε καὶ εἰσέλθομεν εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν σου. χαίρομεν δὴ μανθάνοντες ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε δυνάμεθα ἀξιοῦν τοὺς λογοὺς τῆς καινῆς διαθήκης. ἴσθι οὖν κύριε μεθ' ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμᾶς ἄγε εἰς τὴν ὅλην ἀληθείαν.

Ἀμήν.

Lord, you came into this world to save us from our sins. Having come and dwelt among us you proclaimed your gospel so that we might know you and enter into your kingdom. We do rejoice in learning this language so that we are able to appreciate the words of the New Testament. So be with us Lord and lead us into the whole truth.

Amen.

## 32.10 Exercises – A

### 32.10.1 Translate into English

1. ἐν Χριστῷ ἔχομεν σωτήρα.
2. κατέχω ἐν τῇ χειρὶ μου τὸν μάρσιπόν μου.
3. τῇ νύκτι δυνάμεθα βλέψαι τοὺς ἀστέρας τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
4. ἐπορευόμεθα πρὸς τὸν ἀμπελώνα πρὸς τὸ συλλέξαι τοὺς καρπούς.
5. δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐργαζέσθαι τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· ἔρχεται ἡ νύξ ἐν ἣ ἡμεῖς οὐ δύναμεθα ἐργάζεσθαι.
6. ὁ διδάσκαλος ἐδίδαξε τοὺς παιδὰς ἄλλην γλῶσσαν.
7. ἡ μὲν ψυχὴ θέλει, ἡ δὲ σὰρξ οὐκ.
8. ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γυνὴ περιεπάτησαν ἐκ τοῦ κήπου τοῦ κυρίου.
9. ἐφωνήσε ὁ σάλπιγξ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται εἰς τὴν μαχὴν ἐπορεύσαντο.
10. ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν ἄνδρα ἐν τῇ εἰκόνι τοῦ θεοῦ.
11. εἶπε ὁ Σίμων· σὺ εἶ ὁ Χριστός.
12. ἡ χάρις τοῦ θεοῦ περισσεύει ἐν ταῖς καρδίαις ὧν οὗς εὐλογεῖ ὁ θεός.

### 32.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. We followed the man who came out of the vineyard.
2. We heard the herald who said that the enemy was coming.
3. Man was made in the image of God.
4. The witness said that the robber came out of the house and he was carrying the money.
5. We must repent in order to receive grace.
6. The Lord gave the woman to the man and they were living in paradise.
7. He wants to go to the market to buy sheep.
8. The Greeks seek wisdom, but the sons of Israel seek God.
9. The herald announced that the lepers were healed by Jesus.
10. In order to hear the witness we went to the temple.
11. The people gave gifts into the hands of the prophets.
12. While they were travelling in the desert the sons of Israel received manna from heaven.

## 32.11 Exercises – B

### 32.11.1 Translate into English

1. τῇ χειρὶ αὐτοῦ ὁ κύριος ἔνεγκε τοὺς υἱοὺς τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ ἐκ τοῦ Αἰγύπτου.
2. καλοὶ οἱ ποδῆς αὐτῶν οἱ λάλουσι τὴν εὐαγγελίαν τῆς εἰρήνης.
3. τῇ νυκτὶ προσεβάλομεν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τῶν ἐχθρῶν.
4. ἡ θυγατὴρ τῆς βασιλίσσης τῆς νυκτὸς ἐσώσθη ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀνδρείου ἀνδρός.
5. ἔθηκε ὁ Ἰησοῦς τὰς χεῖρας αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῦς τοῦ ἀνδρός.
6. γινώσκω ὅτι ζῆ ὁ σωτὴρ μου καὶ αὐτὸν ὄψομαι τῇ ἐσχάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ.
7. βαίνομεν πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀκοῦσαι<sup>1</sup> τοὺς σάλπιγγας.
8. αἱ γυναῖκες ἠγγειλαν τοῖς μαθηταῖς ὅτι οὐκ ἐν τῷ μνημείῳ ὁ Ἰησοῦς.
9. μετὰ τὸ εἰσερχέσθαι εἰς τὴν κώμην ἠσπασάμεθα τοὺς ἄρχοντας.
10. τρέχει ὁ λέων διὰ τῆς ἐρήμου καὶ ζῆται ὄν δύναται καταφαγεῖν.
11. ἐπιστεύσαμεν τῷ μάρτυρι ὃς εἶδε ἃ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ τῷ σταυρῷ.

12. ἐνδύσον σεαυτὸν τὸν θώρακα τῆς δικαιοσύνης.

<sup>1</sup> Verbs of going, coming, sending, receiving, can take an infinitive of purpose

### 32.11.2 Translate into Greek

1. We must collect the fruit from the vineyard by hand.
2. The man's son said that a lion was near the village.
3. The slaves were working in the vineyard to collect the fruit for the master.
4. During that month we saw wonders on earth and in the heavens.
5. After hearing the disciples, the people raised their hands to heaven and repented.
6. The mother and father were weeping because their daughter could not eat.
7. The orator spoke words of wisdom but the prophet gave a message of righteousness.
8. I was not able to see the orator but I was able to hear him.
9. While they were going to the village they met a poor man who was begging.
10. The hand of God helped the children of Israel in the desert.
11. While Jesus was healing the lepers, the woman's daughter came and said that her brother was dead.
12. I threatened to injure the slave and leave the house.

## 32.12 Exercises – C

### 32.12.1 Translate into English

Καὶ εἶπεν κύριος τῷ Ἀβραμ· ἔξελθε ἐκ τῆς γῆς σου καὶ ἐκ τῆς συγγενείας σου καὶ ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου τοῦ πατρός σου εἰς τὴν γῆν, ἣν σοὶ δηλώσω· ἔση εὐλογητός, σὺ καὶ οἱ υἱοὶ σου καὶ αἱ θυγατέρες σου. καὶ ἐπορεύθη Ἀβραμ σὺν Σαρα τῇ γυναίκῃ αὐτοῦ καὶ σὺν Λωτ, ὡς ἐλάλησεν ὁ κύριος. διώδευσαν Ἀβραμ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τὴν γῆν ἕως τοῦ τόπου Συχεμ ἐπὶ τὸ δένδρον ὑψηλόν. ὁ κύριος εἶπε τῷ Ἀβραμ· δώσω ταυτὴν τὴν γῆν τοῖς υἱοῖς τε καὶ θυγαρσὶ σου· ἀναρίθμητοι ἔσονται. καὶ ἐκεῖ ὠκοδόμησε θυσιαστήριον τῷ κυρίῳ.

5

LXX Γένεσις 12:1-7 (adapted)

### 32.12.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

<b>Ἀβραμ</b>	Abram	In the LXX there is often no breathing or accent for Hebrew names. In the NT Ἀβραάμ (sic) occurs 69 times
<b>συγγένεια</b>	kinsfolk, kinsmen (3)	
<b>εὐλογητός, -ή, -όν</b>	blessed (8)	
<b>Σαρα</b>	Sarah	
<b>Λωτ</b>	Lot (4)	
<b>διοδεύω, διοδεύσω, διώδευσα</b>	I travel through (2)	
<b>Συχεμ</b>	Shechem (2)	
<b>ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν</b>	high, lofty (12)	
<b>ἀναρίθμητος, -ον</b>	countless, innumerable	



## Lesson 33 – Revision VI

### 33.1 Lesson 33 Outline

- 33.2 Vocabulary 33
- 33.3 Opening prayer
- 33.4 Parsing
- 33.5 Exercises A
  - 33.5.1 Translate into English
  - 33.5.2 Translate into Greek
- 33.6 Exercises B
  - 33.6.1 Translate into English
  - 33.6.2 Translate into Greek
- 33.7 Exercises C

#### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, μεμαθήκαμεν πόλλα ἀλλὰ σήμερον δεῖ ἡμᾶς καταμανθάνειν πάλιν ἵνα συνιῶμεν ἄμεινον ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν. μεθ' ἡμῶν ἴσθι, κύριε, καὶ ἡμῖν βοήθει, μιμησκόμεθα γὰρ τῶν λογῶν σου· οὗ γὰρ εἰσιν δύο ἢ τρεῖς συνηγμένοι εἰς τὸ ἕμὸν ὄνομα, ἐκεῖ εἰμι ἐν μέσῳ αὐτῶν.

Ἄμην.

O testimonium animae naturaliter Christianae.

O evidence of a naturally Christian soul!

Tertullian  
Apologeticus 17

## 33.2 Vocabulary Lesson 33

Verbs		
κατεσθίω, κατέδομαι, κατέφαγον	devour, I (14)	
κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην	obtain, I; get, I; acquire, I (7)	
ὄρμάω, ὄρμήσω ὄρμησα	rush, I (5)	
Nouns		
κρημνός, ὄ	crag, precipice (3)	
Conjunction		
τότε	then (160)	

## 33.3 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, μεμαθήκαμεν πόλλα ἀλλὰ σήμερον δεῖ ἡμᾶς καταμανθάνειν πάλιν ἵνα συνιῶμεν ἄμεινον ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν. μεθ' ἡμῶν ἴσθι, κύριε, καὶ ἡμῖν βοήθει, μιμησκόμεθα γὰρ τῶν λογῶν σου· οὗ γὰρ εἰσιν δύο ἢ τρεῖς συνηγμένοι εἰς τὸ ἐμὸν ὄνομα, ἐκεῖ εἰμι ἐν μέσῳ αὐτῶν.

Ἄμην.

Let us pray.

Lord, we have learned many things, but today we must learn thoroughly again to understand better this language. Be with us Lord and help us, for we remember your words: where two or three are gathered in my name there am I in the midst.

Amen.

## 33.4 Parsing

This section is laid out in the same way as the Parsing sections in Lesson 22.

### 33.4.1 Verbs

	Verb	Greek 1st pers. sg.	English from 1st p.	Number and person	Tense	Voice	Mood
1	ἔλαβες						
2	γράψατε						
3	ἐλύομην						
4	γίνονται						
5	ἐλθέτω						
6	ἀγγελῶ						
7	ἔβην						
8	ἤψαντο						
9	μενεῖς						
10	ἐσπείρην						
11	τιμήσει						
12	ὄψη						
13	μένετε						
14	ἔρεῖτε						
15	λήμψεται						

### 33.4.2 Nouns

	Noun	Greek Nominative	Eng. from Nominative	Gender	Case	Number
1	ρήτορος					
2	ἄρχοντι					
3	θρόνος					
4	σάλπιγγες					
5	προφήτης					
6	ἄνδρας					
7	νυξίν					
8	ἀληθεία					
9	μητρός					
10	ποσίν					
11	δένδρων					
12	χειρί					
13	λάρυγγι					
14	ρίνά					
15	ἐλπίσιν					

### 33.4.3 Adjectives

	Adjective	Masc. Sing. Nominative	English from Masc Sg Nom	Gender	Case	Number
1	κακοῖς					
2	τυφλαῖς					
3	ἄλλην					
4	καλαῖς					
5	τριτῶν					
6	τούτου					
7	ἀγαθῶν					
8	παλαίον					
9	λευκοῦς					
10	καινήν					
11	πτωχοῖς					
12	ἐλεύθεραν					
13	ἐκείνους					
14	ἀρχαίους					
15	πλουσίους					

## 33.5 Exercises – A

### 33.5.1 Translate into English

1. ἄνδρα τε καὶ γυναῖκα ἐποίησεν ὁ θεός.
2. τῇ νυκτὶ προσεβάλομεν τῷ πύργῳ.
3. ἐπορευόμεθα πρὸς τὸν κῆπον πρὸς τὸ βλέψαι τὰ δένδρα.
4. ἔλαβον ὁ ἀνὴρ τε καὶ ἡ γυνὴ καρπὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ἐν μέσῳ παραδείσῳ.
5. οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες σοφίαν ζητοῦσιν· οἱ δὲ Ἰουδαῖοι τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ.
6. μὴ ὑπακούετε τῷ ἀρχόντι τούτου τοῦ κόσμου.
7. ὦ Πέτρε, τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, ἣν ἔγραψας τῷ Παύλῳ, ἀνέγνω τῷ λαῷ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ.
8. οἱ ἀστέρες, οἱ ἐν τῷ ουρανῷ εἰσὶν, λέγουσι τὴν δόξαν τοῦ θεοῦ.
9. εἰσηλθὼν μὲν εἰς τὸν ναὸν, ὑπήγαγον δὲ πρὸς τὴν Γαλιλαίαν.
10. δεῖ ὑμᾶς αἰτήσαι τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους ἃ ποιοῦσιν.
11. κατέχε ἐν τῇ χειρὶ σου τὸν μάρσιπον σου.
12. ὁ μάρτυς εἶπε ὅτι ἔβλεψε τὸν κλεπτὴν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.

### 33.5.2 Translate into Greek

1. By the hand of God the world was made.
2. While I was in the house, my friend came to me.
3. They left the soldiers in the village and fled to the desert.
4. The disciples who were with Jesus fell to the ground.
5. Are you able to proclaim the gospel to the crowd with powerful<sup>1</sup> words?
6. He said these things to encourage the people.
7. I can see the houses which are in the village.
8. It is lawful for us to drink wine on the Sabbath.
9. I must go to the village to buy another slave.
10. The trees in the garden are beautiful.
11. He says that he will go to the temple and repent.
12. While he was speaking the other man fell to the ground.

<sup>1</sup> Use ἰσχυρός

## 33.6 Exercises – B

### 33.6.1 Translate into English

1. δεῖ τοὺς παῖδας μανθάνειν τὰς ὁδοὺς τῆς δικαιοσύνης.
2. οἱ ἄνδρες, οἱ ἠργάζοντο ἐν τοῖς ἄγροισι συνέλαβον τὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἤγαγον αὐτὰ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.
3. ἡ μὲν ὑγιεία καλὴ ὑμῖν, ἡ δὲ νόσος κακὴ.
4. πρῶτον μὲν ἀνέβη εἰς τὸν ναὸν, ἔπειτα δὲ πρὸς τὴν ἄγοραν.
5. ἐκάλεσα μὲν τοὺς διακόνους, παρήγγειλα δὲ τοῖς δούλοις.
6. δύναται ἀγοράζειν τοὺς δούλους; ἔχει τὸ ἀργύριον;
7. ἐδεξάμην τὴν μισθὸν σου ἐν χειρὶ.
8. οἱ στρατιῶται προσῆλθον πρὸς τὸν τόπον ἐν ᾧ ἔθηκαν τὸ σταρόπεδον αὐτῶν.
9. ὁ Παῦλος καὶ οἱ μεθ' αὐτοῦ ὑμᾶς ἠσπάζοντο.
10. μή μου ἄπτου, οὐ γὰρ ἀνέβην πρὸς τὸν πατέρα.

11. ἐνδύσομαι τὸν καὶνον ἄνδρα.
12. ἐμάθομεν ὅτι τῆ χαρίτι σωζόμεθα.

### 33.6.2 Translate into Greek

1. I must tell you what the teacher said to me.
2. We do not think that he is a prophet, we know that he is.
3. Command your slave to come here.
4. We heard the orator and he spoke powerful words of wisdom.
5. The crowd rushed towards the gate to escape from the soldiers.
6. The father and mother ordered their sons and daughters to give a gift to their teachers.
7. By the grace of God we obtain new life.
8. The enemy sees the land and seeks a village which he can capture.
9. God made man and placed him in a garden.
10. On the last day the stars will be thrown down from the heavens.
11. You keep days and months and seasons and years.
12. Jesus asked Simon, do you love me?

## 33.7 Exercises – C

### 33.7.1 Translate into English

Ὁ δὲ Σαμουηλ ἐκάθευδεν ἐν τῷ ναῷ, οὗ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ κιβωτὸς ἦν, καὶ ἐκάλεσεν ὁ κύριος· Σαμουηλ, Σαμουηλ. καὶ ἔδραμε πρὸς Ἡλι καὶ εἶπεν· Ἴδου ἐγὼ, ὅτι με ἐκάλεσας. ἀλλ' εἶπεν Ἡλι· οὐ σε ἐκάλεσα, ἀνάστρεψον καὶ κάθειδε. καὶ πάλιν ἐκάλεσεν ὁ κύριος· Σαμουηλ, Σαμουηλ. ἐπορεύθη δὲ Σαμουηλ πρὸς Ἡλι καὶ εἶπε· Ἴδου ἐγὼ, ὅτι με ἐκάλεσας. τὸ δὲ δεύτερον εἶπεν Ἡλι· οὐ σε ἐκάλεσα, ἀνάστραφε καὶ κάθειδε. ὁ δὲ Σαμουηλ οὐκ ἔγνω τὸν κύριον καὶ ὁ τοῦ κυρίου λόγος οὐκ ἀπεκαλύφθη αὐτῷ. καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ ἐκάλεσε ὁ κύριος· Σαμουηλ, Σαμουηλ. ἐπορεύθη δὲ ὁ Σαμουηλ πρὸς Ἡλι καὶ εἶπε· Ἴδου ἐγὼ, ὅτι με ἐκάλεσας δῆ. τότε δὲ ἔγνω ὁ Ἡλι ὅτι ὁ κύριος αὐτὸς ἐκαλεῖ τὸν Σαμουηλ. εἶπε οὖν αὐτῷ· κάθειδε, τέκνον, καὶ λάλει τῷ κυρίῳ· κύριε, λάλει, ὅτι ἀκούει ὁ δοῦλός σου. 5

LXX Βασιλέων Α 3:3 – 9 (Adapted)

### 33.7.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Σαμουηλ	Samuel	Proper names in the LXX usually (not always) have neither accents nor breathings.
κιβωτὸς ἡ	ark	
Ἡλι	Eli	
ἀναστρέφω, ἀναστρέψω, ἀνέστρεψα	return, I	
πάλιν	again	
ἀποκαλύπτω, ἀποκαλύψω, ἀπεκάλυψα	reveal, I	
δῆ		A particle emphasising the previous word; ‘really’ ‘actually’, ‘did’, can give the flavour.





## Lesson 34 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Neuter Nouns, Irregular Nouns

### 34.1 Lesson 34 Outline

- 34.2 Vocabulary 34
- 34.3 Neuter Nouns
- 34.4 Irregular Nouns
- 34.5 Opening Prayer
- 34.6 Exercises A
  - 34.6.1 Translate into English
  - 34.6.2 Translate into Greek
- 34.7 Exercises B
  - 34.7.1 Translate into English
  - 34.7.2 Translate into Greek
- 34.8 Exercises C

### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, λυσιτελεῖ ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύειν τὴν γλῶσσαν τῆς καινῆς διαθήκης κτώμεθα γὰρ πολλὰ· συνιῶμεν δὴ τὸν λόγον σου, γινώσκομέν σε ἄμεινον καὶ ἀκολουθοῦμεν σοι ἐγγύτερον. βοήθει ἡμῖν, κύριε, ὥστε ἀξιοῦμεν τοὺς λόγους σου καὶ μανθάνομεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ἵνα ἀναγινώσκωμεν τὸ εὐαγγέλιον σου.

ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί σου, ἀμήν.

Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν καὶ τὴν γῆν.

LXX  
Γένεσις 1, 1

## 34.2 Vocabulary Lesson 34

Neuter Nouns		
αἷμα, αἵματος, τό	blood (97)	Cf. <i>anaemic</i> , bloodless, <i>leukaemia</i> , white blood, <i>haematology</i>
βάπτισμα, βαπτίσματος, τό	baptism (19)	
θέλημα, θελήματος, τό	will (62)	Cf. θέλω
κρίμα, κρίματος, τό	judgement (27)	Cf. κρίνω
ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	sword	The genitive is also ξίφεος
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name (231)	Cf. onomatopoeia, anonymous, eponymous
πνεῦμα, πνεύματος, τό	spirit, wind (379)	Cf. <i>pneumatic</i> also, French <i>un pneu</i> , a tyre
ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό	word, thing (68)	
σπέρμα, σπέρματος, τό	seed (43)	Cf. sperm
στόμα, στόματος, τό	mouth (78)	stomata, part of leaves
σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body (142)	psycho-somatic
χρῆμα, χρήματος, το,	a thing that one uses or needs (7)	in the plural, goods, property, money
There are a few nouns with irregular genitives, here they are		
οὖς, ὠτός, τό,	ear (36)	otitis, inflammation of the ear See below for full declension
πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire (71)	compare pyre, pyrotechnics, fireworks
τέρας, τέρατος, τό	a wonder (16)	
ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water (76)	Cf. hydrant, hydroelectric
φῶς, φωτός, τό	light (73)	Cf. photograph
Neuter nouns declined like γένος, γενους, το		
γένος, γένους, τό,	race (20)	There is a large number of words derived from the root γεν which means 'beget'.
ἔθνος, ἔθνους, τό	nations (161)	τα ἔθνη, the Gentiles, ethnology
ἔλεος, ἐλέους, τό	mercy, compassion (27)	Cf. ἐλέεω
ἔτος, ἔτους, τό,	year (49)	The Etesian winds in the Mediterranean blow from the North west
μέλος, μέλους, τό <sup>1</sup>	member (34)	
μέρος, μέρους, τό <sup>1</sup>	part (42)	In botany –merous is a suffix indicating the number of parts, so pentamerous, having 5 parts
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό,	mountain (63)	orology, the study of mountains
πλῆθος, πλήθους, τό	multitude (31)	plethora

σκεῦος, σκεύους, τό	vessel (23)	a utensil, not a ship
σκότος, σκότους, τό	darkness (31)	scotoscope; an instrument for seeing in the dark
τείχος, τείχους, τό	wall (9)	
τέλος, τέλους, το	end (40)	teleology, a view that developments are due to the ends which they serve
<b>Nouns like πατήρ, πατρός</b>		
θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός, ἡ	daughter (28)	
μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ	mother (83)	Cf. metropolis. maternal derives from mater in Latin, in Greek it is μήτηρ
πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father (413)	paternal derives from pater in Latin, in Greek it is πατήρ
<b>Other noun</b>		
θυσία, ἡ	sacrifice (29)	
<b>Verbs</b>		
ἀποκρίνομαι, ἀποκρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρίθην	answer, I (231)	
ἀποχωρέω, ἀποχωρήσω, ἀπεχώρησα	withdraw, I (4)	
ὑπάρχω, ὑπάρξω, ὑπῆρξα	I exist, am present (60)	often used as a synonym for εἰμί
<b>Adjectives</b>		
δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	righteous, just, right (79)	
καθαρός, -ά, -όν	clean	
<b>Prepositions</b>		
ἐντός	within (2)	takes a genitive
<b>Adverbs</b>		
ἤδη	already (61)	
νῦν	now (147)	
<b>Conjunction</b>		
ἢ	or (309)	
<b>Personal Names</b>		
Σίλας, ὁ, Σίλα	Silas (13)	declines like Βαρναβᾶς
<b>Place Names</b>		
Κιλικία, ἡ	Cilicia (8)	

#### Notes

<sup>1</sup> An attempt to explain the difference between these two words is given in Monograph 9007.

### 34.3 Neuter Nouns

Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension, although they all have *consonant stems* are of two types. As with all neuter nouns in Greek, the vocative and the accusative is the same as the nominative.

The declension of these nouns is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.4.5.

Here are some examples:

	σῶμα body	πνεῦμα spirit	ὄνομα name	γένος race
NVA Singular	σῶμα	πνεῦμα	ὄνομα	γένος
Genitive Singular	σώματος	πνεύματος	ὀνόματος	γένους
Dative Singular	σώματι	πνεύματι	ὀνόματι	γένει
NVA Plural	σώματα	πνεύματα	ὀνόματα	γένη
Genitive Plural	σωμάτων	πνευμάτων	ὀνομάτων	γενῶν
Dative Plural	σώμασι(ν)	πνεύμασι(ν)	ὀνόμασι(ν)	γένεσι(ν)

Example:

Στέφανος τὸ ὄνομά μου

My name is Stephen

ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἔτει ἔπεσε τὰ τείχη τοῦ Ἱερουσολήμ

In that year the walls of Jerusalem fell.

### 34.4 Irregular Nouns

The table below shows those nouns that are irregular in some way. Not all of the cases are irregular; the various irregularities are highlighted in **bold** and underlined.

	χάρις, ἡ grace	γυνή ἡ woman	οὖς ear
Sing. Nom	χάρις	γυνή	<b><u>οὖς</u></b>
Sing. Voc	χάρις	<b><u>γυναί</u></b>	<b><u>οὖς</u></b>
Sing. Acc	<b><u>χάριν</u></b>	γυναῖκα	<b><u>οὖς</u></b>
Sing. Gen	χάριτος	γυναικός	ὠτός
Sing. Dat	χάριτι	γυναικί	ὠτί
Plur. Nom, Voc	χάριτες	γυναῖκες	ὠτα
Plur. Acc	χάριτας	γυναῖκας	ὠτα
Plur. Gen	χαρίτων	γυναικῶν	ὠτων
Plur. Dat	χάρισι(ν)	γυναιξί(ν)	ὠσί(ν)

In this connexion, a good word to know from English is ‘otorhinolaryngologist’, ear nose and throat specialist, which reminds one of FOUR Greek words, οὖς, ὠτός (ear), ῥίς, ῥίνος (nose), λάρυγξ, λάρυγγος (larynx) and λόγος (word).

Some examples:

λέγει αὐτῇ Ἰησοῦς, γυναί, τί κλαίεις; (Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 20:15)

Jesus said to her ‘madam, why art thou weeping?’

κλαίω – I weep

The version above is my own. I have long felt that simply translating γυναί as ‘woman’ does not feel quite right in English, though I cannot really fault the translation. We do not (usually) address a lady whom we do not know or (as in this case) affect not to know, as ‘woman’, but more usually as ‘madam’ or even ‘my lady’.

αἱ μὲν γυναῖκες ἤκουον τοῦ Ἰησοῦ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες ἠργάζοντο ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς

The women were listening to Jesus in the village, but the men were working in the fields

	πατήρ ὁ father	μήτηρ ἡ mother	θυγατήρ, ἡ daughter
Sing. Nom	πατήρ	μήτηρ	θυγατήρ
Sing. Voc	πάτερ	μητηρ	θύγατερ
Sing. Acc	πατέρα	μητέρα	θυγατέρα
Sing. Gen	πατρός	μητρός	θυγατρός
Sing. Dat	πατρί	μητρί	θυγατρί
Plur. Nom, Voc	πατέρες	μήτερες	θυγατέρες
Plur. Acc	πατέρας	μήτερας	θυγατέρας
Plur. Gen	πατέρων	μητέρων	θυγατέρων
Plur. Dat	πατράσι(ν)	μήτρασι(ν)	θυγατράσι(ν)

An example:

ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τοῦ πατρὸς μου μοναὶ πολλαὶ εἰσιν (Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 14:2)

In my father’s house there are many mansions

## 34.5 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, λυσιτελεῖ ἡμῖν ἐπιτηδεύειν τὴν γλῶσσαν τῆς καινῆς διαθήκης κτώμεθα γὰρ πολλὰ· συνιῶμεν δὴ τὸν λόγον σου, γινώσκομέν σε ἄμεινον καὶ ἀκολουθοῦμεν σοι ἐγγύτερον. βοήθει ἡμῖν, κύριε, ὥστε ἀξιοῦμεν τοὺς λόγους σου καὶ μανθάνομεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν ἵνα ἀναγινώσκωμεν τὸ εὐαγγέλιον σου.

ἐν τῷ ὀνόματί σου, ἀμήν.

Let us pray

Lord it is worthwhile for us to study the language of the New Testament for we gain much; we really understand your word, we know you better and we follow you more nearly. Help us Lord so that we appreciate your word and learn this language to read your gospel.

In your name, Amen.

## 34.6 Exercises – A

### 34.6.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ πατήρ τε καὶ ἡ μήτηρ τοὺς υἱοὺς καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας ἐφίλησαν.
2. ὧσιν ἡμῶν ἠκούσαμεν τὰ ρήματα τοῦ Παυλου.
3. περὶ τὴν πατρίδα ἡμῶν ὑπάρχει ὑψηλά ὄρη.
4. οὐ θέλω τὸ αἷμα τῆς θυσίας· θέλω καρδίαν τῆς μετανοίας.
5. λογίσεσθε τὰ τοῦ πνεύματος, μὴ τὰ τῆς σάρκος.
6. βήσομαι ὑμῖν τῷ ξίφει τοῦ κρίματος ἢ ἐν εἰρήνῃ;
7. ὕδατι μὲν ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς βαπτίζω, πυρὶ δὲ αὐτὸς βαπτίσει.
8. ὁ Ἰούδας ἔβαλε τὰ χρήματα πρὸς τοὺς πόδας τῶν Ἰουδαίων.
9. οὕτως λέγει ὁ κύριος· οὐ θέλω θυσίας· ἔλεός τε καὶ δικαιοσύνην θέλω.
10. συνηγάγομεν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἰς τὸ ἀκοῦσαι τὰ ρήματα τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
11. τὸ θέλημά μου ἐστίν, λέγει ὁ κύριος, ὅτι ὅλος ὁ κόσμος σώζεται.
12. τὸ γὰρ στόμα τοῦ κυρίου τοῦτο εἶπε.

### 34.6.2 Translate into Greek

1. In that year, the walls of Jerusalem were attacked by the enemies of Israel.
2. Pilate said that his hands were clean of the blood of this man.
3. The general said that the enemy was approaching and that the walls were not strong.
4. The blood of martyrs is a seed.
5. We saw wonders and signs which were done by the will of God.
6. When we drew near to the walls, we heard the men and the women and they were shouting.
7. During the darkness, we cannot see each other.
8. You must answer the witness.
9. Jesus washed the feet of the disciples.
10. You are members of the body of Christ.
11. Concerning my name, you know it already.
12. In the end all nations will be judged.

## 34.7 Exercises – B

### 34.7.1 Translate into English

1. ἐλπίζομεν τοὺς ἐχθροὺς παῦσαι τὸν πόλεμον.
2. ἀπαντήσω ταῖς θυγάρσι μου ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τῆς μητρὸς αὐτῶν.
3. δύνανται βαπτίζεσθαι ἐν τῷ βαπτίσματι μου;
4. γινώσκεις τὸ ὄνομά μου;
5. δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ θέλημα.
6. τοῦτο ἐποιήθη ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀνδρος ὃς ζῆ ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ κώμῃ.
7. φέρε τὰ τοῦ φωτὸς ὄπλα.
8. τοῖς μὲν ἔθνεσι τὸ εὐαγγέλιον ἐκύρυξε ὁ Παῦλος, τοῖς δὲ Ἰουδαίοις ὁ Πέτρος.
9. ἔσται τέρατα ἐν τῇ γῆ καὶ ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς.
10. ἀπεχώρησε ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἰς τὰ ὄρη πρὸς τὸ εὐχέσθαι.
11. εἰς τὸ φυγεῖν τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, ἐδράμομεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἐν τοῖς σπηλαίοις ἔβηνομεν.

12. τὸ σῶμά σου ναὸς τοῦ θεοῦ ἐστίν.

### 34.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. Wash the inside and the outside of the vessels.
2. We must seek the will of God and do what he commands.
3. The blood of martyrs is a seed for the gospel.
4. The spirit spoke powerful words through the mouth of the prophet.
5. With the breastplate of righteousness and the sword of truth we are protected.
6. In the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit.
7. The judgements of God are right and worthy.
8. Jesus Christ is the son of God and the saviour of the world.
9. Paul and Barnabas preached the gospel in parts of Cilicia.
10. Blessed are the feet of those who bring the gospel of peace.
11. The light came into the world and the darkness cannot overcome it.
12. The nose, the mouth, the hands, the feet and the ears are parts of the body.

## 34.8 Exercises – C

### 34.8.1 Translate into English

Κατέβη δὲ ὁ Σαμψων σὺν τῷ πατρὶ τε καὶ τῇ μητρὶ αὐτοῦ εἰς Θαμνασα. καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ ἐγγῆσαι τῷ ἀμπελῶνι τῆς Θαμνασα, λέων ὠρυόμενος προσέβη αὐτῷ· κατήλθε δὲ τὸ τοῦ κυρίου πνεῦμα ἐπ’ αὐτῷ καὶ διέσπασεν αὐτὸν ὥσπερ ἔριφος ἦν. καὶ εἶχε οὐδὲν ἐν χερσὶ αὐτοῦ. εἶπε δὲ οὐκ τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ μητρὶ ἃ ἔπραξεν. κατέβη δὲ καὶ ἐλάλησε τῇ γυναικὶ καὶ αὐτὴ ἤρесе αὐτῷ.

Αὐτὴν οὖν ἔλαβε καὶ μεθ’ ἡμέρας τινὰς ἐπέστρεψε οἴκαδε ἀλλ’ ἐξέκλινε εἰς τὸ ἰδεῖν τὸ τοῦ λεόντος πτώμα. καὶ ἰδοῦ, συστροφὴ μελισσῶν ἐν τῷ στόματι τοῦ λεόντος καὶ μελὶ ἦν. ἐγεύσατο τὸ μελὶ καὶ ἀγαθὸν ἦν.

5

LXX Κριταὶ 14:5 – 9 (Adapted)

### 34.8.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Σαμψων	Samson	No accent in the LXX
Θαμνασα	Timnah	This does not decline
ὠρυόμενος	roaring	This is a participle (see Lessons 44 & 45) from ὠρύομαι, I roar
προσβαίνω, προσβήσομαι, προσέβην	come upon, I; advance, I	
διασπάω, διασπάσω, διέσπασα	tear apart, I	Note that the α does not change to an η
ὥσπερ	just as, like	
ἔριφος	young goat, kid	
ἀρέσκω, ἀρέσω ἤρεσα	am pleasing to, I	takes a dative
τινας	some	See Lesson 35
ἐπιστρέφω, ἐπιστρέψω, ἐπέστρεψα	turn around, I	
οἴκαδε	homewards	
ἐκκλίνω, ἐκκλινῶ, ἐξέκλινα	turn out of the way, aside, I	
πτώμα	body	as in a dead body
ιδού	See! Behold!	
συστροφὴ, ἡ	swarming, commotion	
μέλισσα, ἡ	bee	
γεύομαι, γεύσομαι, ἐγευσάμην	taste, I	
μελί, τό, μελίτος	honey	



## Lesson 35 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Nouns, Vowel Stems; τις and τίς

### 35.1 Lesson 35 Outline

- 35.2 Vocabulary 35
- 35.3 υ Stems
- 35.4 ι and εϋ Stems
- 35.5 Indefinite and Interrogative pronouns τις, τίς and ὅστις
- 35.6 Opening Prayer
- 35.7 Exercises A
  - 35.7.1 Translate into English
  - 35.7.2 Translate into Greek
- 35.8 Exercises B
  - 35.8.1 Translate into English
  - 35.8.2 Translate into Greek
- 35.9 Exercises C

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

τὸ πάλαι, κύριε, ἦλθες εἰς τοῦτον τὸν κόσμον ἵνα σώσῃ ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῶν ἡμαρτίων ἡμῶν· χαρὶν ἔχομεν δὴ σοὶ τῆς μεγάλης θυσίας ἐπὶ τὸν σταῦρον. χῶρίς σου, κύριε, πλανώμεθα, ἀλλὰ σὺ ἄγεις ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν ὅλην ἀληθείαν καὶ ἐλευθερίαν. μανθανόντων ἡμῶν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν, ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν, κύριε.

Ἀμήν

equo ne credite Teucri.

Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis

Do not trust the horse, Trojans.

Whatever it is, I fear the Greeks even when they bring gifts.

Aeneid II, 48 – 49

Vergil

## 35.2 Vocabulary Lesson 35

Nouns declined like <i>ἰχθύς, ἰχθύος</i>		
<i>ἰχθύς, ἰχθύος, ὁ</i>	fish (20)	ichthyology, ichthyosaur
<i>ἰσχύς, ἰσχύος, ἡ</i>	strength (10)	Cf. <i>ἰσχυρός</i>
<i>ὄφρυς, ὄφρυος, ὁ</i>	eye-brow (1)	Also, brow, edge of a cliff
<i>στάχυς, στάχυος, ὁ</i>	ear of corn (4)	
Feminine nouns declined like <i>πόλις, πόλεως ἡ</i>		
<i>ἀνάστασις, ἀναστάσεως, ἡ</i>	resurrection (42)	from <i>ἀνα</i> 'up' and <i>ἵστημι</i> 'I cause to stand' (Lesson 41)
<i>ἀποκάλυψις, ἀποκαλύψεως, ἡ</i>	revelation (18)	Cf. <i>ἀποκαλύπτω</i>
<i>ἄφεσις, ἀφέσεως, ἡ</i>	forgiveness (17)	
<i>γνώσις, γνώσεως, ἡ</i>	knowledge (29)	Cf. <i>γινώσκω</i>
<i>δύναμις, δυνάμεως, ἡ</i>	power (119)	dynamite, dynamic
<i>θλίψις, θλίψεως, ἡ</i>	tribulation trouble, hardship (45)	
<i>κρίσις, κρίσεως, ἡ</i>	judgement (47)	crisis, cf. <i>κρίνω, κριτής, κρῖμα</i>
<i>παράδοσις, παραδόσεως, ἡ</i>	tradition (13)	
<i>πίστις, πίστεως, ἡ</i>	faith (243)	Cf. <i>πιστεύω, πίστος, ἄπιστος</i>
<i>πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ</i>	city (162)	necropolis, politics
<i>συνείδησις, συνειδήσεως, ἡ</i>	conscience (30)	
Masculine nouns declined like <i>βασιλεύς, βασιλέως ὁ</i>		
<i>ἄλιεύς, ἀλιέως, ὁ</i>	fisherman (5)	
<i>βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ</i>	king (115)	basilica, <i>βασίλισσα</i> , queen
<i>γραμματεὺς, γραμματέως, ὁ</i>	scribe (63)	
<i>ἱερεὺς, ἱερέως, ὁ</i>	priest (31)	
<i>ἀρχιερεὺς, ἀρχιερέως, ὁ</i>	high-priest, chief priest (122)	
Other nouns		
<i>βλασφημία, ἡ</i>	blasphemy (17)	
<i>βραχίον, βραχίονος, ὁ</i>	arm (3)	
<i>δρᾶμα, δράματος, τό</i>	drama	
<i>θέρους, θέρους, τό</i>	summer (3)	
<i>μάθημα, μαθήματος, τό</i>	lesson	also, in later writers, teaching, doctrine
<i>οἰκίτωρ, οἰκίτορος, ὁ</i>	inhabitant	
<i>σεισμός, ὁ</i>	earthquake (13)	
<i>σελήνη, ἡ</i>	moon (9)	
<i>χειμών, χειμῶνος ὁ</i>	storm, also winter (6)	
Verbs		
<i>ἀποστρέφω, ἀποστρέψω, ἀπέστρεψα</i>	turn away, I (9)	
<i>ἀριθμέω, ἀριθμήσω, ἠρίθμησα</i>	count I, number I (3)	arithmetic

διαρήσω, διαρήξω, διέρηξα	tear apart, I (5)	also spelt διαρρήσω
ἔάω, ἔάσω, εἶασα	allow, I (11)	Note the formation of the future and aorist
καίω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα	burn, I (12)	holocaust
κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, ἐκύκλωσα	encircle, I, surround, I (4)	cycle
συλλαμβάνω, συλλήμψομαι, συνέλαβον	capture, I (16)	
<b>Adjectives</b>		
δεινός, -ή, -όν	strange, terrible	dinosaur, strange lizard
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν	shining (8)	
μεσός, -ή, -όν	middle (54)	
<b>Adverbs</b>		
ἀεί	always (7)	
πολλάκις	often (16)	
πόρρωθεν	from afar (2)	

### 35.3 υ Stems

In some respects these correspond closely to the two neuter noun declensions.

	Singular	Plural
Nom. Voc.	ἰχθύς	ἰχθύες
Accusative	ἰχθύν	ἰχθύας
Genitive	ἰχθυός	ἰχθυῶν
Dative	ἰχθυί	ἰχθυσί(ν)

The Vocative Singular of some of these nouns is *slightly* different; a full declension is shown in Koine Greek Accidence §2.4.4.

### 35.4 ι and εϋ Stems

A more important class of nouns are those with ι and εϋ stems which are declined thus:

		πόλις, πόλεως ἢ, city	βασιλεύς, βασιλέως ὁ, king
Singular	Nom.	πόλις	βασιλεύς
	Voc.	πόλι	βασιλεῦ
	Accusative	πόλιν	βασιλέα
	Genitive	πόλεως	βασιλέως
	Dative	πόλει	βασιλεῖ
Plural	Nom. Voc.	πόλεις	βασιλεῖς
	Accusative	πόλεις	βασιλεῖς
	Genitive	πόλεων	βασιλέων
	Dative	πόλεσι(ν)	βασιλεῦσι(ν)

## Notes

Though the stems end in  $\iota$  and  $\epsilon\upsilon$  (and the nominative ending is simply  $\varsigma$ ), it is better to think of the endings as  $-\iota\varsigma$ ,  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$  and  $-\epsilon\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ .

All these nouns with  $\iota$  stems have nominative singular in  $-\iota\varsigma$  and genitive singular in  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ , and all are feminine. All nouns with  $\epsilon\upsilon$  stems have nominative singular in  $-\epsilon\upsilon\varsigma$  and genitive singular in  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ , and all are masculine. So, to put it another way, they are always of the form:

$-\iota\varsigma$ ,  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ , ἡ

$-\epsilon\upsilon\varsigma$ ,  $-\epsilon\omega\varsigma$ , ὁ

Note the spelling (and accentuation) of the Vocative singular.

In each case (as with ἀληθείς) the nominative and accusative plurals are the same.

βασιλεύς follows πόλις exactly, except in the accusative singular and dative plural.

In Attic Greek the Nominative plural of βασιλεύς is βασιλῆς not βασιλεῖς

Nouns like πόλις, πόλεως ἡ with vowel stems need to be distinguished from those with consonant stems such as:

ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος ἡ

χάρις, χάριτος ἡ

## 35.5 Indefinite and interrogative pronouns τις, τίς and ὅστις

The distinction between the two is that the *indefinite* pronoun τις (someone, something) is enclitic (Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §16.2.4), but the interrogative pronoun τίς (who?, what?) is *always* accented acute.

The full declension is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.9

The declension of ὅστις is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §2.8.

In Attic Greek there was a distinction between the use of ὅς, ἦ, ὅ and ὅστις, ἦτις, ὅτι, but in Koine this distinction has largely disappeared and ὅστις, ἦτις, ὅτι usually means the same as ὅς, ἦ, ὅ.

Here is an example:

Πᾶς οὖν **ὅστις** ἀκούει μου τοὺς λόγους τούτους καὶ ποιεῖ αὐτούς, ὁμοιωθήσεται ἀνδρὶ φρονίμῳ, **ὅστις** ὠκοδόμησεν αὐτοῦ τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπὶ τὴν πέτραν.

Κατὰ Ματθαῖον 7:24

Everyone who hears these words of mine and does them is like a wise man who built his house upon rock.

## 35.6 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

τὸ πάλαι, κύριε, ἦλθες εἰς τοῦτον τὸν κόσμον ἵνα σώσῃ ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῶν ἡμαρτίων ἡμῶν· χαρὶν ἔχομεν δὴ σοι τῆς μεγάλης θυσίας ἐπὶ τὸν σταῦρον. χῶρίς σου, κύριε, πλανώμεθα, ἀλλὰ σὺ ἄγεις ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν ὅλην ἀληθείαν καὶ ἐλευθερίαν. μανθανόντων ἡμῶν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν, ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν, κύριε.

Ἀμήν

Let us pray

Of old, Lord, you came into this world to save us from our sins. We do thank you for your great sacrifice upon the cross. Without you, o Lord, we wander but you lead us into all truth and freedom. As we learn this language be with us Lord.

Amen.

## 35.7 Exercises – A

### 35.7.1 Translate into English

1. ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ὁ ἀνὴρ καὶ ἡ γύνῃ ἔφαγον τὸν καρπὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου τῆς γνώσεως.
2. οἱ γραμματεῖς καὶ οἱ Φαρισαῖοι τὸν Ἰησοῦν ἤτησαν περὶ τῶν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
3. ἐγένετο δὲ, ἐν ἐκείναις ταῖς ἡμέραις, ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἠθέλησε ἀριθμῆσαι τὸν λαόν.
4. οὐ χρὴ ὑμᾶς ἀποστρέψαι ἀπὸ τῶν παραδόσεων τῶν πατρῶν ὑμῶν.
5. εἶπε ὁ Ἰησοῦς ὅτι οἱ μαθηταὶ αὐτοῦ ἔσονται ἀλιεῖς ἀνδρῶν.
6. θέλω βῆναι πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας πρὸς τὸ θεώρησαι τὰ δράματα τοῦ Αἰσχύλου.
7. ἐν τῷ προσενέγκειν τὸν γραμματέα τὰ δῶρα, ἦλθον κλεπταί, οἱ αὐτὰ κατέλαβον.
8. οἱ μαθηταὶ εἶπον ὅτι ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἐπὶ τῷ ὕδατι περιεπάτησε.
9. ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἐκέλευσε τὸν ἄνθρωπον δηλῶσαι ἑαυτὸν τοῖς ἱερεῦσιν.
10. ὁ ποῦς μέλος τοῦ σώματος ἐστίν.
11. ἐκέλευσε ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς γραμματεῖς ἐπιστολὴν γράψαι τοῖς ἱερεῦσιν.
12. δεῖ ὑμᾶς αἰτήσαι τοὺς γραμματεῖς ἃ γράφουσιν.

### 35.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. The king captured the city and ordered the inhabitants to be counted.
2. The high priest tore his clothes and cried out, ‘You hear his blasphemy. He must be condemned’.
3. The Lord will destroy the wicked city.
4. The king said that that the people must obey the priests.
5. Suddenly, we were surrounded by a crowd of men who wanted to capture us.
6. The holy prophet prophesied that the city would be destroyed.
7. The traditions of men do not always follow the commandments of God.
8. By our conscience we can know what is right.
9. After hearing Paul, the citizens went to the middle of the city and burnt their books.
10. We shall approach the city and we shall see its shining temple.
11. Through Jesus we can acquire forgiveness of our sins.
12. In the last days there will be tribulations, famines and earthquakes.

## 35.8 Exercises – B

### 35.8.1 Translate into English

1. μάθετε τὴν τῆς δικαιοσύνης ὁδὸν καὶ γίνεσθε ὡς οἱ μαθηταὶ τοῦ Χριστοῦ.
2. ἠναγκάσθημεν μὲν ἡμεῖς πορεύεσθαι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἐάθησαν δὲ αὐτοὶ ποιεῖν ἅτινα θέλουσιν .
3. εἶπε ὁ κῆρυξ ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς κελεύει τὸν λαὸν προσκυνεῖν τῷ θεῷ.
4. δύναται ἡ χεὶρ εἰπεῖν τῷ σώματι οὐκ εἰμι μέρος σου;
5. ὁ παλαιὸς ναυτῆς διηγήσατο δεινὸν μῦθον.
6. διὰ τῶν ἀγρῶν ἐπορεύσαντο οἱ μαθηταὶ καὶ στάχρας ἔλαβον.
7. οὐ δύναται ὁ κλεπτὴς νικᾶν τὸν ἰσχυρόν.
8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς κτήσασθαι τὴν γνῶσιν τῶν γράφων.
9. μαθήσομαι τὸ μάθημα πρὸς το καταμαθεῖν τὴν δίδαχὴν αὐτοῦ.
10. διώκετε μὲν τὴν δικαιοσύνην, φεύγετε δὲ τὰ ἔργα τῆς κακίας.
11. ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ ἄπιστος οὐ πιστεύει τῷ θεῷ.

12. περιεπατήσε ἕως ὄφρως κρημνοῦ εἰς τὸ ἰδεῖν τὴν θάλασσαν.

### 35.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. The power of the arm of the Lord is able to save us.
2. We are often troubled by our conscience.
3. Knowledge of salvation is the beginning of wisdom.
4. It happened that we met lepers and Jesus healed them.
5. In the summer we collect the fruit and in the winter we sow new seeds.
6. The scribes and the Pharisees said that we must honour the traditions of the elders.
7. The crowd agreed with the words of the prophet and turned away from their sins.
8. The moon will become as blood and there will be other terrible wonders.
9. We must not add sin to sin but increase the fruits of righteousness.
10. We saw the high mountains from afar.
11. Paul explained to the apostles in Jerusalem the gospel that he proclaimed to the Greeks.
12. Worship the Lord in the beauty of holiness.

## 35.9 Exercises – C

### 35.9.1 Translate into English

Οἱ ἀδελφοὶ τοῦ Ἰωσηφ ἐξῆλθον πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν τοῦ Σεχεμ βόσκειν τὰ πρόβατα αὐτῶν. καὶ Ἰσραηλ ἀπέστειλεν Ἰωσηφ πρὸς αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ, ἐπεὶ αὐτὸν εἶδον, εἶπον ἐν αὐτοῖς, ἰδοῦ, ἔρχεται ὁ ἐνυπνιαστής ἐκεῖνος· ἀποκτενοῦμεν αὐτὸν, ρήξομεν τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐροῦμεν τῷ πατρὶ ἡμῶν, ἰδοῦ, τὰ ἱμάτια τοῦ υἱοῦ σου, θήριον πονήρον κατέφαγε αὐτὸν. Ρουβην δὲ ἀντεῖπε αὐτοῖς καὶ εἶπε· ὧδε λάκκος ἐστίν· βαλοῦμεν αὐτὸν εἰς ἐκεῖνο. κένος δὲ ὁ λάκκος· ὕδωρ οὐκ ἔχει.

5

Τότε, οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἔβλεψαν ὄδοιπόρους τινες οἱ ὧδεον, σὺν καμήλοις αὐτῶν, πρὸς τὸν Αἰγύπτον. ἔδοξε αὐτοῖς πωλῆσαι Ἰωσηφ τοῖς ὄδοπόροις καὶ ἐδέξαντο εἴκοσι χρυσῶν. οἱ ἕνδεκα ἀδελφοὶ ἐπανῆλθον πρὸς τὸν πατέρα καὶ ἐδήλωσαν τὰ ἱμάτια τῷ Ἰακωβ. διέρρηξεν ὁ Ἰακωβ τὰ ἱμάτια καὶ ἐθρηνησεν τὸν υἱὸν ἡμέρας πολλάς.

LXX Γένεσις 37:12 – 35 (Adapted)

### 35.9.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Ἰωσηφ	Joseph	In the LXX names usually have no accent or breathing
Σεχεμ	Shechem	
βόσκω, βοσκήσω	I feed	i.e. sheep, goats or cattle
Ἰσραηλ	Israel	Joseph's father
ἰδοῦ	Lo! Behold! See there!	
ἐνυπνιαστής	dreamer	
ἀποκτείνω, ἀποκτενῶ	I kill	various different spellings have been attested
ρήγνυμι, ρήξω ἔρ(ρ)ηξα	I tear	
θήριον	wild beast	
Ρουβην	Reuben	

ἀντιλέγω, ἀντερῶ ἀντεῖπον	I speak against	takes the dative
ᾧδε	here	see lesson 41
κένος, -η, -ον	empty	cenotaph
λάκκος	pit, dungeon	
ὁδοιπόρος, ὁ	traveller	
καμήλος, ὁ	camel	
εἴκοσι	twenty	
ἕνδεκα	eleven	
ἐπανερχομαι, -, ἐπανῆλθον	I return	
διέρρηξεν	he tore apart	alternative spelling for διέρηξα
Ἰακωβ	Jacob	
πολλάς	many	this is the accusative plural form – see Lesson 36.





## Lesson 36 – 3<sup>rd</sup> Declension Adjectives, Numbers

### 36.1 Lesson 36 Outline

- 36.2 Vocabulary 36
- 36.3 Third Declension Adjectives
- 36.4 Adjectives of three terminations
- 36.5 Adjectives of two terminations
- 36.6 Irregular adjectives
- 36.7 Adjectives of one termination
- 36.8 Numbers
- 36.9 Opening Prayer
- 36.10 Exercises A
  - 36.10.1 Translate into English
  - 36.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 36.11 Exercises B
  - 36.11.1 Translate into English
  - 36.11.2 Translate into Greek
- 36.12 Exercises C

### Προσευχὴ τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

Κύριε, πάλιν συλλεγόμεθα ὧδε ἵνα μάθωμεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν. σήμερον ἐπιτηδεύσομεν τὰ ἐπιθετέα τῆς τρίτης κλίσεως. ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν, ὦ κύριε ὡς μανθάνομεν ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα καὶ τὰ συνιῶμεν.

Ἀμήν.

This is the third time; I hope good luck lies in odd numbers ... There is divinity in odd numbers, either in nativity, chance or death.

Merry Wives of Windsor

V 1,2

Shakespeare

## 36.2 Vocabulary Lesson 36

Verbs		
ἀναβοάω, ἀναβοήσω, ἀνεβόησα	cry out, I (1)	
ἄρπάζω, ἄρπάσω, ἤρπασα	steal, I; snatch, I; carry off (14)	harpies (Vergil Aeneid, Book 3); in Attic the conjugation is ἄρπάζω, ἄρπάξω, ἤρπασα
βαδίζω, βαδίσω, ἐβάδισα	walk, I	
διαπεράω, διαπερήσω, διεπάρησα	cross over, I (6)	
ἐκλέγομαι, -, ἐξελεξάμην	choose, I (22)	eclectic
ἐπανέρχομαι, ἐπανελεύσομαι, ἐπανήλθον	return, I (2)	
ἐπιστρέφω, ἐπιστρέψω, ἐπέστρεψα	turn around (36)	
θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα	sacrifice, I (13)	
κινδυνεύω, κινδυνεύσω, ἐκινδύνευσα	am in danger, I (4)	
κινέω, κινήσω, ἐκίνησα	move, I (8)	kinetic
σέβομαι, -, ἐσέφθην	worship, I; honour with pious awe, I (10)	
Nouns		
ἄγγέλμα, ἀγγέλματος, τό	message	
βαδίζων, βαδίζοντος, ὁ	one who walks	formed from βαδίζω, I walk
εὐχή, ἡ	prayer (3)	
ἵππευς, ἵππεως, ὁ	rider, horseman (2)	
κακία, ἡ	evil (11)	A useful abstract noun
κίνδυνος, ὁ	danger (8)	
λιμὴν, λιμένος ὁ	harbour (2)	
πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	country, fatherland (2)	
πολίτης, ὁ	citizen (4)	
πυλῶν, πυλῶνος, ὁ	gateway (16)	
στάδιον, τό	stade	a unit of measurement of about 200 yards
ὕλη, ἡ	forest, wood, (1)	
χώρα, ἡ	country, land (28)	
Adjectives		
ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true (26)	
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν	all (34)	An alternative to πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν
ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές	feeble, weak, sick (26)	
ἀσφαλής, ἀσφαλές	safe (5)	
βαθύς, βαθεῖα, βαθύ	deep (4)	bathyscope

βαρύς, βαρεῖα, βαρύ	heavy (6)	barometer, barium
βραχύς, βραχεῖα, βραχύ	short (7)	
γλυκύς, γλυκεῖα, γλυκύ	sweet (4)	glucose
εὐγενής, εὐγενές	well-born, noble (3)	eugenics, Eugene Onegin
εὐσεβής, εὐσεβές	pious, God-fearing (3)	
ἥμισυς, ἡμίσεια, ἥμισυ	half (5)	hemisphere
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	big, great (242)	
μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν	black (6)	melanin, melanesian
ξηρός, -ά, -όν	dry (8)	ξηρά - dry land
ὀξύς, ὀξεῖα, ὀξύ	sharp (7)	oxygen
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all (1243)	
παχύς, παχεῖα, παχύ	thick	pachyderm
πλήρης, πλήρες	full (16)	
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ	much (395)	
ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	swift (1)	As the adverb ταχύ, it occurs 13 times
τραχύς, τραχεῖα, τραχύ	rough (2)	
ὕψηλός -ή, -όν	high (12)	
χάλεπος, -η, -ον	difficult (2)	
<b>Conjunction</b>		
διότι	wherefore, for what reason, because (23)	
οὐδέ ... οὐδέ	neither ... nor (143)	often used in pairs
<b>Adverbs</b>		
οὕτως, οὕτω	so, just so (206)	οὕτω is used before vowels and consonants οὕτως <i>only</i> before a vowel
πάντοτε	at all times (38)	
<b>Proper Names</b>		
Τρώς, Τρωός, ὁ	Trojan	

### 36.3 Third Declension Adjectives

Just as there are third declension nouns there are also adjectives that decline according to a third declension pattern. The basic scheme of 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup> declension adjectives can be described as 2-1-2; that is the masculine and neuter are declined like 2<sup>nd</sup> declension nouns and the feminine is declined like 1<sup>st</sup> declension (feminine) nouns.

For 3<sup>rd</sup> declension adjectives the scheme is 3-1-3, so that the the masculine and neuter are declined like 3<sup>rd</sup> declension nouns and the feminine is declined like 1<sup>st</sup> declension (feminine) nouns. There are also some (not many) adjectives that are irregular.

The declension of these adjectives is shown in full in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.1.2.

There are the following categories:

- Adjectives of three terminations

- Adjectives of two terminations
- Irregular adjectives
- Adjectives of one termination

### 36.4 Adjectives of three terminations

There are three main types:

- πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν
- ἡδύς, ἡδεῖα, ἡδύ
- μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν

The declension of these adjectives is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax sections 3.1.2.1 and 3.1.2.3.

Of these, πᾶς is very common; μέλας only occurs six times and although ἡδύς does not occur in the New Testament, other adjectives like ἡδύς are used.

Some examples of usage from the New Testament are:

ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς εἶπεν αὐτοῖς· οὐ βλέπετε ταυτὰ πάντα;

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 24:2

He in answer said to them, ‘you do see all these things don’t you?’

λέγει αὐτῷ, κύριε, οὔτε ἄντλημα ἔχεις καὶ τὸ φρέαρ ἐστὶν βαθύ.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 4:11

She said to him, Sir, you do not have a bucket and the well is deep.

οὐ δύνασαι μίαν τρίχα λευκὴν ποιῆσαι ἢ μελαίναν

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 5:36

You are not able to make one hair white or black

### 36.5 Adjectives of two terminations

In these type of adjectives the masculine and the feminine are the same; the neuter differs from the masculine/feminine.

There are two types of these, the adjectives ending in –ων, are *comparative* adjectives; these are discussed more fully in Lesson 37.

The declension of these adjectives is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.2.

Some examples of usage from the New Testament are:

πέντε γὰρ ἄνδρας ἔσχες καὶ νῦν ὃν ἔχεις οὐκ ἔστιν σου ἀνὴρ· τοῦτο ἀληθές εἶρηκας.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 4:18

For you have had five men and the one whom you now have is not your husband; this you have said is true.

καὶ θεραπεύετε τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ ἀσθενεῖς καὶ λέγετε αὐτοῖς· ἤγγισεν ἐφ’ ὑμᾶς ἡ βασιλεία τοῦ θεοῦ.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 10:11

And heal the sick in that city and say to them: the kingdom of god has come upon you.

### 36.6 Irregular adjectives

Two very common irregular adjectives are πολὺς and μέγας; the declension is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.1.2.2.

Two examples of usage from the New Testament are:

ἄνθρωπός τις ἐποίησεν δεῖπνον **μέγα** καὶ ἐκάλεσαν **πολλοὺς**

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 14:16

A certain man made a great feast and called many guests.

Καὶ ἐποίησεν δοχὴν **μέγαλην** Λευὶς αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἦν ὄχλος **πολὺς** τελωνῶν οἱ ἦσαν μετ' αὐτοῦ κατακειμένοι.

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 5:29

And Levi made a great party for him at his house, and there was a large crowd of tax-collectors who were reclining with him.

### 36.7 Adjectives of one termination

There are also adjectives with *one* termination; this is either because the terminations are the same for all genders or the nature of the adjective is such that a neuter does not exist or does not make sense. Abbot and Mansfield (A Primer of Greek Grammar) state (page 45 §73) that ‘there is a large number adjectives’ with one termination. The declension of such adjectives is the same as a similar noun, for example, ἄρπαξ, rapacious, declines like a guttural 3<sup>rd</sup> declension noun.

Some of these do occur in the New Testament, here is an example:

Προσέχετε ἀπὸ τῶν ψευδοπροφητῶν, οἵτινες ἔρχονται πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἐν ἐνδύμασιν προβάτων, ἔσωθεν δέ εἰσιν λύκοι **ἄρπαγες**.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 7:15

Be on your guard against false prophets who come upon you in sheep’s clothing, but inside they are rapacious wolves.

### 36.8 Numbers

Numbers are treated like Adjectives and thus decline according to case and gender. Fortunately, most numbers do not decline but there are some that do. These are

- one
- two
- three
- four
- 200, 300, ..., 1000, 2000

The declension of the numbers 1 to 4 can be consulted in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.6.

A list of cardinals, ordinals and adverbs can be consulted in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.7.

The declension of οὐδεὶς and μηδεὶς which are really confluents of οὐ, μή and εἷς, μία, ἓν is shown in Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.9.

## 36.9 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

Κύριε, πάλιν συλλεγόμεθα ὧδε ἵνα μάθωμεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν. σήμερον ἐπιτηδεύσομεν τὰ ἐπιθετέα τῆς τρίτης κλίσεως. ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν, ὦ κύριε ὡς μανθάνομεν ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα καὶ τὰ συνιδῶμεν.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord, we are again gathered here together to learn this language. Today we shall study adjectives of the third declension. Be with us Lord as we learn and understand these concepts.

Amen

## 36.10 Exercises – A

### 36.10.1 Translate into English

1. πάντοτε οἱ εὐσεβεῖς σέβονται τὸν θεόν.
2. οὐ βραχὺς ὁ βραχίον τοῦ θεοῦ οὐδὲ ἀσθενὴς καὶ δύναται σῶσαι τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ.
3. γινώσκομεν τὸν ἀνδρὰ ἀληθῆ εἶναι.
4. βραχίονι αὐτοῦ ἐδήλωσε ἴσχυν.
5. ταχὺς ὁ πόταμος ἀλλ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἐδυνήσαντο διαπερῆσαι.
6. οὕτως ὅξν τὸ ξίφος ὥστε ἐδυνήσατο τεμεῖν τὸν λίθον.
7. ὁ πατήρ ἐδωκε ἡμίσεια κτημάτων αὐτοῦ τῷ ἐνὶ υἱῷ καὶ ἡμίσεια τῷ ἐτέρῳ.
8. ἀνὴρ τις ἐβάδιζε πρὸς τὸν Ἰεριχω καὶ κλεπταί τινες προσέπεσον αὐτῷ καὶ ἥρπασαν τὰ κτίματα.
9. ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς καὶ οἱ ἱερεῖς ἔδωκαν τριακόνα ἀργυρία τῷ Ἰουδα.
10. ἐμένομεν τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἐν ἐκείνῃ πόλει καὶ τότε ἐφοιτήσαμεν ἄλλην πόλιν ἐξ ἡμέρας.
11. ἐκελεύσε ὁ Ἰησοῦς τοὺς δώδεκα μαθητὰς θεραπεῦσαι μὲν τοὺς ἀσθενεῖς ἀγγεῖλαι δὲ τὸ εὐαγγελιον.
12. ὁ πλούσιος μέγαν πύργον ὠκοδόμησεν.

### 36.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. We crossed the river and marched for 50 stades towards the city.
2. The Trojans captured a Greek who told them many things about the Greek army and the horse.
3. The boy said that he had five loaves of bread and two fishes.
4. The judgements of God are just and true.
5. Behold! I am making all things new; a new heaven and a new earth.
6. About three thousand followed Jesus on that day.
7. Jesus died, was buried and rose on the third day.
8. Night is coming in which no one can work.
9. The mother and her daughters lamented the death of their father for eight days.
10. The seven walkers marched out against the nine riders.
11. Two strangers came to the gates of the city and brought a message from the king.
12. The arm of God is not short and he is able to save us from deep danger.

## 36.11 Exercises – B

### 36.11.1 Translate into English

1. οἱ εὐγενεῖς καὶ εὐσεβεῖς πρεσβύτεροι ἔγνωσαν ἃ δεῖ ποιηθῆναι.
2. δίκαιαι καὶ ἀληθεῖς αἱ ἐντολαὶ τοῦ θεοῦ.
3. ἐκυκλώθη ἡ μεγάλη πόλις μεγάλοις τειχέσιν.
4. οὕτως βαρὺ τὸ φορτίον ὥστε οὐκ ἐδυνήσαμεθα ἐνεγκεῖν αὐτό.
5. ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ χώρας ξηρᾶς ἡμέρας τινὰς καὶ οὐκ ἔσχομεν ὕδωρ.
6. ἐκελεύσαμεν τοὺς δούλους συλλέξαι τὸ ξύλον τῷ πυρί.
7. οἱ πολῖται τὸν μέλαν ἵππον εἴλκυσαν διὰ τῶν τῆς πόλεως πυλώνων.
8. βαθεῖ καὶ ταχεῖ ποταμῷ ἐκωλύθησαν οἱ στρατιῶται.
9. ἠλάσαμεν τοὺς ἵππους ἡμῶν διὰ χώρας τραχεῖᾶς τε καὶ ἐχθρᾶς.
10. οὕτως μελαίνα ἡ νύξ ὥστε οὐδεὶς δύναται ἰδεῖν ἄτινα.
11. ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ ὡς ὀξύτατον ξίφος ἐστίν.
12. ἀνεβόησε ὁ ἀνὴρ· ὅστις ἔρχεται τὰράξει τὴν εἰρήνην τῆς πόλεως;

### 36.11.2 Translate into Greek

1. The fourth message from the king said that the army must attack on the fifth day.
2. The priests sacrificed 25 bulls on the altar on the top of the hill.
3. This garden is so beautiful that we cannot describe it.
4. Before the enemy came into the camp we were able to move the sick to a safe place.
5. The people chose seven men who were true, noble and god-fearing.
6. We left the village and walked for 40 stades towards the city on the hill.
7. Jesus healed ten lepers but only one returned to give praise to God.
8. By the finger of God Jesus threw out the demons.
9. The general moved his soldiers from the river to a camp near the city.
10. We must do many difficult tasks and carry many heavy burdens.
11. The enemy cut down half of the trees in the forest and burnt the other half.
12. At the fourth watch in the night we saw some poor men who were approaching us.

## 36.12 Exercises – C

### 36.12.1 Translate into English

Ὁ δὲ κύριος εἶπε τῷ Ἰώνῳ· ἦρε καὶ πορεύου εἰς Νινευη ὅτι πρὸς με κακὸς ὁ λαός. Ἰωνᾶς δὲ ὅτι οὐκ ἠθέλε προσβαίνειν πρὸς Νινευη, ἔφυγε ἀπὸ τοῦ κυρίου καὶ κατέβη εἰς Ἰωππην. καὶ ἐκεῖ, ἐν τῷ λιμένι, εὔρε ναύκληρον ὃς ἔμελλε πλεῖν πρὸς Θαρσις. Ἰωνᾶς οὖν ἀπέδωκε τὸν μισθὸν τῷ ναυκλήρῳ καὶ ἔπλει πρὸς Θαρσις.

Κύριος δὲ χειμῶνα ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ ἐποίησε ὥστε κινδυνεύειν συντριβῆναι τὸ πλοῖον. ναυταὶ οὖν τοῦ πλοίου εἶπον τῷ Ἰώνῳ· τίς εἶ καὶ ὀπόθεν ἦλθες; εἶπε αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰωνᾶς· δοῦλος κυρίου ἐγὼ εἰμι καὶ τὸν κύριον θεὸν τοῦ οὐρανοῦ ἐγὼ σέβομαι, ὃς ἐποίησεν τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ τὴν ξηρὰν. καὶ ἐφοβοῦντο οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ εἶπον αὐτῷ· τί τοῦτο ἐποίησας; διότι ἔγνωσαν οἱ ἄνδρες ὅτι ἀπὸ προσώπου κυρίου φύγει. εἶπε δὲ ὁ Ἰωνᾶς· ἄρατέ με καὶ ἐμβάλετέ με εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ κοπάσει ἡ θάλασσα ἀφ' ὑμῶν· διότι ἔγνω ἐγὼ ὅτι δι' ἐμε ὁ κλύδων ὁ μέγας οὗτος ἐφ' ὑμᾶς ἐστίν. καὶ παρεβιάζοντο οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπιστρέψαι τὸ πλοῖον πρὸς τὴν γῆν ἀλλ' οὐκ ἠδύναντο. ἀνεβόησαν οὖν οἱ ἄνδρες πρὸς κύριον καὶ εἶπον· μὴ καταγίνωσκε ἡμῶν διὰ τὴν ψυχὴν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τούτου. καὶ ἔλαβον τὸν Ἰωνα καὶ

ἔξεβαλον αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ κοπάζει ἡ θάλασσα. ἐφοβοῦντο δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες τὸν κύριον καὶ ἔθυσαν θυσίαν τῷ κυρίῳ καὶ ἠῤῥχοντο εὐχας.

LXX Ἰωνᾶς I 1 – 16 (adapted)

### 36.12.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

ἀναβοᾶω, ἀναβοήσω, ἀνεβόησα	cry out, I	
διότι	wherefore, for what reason, because	
ἐπιστρέφω, ἐπιστρέψω, ἐπέστρεψα	turn around	
εὐχή ἢ	prayer	
εὐχομαι, εὐξομαι, ἠῤῥξαμην	pray, I	
Θαρσις	Tharsis	A town, it is not known where this was. In the LXX this name is not declined.
θύω	sacrifice, I	
Ἰωνᾶς, ὁ	Jonah	
Ἰωππη ἢ	Joppa	
καταγίνωσκω	condemn	
κλύδων, κλύδωνος ὁ	wave	
κοπάζω, κοπάσω, ἐκόπασα	grow weary, I; of a wind (or a sea) abate	
λιμὴν, λιμένος ὁ	harbour	
ναύκληρος ὁ	ship owner, ship master	
Νινευη	Ninevah	
ξηρά ἢ	dry land	
ὀπόθεν	whence	Introduces an <i>indirect</i> question. <i>πόθεν</i> introduces a <i>direct</i> question
παραβιάζομαι	compel, I; constrain I	
συντρίβω	wear away, I	
χειμῶν χειμῶνος ὁ	storm, also winter	



## Lesson 37 – Formation and Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

### 37.1 Lesson 37 Outline

- 37.2 Vocabulary 37
- 37.3 English Grammar
- 37.4 Accidence of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives
- 37.5 Adverbs
- 37.6 Use of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives
- 37.7 Opening Prayer
- 37.8 Exercises A
  - 37.8.1 Translate into English
  - 37.8.2 Translate into Greek
- 37.9 Exercises B
  - 37.9.1 Translate into English
  - 37.9.2 Translate into Greek
- 37.10 Exercises C

#### Προσευχή τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, μεμαθήκαμεν μὲν τὰς κλισεῖς τῶν ἐπιθετέων σήμερον δε μαθήσομεθα τὰς κλισεῖς τῶν ἐπιρρημάτων. καὶ δὴ καὶ μαθησόμεθα ὅπως παρεικάσαμεν τὰ ἐπιθετέα καὶ τὰ ἐπιρρήματα ἐν τῇ Ἑλληνικῇ γλώσσᾳ. γινώσκομεν τοῦτο γράψαι ἐν τῇ γλώσσῃ ἡμῶν, ἄλλα διάφορόν ἐστιν ἐν Ἑλληνικῇ. βοηθεῖ οὖν ὃ κύριε μαθοῦσι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα.

Ἀμήν.

‘Curiouser and curiouser’ cried Alice

Alice’s adventures in Wonderland  
Lewis Carroll

## 37.2 Vocabulary Lesson 37

Comparative Adjectives		
ἀμείνων, -ον	better	
βελτίων, -ον	better	
ἐλάσσων, -ον	fewer (4)	
ἥσσω, -ον	fewer	
κακίων, -ον	worse	
καλλίων, -ον	more beautiful	
κρείσσων, -ον	better (18)	also spelt as κρείττων
μείζων, -ον	greater (47)	
μείων, -ον	smaller	Not in the LXX, NT, or early Literature, but μειόω, I lessen, is, laso meiosis
πλείων, -ον	more (51)	
πλέων, -ον	more (3)	
χείρων, -ον	worse (11)	
Superlative Adjectives		
ἄριστος, η, -ον	best	aristocracy
βέλτιστος, η, -ον	best	
ἐλάχιστος, η, -ον	fewest (13)	
κάκιστος, η, -ον	worst	
κάλλιστος, η, -ον	most beautiful	
μέγιστος, η, -ον	greatest (1)	
πιότατος, η, -ον	fattest	Does not occur in LXX, NT or early literature but πιότης, fatness, does.
πλεῖστος, η, -ον	most (4)	
ῥᾶστος, η, -ον	easiest	Does not occur in LXX, NT or early literature but ῥᾶδίως, easily, does.
χείριστος, η, -ον	worst	
Adverbs		
εὐμενῶς	in a kindly manner	
σωφρόνως	soberly (1)	
ταχέως	quickly (10)	
φίλως	friendly	
Verbs		
προσβάλλω, προσβαλῶ, προσέβαλον	attack, I	takes a dative
ὀργίζομαι, -, ὀργίσθην	rage, I (9)	
Nouns		

αἰγιαλός, ὁ	shore, beach (6)	
βάρβαρος, ὁ	barbarian (5)	
μέλι, μέλιτος, τό	honey (4)	
στρατός, ὁ	army	
χίον, χίονος, ἡ	snow (2)	
<b>Adjectives</b>		
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον	last (49)	eschatology
φρόνιμος, -ον	thoughtful, prudent, wise (14)	
<b>Proper Name</b>		
Εγλωμ	Eglon	No accent or breathing
<b>Place Names</b>		
Δαμασκός, ὁ	Damascus (17)	
Ἰορδάνης, ὁ	Jordan (15)	

## 37.3 English Grammar

### 37.3.1 Comparative and Superlative adjectives

The usual method of forming comparative and superlative adjectives in English is as follows:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
high	higher	highest
low	lower	lowest
long	longer	longest
lazy	lazier	laziest

In other words, to form the comparative we append –er to the adjective and to form the superlative we append –est to the adjective. In the last example, the final ‘y’ is changed to an ‘i’ in the comparative and superlative.

Naturally, there are some exceptions, some adjectives like ‘curious’ do not have a comparative, unless one is Lewis Carroll.

Some comparatives and superlatives are irregular:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
curious	more curious	most curious

When forming the comparative and superlative of adjectives that are not formed in the usual way we use the words ‘more’ and ‘most’

In terms of syntax, when one is comparing one thing or person with another we use ‘than’.

This mountain is higher than that (mountain).

Sometimes the thing or person with which something is compared is omitted:

He is a better man.

Usually, this is preceded by some discussion of the person or thing being compared.

Furthermore, in English we make the following distinctions:

This mountain is high.

This mountain is very high.

This mountain is extremely high.

None of these sentences has the same meaning as ‘This mountain is highest’. In Greek (Latin is similar) the superlative is often used in the same way as the last two examples. Thus English makes a clear distinction whereas Greek (and Latin) do not.

It can also happen that the *comparative* is used as the *superlative*. An example can be seen in Πρὸς Κορινθίους Α 13:13; see §37.6.2.

### 37.3.2 Adverbs

In English adverbs are usually formed by appending –ly to the adjective:

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
quick	quickly	more quickly	most quickly
curious	curiously	more curiously	most curiously
good	well	better	best
bad	badly	worse	worst

As can be seen in the above table, there are some adverbs that are formed irregularly.

## 37.4 Accidence of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

### 37.4.1 First formation

The main rule is that –τερος is added for the comparative and –τατος is added for the superlative. The adjective thus formed is declined with three terminations –τερος, –τερα, τερον and –τατος, –τατη, –τατον. For the full declension please refer to Koine Greek Accidence and Syntax §3.1.1.

Here are some examples:

Adjective	English	Stem	Comparative	Superlative
δεινός	strange	δεινο	δεινό-τερος	δεινό-τατος
μέλας	black	μελαν	μέλαν-τερος	μέλαν-τατος
λεπτός	thin	λεπτο	λεπτό-τερος	λεπτό-τατος
ἀληθής	true	ἀληθες	ἀληθέσ-τερος	ἀληθέσ-τατος
σοφός	wise	σοφο	σοφώ-τερος	σοφώ-τατος
φρόνιμος	prudent	φρονιμο	φρονιμώ-τερος	φρονιμώ-τατος
γλυκύς	sweet	γλυκυ	γλυκύ-τερος	γλυκύ-τατος

Notes:

1. In **o** stems the character **o** is lengthened to **ω** if the preceding syllable is short.
2. Some stems in –αιο drop the **o** as:

ἡσυχᾶος	quiet	ἡσυχαιο	ἡσυχάιτερος	ἡσυχάιτατος
---------	-------	---------	-------------	-------------

But these follow the main rule:

ἀρχαῖος	ancient	ἀρχαῖος	ἀρχαῖο-τερος	ἀρχαῖο-τατος
ἀναγκαῖος	necessary	ἀναγκαῖος	ἀναγκαῖο-τερος	ἀναγκαῖο-τατος
βέβαιος	firm	βέβαιος	βεβαῖο-τερος	βεβαῖο-τατος
δίκαιος	just	δικαῖος	δικαῖο-τερος	δικαῖο-τατος
σπουδαῖος	earnest	σπουδαῖος	σπουδαῖο-τερος	σπουδαῖο-τατος

3. Some stems change o into αι:

μέσος	middle	μεσο	μεσαῖ-τερος	μεσαῖ-τατος
ἴσος	equal	ἴσο	ἰσαῖ-τερος	ἰσαῖ-τατος
εὐδῖος	calm	εὐδῖο	εὐδιαῖ-τερος	εὐδιαῖ-τατος
φίλος	friendly	φιλο	φιλαῖ-τερος	φιλαῖ-τατος
		φίλο	φίλ-τερος	φίλτατος

As can be seen, φίλος has *two* forms

4. Stems in –ον and some others strengthen –τερος, –τατος into –εστερος and –εστατος and a final o is dropped:

εὐδαίμων	fortunate	εὐδαιμον	εὐδαίμον-εστερος	εὐδαίμον-εστατος
εὐνους	kindly	εὐνοο	εὐνούστερος	εὐνούστατος
ἀφῆλιξ	aged	ἀφηλικ	ἀφήλικ-εστερος	ἀφηλικ-έστατος
αἰδοῖος	revered	αἰδοιο	αἰδοι-εστερος	αἰδοι-έστατος
ἄκρατος	unmixed	ἄκρατο	ἄκρατ-εστερος	ἄκρατ-έστατος

5. A few add –ιστερος and –ιστατος, dropping the vowel:

λάλος	talkative	λαλο	λάλ-ιστερος	λάλ-ιστατος
κλέπτης	thievish	κλεπτα	κλέπτ-ιστερος	κλέπτ-ιστατος

### 37.4.2 Second formation

The final vowel of the stem is dropped and –ίων is added for the comparative and –ιστος for the superlative. The comparatives are declined as πλείων (Koine Greek Accidence §3.2) and the superlatives as ἀγαθός (Koine Greek Accidence §3.1)

ἡδύς	sweet	ἡδυ	ἡδυ-ίων	ἡδ-ιστος
μέγας	great	μεγα	μείζων (for μεγ-ίων)	μέγ-ιστος
ταχύς	swift	ταχυ	θάσσων (for ταχ-ίων)	τάχ-ιστος
αἰσχρός	shameful	αἰσχρο	αἰσχ-ίων	αἰσχ-ιστος
ἐχθρός	hostile	ἐχθρο	ἐχθ-ίων	ἐχθ-ιστος

Note

1. Stems in –ρο lose –ρο.

### 37.4.3 Irregular comparison

Adjective	English	Comparative	Superlative
ἀγαθός	good	βελτίων ἀμείνων κρείσσων (κρείττων)	βέλτιος ἄριστος
κακός	bad	κακίων χείρων	κάκιστος χείριστος
καλός	beautiful	καλλίων	κάλλιστος
μικρός	small	μικρότερος μείων	μικρότατος
ὀλίγος	few	ἥσων ἐλάσσων	ὀλίγιστος ἐλάχιστος
πολύς	much	πλείων πλέων	πλεῖστος
πίων	fat	πιότερος	πιότατος
ῥάδιος	easy	ῥάων	ῥᾶστος

## 37.5 Adverbs

### 37.5.1 Accidence

Adverbs may be formed from adjectives by changing the last syllable of the genitive case singular into -ως:

Adjective	English	Genitive	Adverb
φίλος	friendly	φίλου	φίλως
σώφρων	sober	σώφρονος	σωφρόνως
εὐμενής	kindly	εὐμενοῦς	εὐμενῶς
ταχύς	swift	ταχέος	ταχέως

### 37.5.2 Comparison of Adverbs

For the comparative degree the neuter *singular* of the comparative adjective is used and for the superlative degree the neuter *plural* of the superlative adjective is used:

Adverb		Comparative		Superlative	
σοφῶς	wisely	σοφώτερον	more wisely	σοφώτατα	most wisely
ταχέως	swiftly	θᾶσσον	more swiftly	τάχιστα	most swiftly
ἄγχι	near	ἄσσον	nearer	ἄγγιστα	most near
μάλα	much	μᾶλλον	more	μάλιστα	most
εὖ	well	ἄμεινον	more well	ἄριστα	most well

#### Notes

1. Sometimes the comparative and superlative have the termination -ως.

2. Adverbs ending in –ω preserve ω in both the comparative and superlative:, for example, ἄνω, up, ἀνώτερον, ἀνωτάτω.

## 37.6 Use of Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

### 37.6.1 Comparison

Comparative adjectives can be used in two ways in Greek (like Latin):

- Genitive of comparison
- Use of ἢ, than

#### 37.6.1.1 Genitive of comparison

The genitive of comparison may be used where two person or things are directly compared with each other:

οὗτοι ἦσαν **εὐγενέστεροι** τῶν ἐν Θεσσαλονίκη

Πράξεις Ἀποστόλων 17:11

They were more noble than those in Thessalonica.

#### 37.6.1.2 Use of ἢ, than

It is also possible to compare two persons or things using ἢ, than:

ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν, **ἀνεκτότερον** ἔσται **γῆ** Σοδόμων καὶ Γομόρρων ἐν ἡμέρᾳ κρίσεως ἢ **τῇ πόλει** ἐκείνῃ.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 1:15

Truly, I tell you, it will be more bearable on the day of judgment for Sodom and Gomorrah than for that city.

Notice that:

The case of the two things compared (γῆ and τῇ πόλει) is the same

### 37.6.2 Elative use

As was noted in §37.3.1, the superlative often has in Greek an *elative* meaning; that is, it is equivalent to the use of ‘very’ or ‘extremely’ in English. Here is an example from the New Testament:

νυνὶ δὲ μένει πίστις, ἐλπίς, ἀγάπη, τὰ τρία ταῦτα· **μείζων** δὲ τούτων ἡ ἀγάπη.

Πρὸς Κορινθίους Α 13:13

Now there remain faith, hope and love, these three; but the greatest of these is love.

‘μείζων’, the comparative, is here used to mean ‘greatest’.

### 37.6.3 Adverbs

Adverbs are used in the usual way to *modify* verbs. Here is an example:

ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· ἑκατὸν βάτους ἐλαίου. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν αὐτῷ· δέξαι σου τὰ γράμματα καὶ καθίσας **ταχέως** γράψον πεντήκοντα.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 16:6

And he said ‘eight hundred gallons of olive oil’. So he said to him, take your receipt and sit down and write quickly four hundred gallons’.

βάτος – a liquid measure, used among the Jews containing 72 sextarii, that is, between eight and nine gallons.

## 37.7 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, μεμαθήκαμεν μὲν τὰς κλισεῖς τῶν ἐπιθετέων σήμερον δε μαθήσομεθα τὰς κλισεῖς τῶν ἐπιρρημάτων. καὶ δὴ καὶ μαθησόμεθα ὅπως παρεικάσαμεν τὰ ἐπιθετέα καὶ τὰ ἐπιρρήματα ἐν τῇ Ἑλληνικῇ γλώσσῃ. γινώσκομεν τοῦτο γράψαι ἐν τῇ γλώσσῃ ἡμῶν, ἄλλα διάφορόν ἐστιν ἐν Ἑλληνικῇ. βοηθεῖ οὖν ὃ κύριε μαθοῦσι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα.

Ἄμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord, we have learned the declension of adjectives but today we shall learn the declension of adverbs. What is more we shall learn how we compare adjectives and adverbs in Greek. Help us Lord as we learn these concepts.

Amen



## 37.8 Exercises – A

### 37.8.1 Translate into English

1. ταῦτα ἐλογισάμεθα σωφρόνως καὶ ἀπεκρίθημεν εὐμενῶς.
2. ὑψηλότερα ταῦτα τὰ ὄρη τῶν ἐκείνων.
3. τὰ σπέρματά σου πλείονα τῆς ἄμμου τῆς αἰγιαλοῦ ἔσται.
4. οὗτος ὁ οἶνος κρείσσων τοῦ ἑτέρου.
5. οὕτως ταχέως ἔδραμε ὥστε οὐδεὶς ἐδυνήσατο αὐτῷ ἀκολουθῆσαι.
6. τὸ μικρότατον τῶν σπερμάτων γίνεται τὸ μέγιστον τῶν δένδρων.
7. εὐμενῶς ἠσπασάμεθα τοὺς φιλοὺς ἡμῶν.
8. ἦν δὲ γνώμη τοῦ βασιλέως ὅτι σοφώτερον προσβαλεῖν μετὰ τὸ ἐλθεῖν στρατιώτας πλείονας.
9. τὰ ὑδάτα τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ καθαρότερα τῶν τοῦ Συρίας.
10. γλυκύτατος οὗτος ὁ οἶνος.
11. εἰς τὸ μὴ ταράξει τοὺς γειτόνας περιεπατοῦμεν ἠσυχαίως .
12. οὕτως βαθὺς ὁ ποταμὸς ὥστε οὐ δυνησάμεθα διαπερῆσαι.

### 37.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. The ruler ruled so wisely that he was respected by all.
2. Honey is sweeter than wine.
3. The barbarians broke many very beautiful images in the temples.
4. Why do the nations so furiously rage?
5. Are not the rivers of Damascus better than the river Jordan?
6. They lamented the death of their father and put on black clothes.
7. Jesus came through the gateway of Jerusalem and the crowds greeted him with joy.
8. To save the citizens in the island the fastest ship was sent.
9. We remember the last meal that Jesus ate with his disciples.
10. In the last days says the Lord, I will pour out my spirit and your young men will prophesy.
11. The enemy have fewer soldiers than us.
12. Prepare to see the worst (things) but hope for the best (things).

## 37.9 Exercises – B

### 37.9.1 Translate into English

1. οἱ μέγιστοι ἔσονται οἱ μικρότατοι.
2. ἐξουσιαν ἔχει ὁ κύριος σῶσαι τοὺς κακίστους τῶν ἀνδρῶν.
3. οἱ πρεσβύτεροι, οἱ προσκυνοῦσι τῷ θεῷ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ καθ' ἡμέραν, εὐσεβέστατοι εἰσίν.
4. φρονιμώτατον ἐτοιμᾶσαι τοὺς στρατιώτας τῆ μαχῆς.
5. τὸ ξίφος μου ὀξύτερον τοῦ ξιφείως σου.
6. ἐν μὲν εἰρήνῃ λαλεῖ ὁ θεὸς ἠσυχῶς, ἐν δὲ θλίψει, ἀναβοᾷ.
7. ὁ στρατός σου ἔχει ἐξ χιλίους ἀνδρες· ὁ ἐχθρός σου ἔχει πλείονας.
8. μεγάλη ἡ πόλις ἀλλὰ μείζων ὁ στρατός.
9. ποιεῖ τὰ κενὰ σκευὴ φθογγὸν μέγαν.
10. οὗτος ὁ οἶνος ἄριστος ἐστίν.
11. ὁ δὲ Σολομών σοφότατος τῶν πάντων ἀνθρώπων ἐστίν.

12. ταχέως ἤυρομεν τοὺς φίλους ἡμῶν ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ.

### 37.9.2 Translate into Greek

1. Greater things than these you will see.
2. Behold, your sins will be whiter than snow.
3. It is more difficult to teach a fool than to teach a wise man.
4. We travelled through many dangers but we came to the city safely.
5. We shall help our friends quickly, shan't we?
6. It will be easier to climb a mountain than to help this man.
7. The easiest way is not often the shortest.
8. The most beautiful woman is not always the best.
9. Eglon was a very fat man.
10. The enemy was more hostile than we thought.
11. In the driest summer the trees are not able to bear fruit.
12. Finally, we came to a very deep river which we were not able to cross.

### 37.10 Exercise – C

#### 37.10.1 Translate into English

Ναιμαν δὲ, ἄρχων τῆς στρατίας Συρίας, ἀνὴρ μέγας ἦν καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐτιμήσεται, ἀλλὰ  
λεπρὸς ἦν. οἱ δὲ Σύριοι μονόζωνοι ἐξηλθον καὶ ἠχμαλώτευσαν νεάνιδα μικράν, ἣ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τῆς  
γυναῖκος τοῦ Ναιμαν. ἣ δὲ εἶπε τῇ κυρία αὐτῆς· χρὴ τὸν κύριόν μου ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τὸν τοῦ θεοῦ  
προφήτην ἐν Σαμαρείᾳ· τότε δὲ ἀποσυνάξει ἀπὸ τῆς λέπρας αὐτοῦ. ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶπε τῷ Ναιμαν·  
Δεῦρο εἴσελθε καὶ ἐξαποστελῶ ἐπιστολὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ. καὶ Ναιμαν ἔλαβε ἀπὸ τοῦ 5  
βασιλέως δέκα τάλαντα ἀργυρίου, καὶ ἑξακισχίλιους χρυσούς. ἦλθε δὲ ὁ Ναιμαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα  
τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ καὶ αὐτῷ ἔδωκε τὴν ἐπιστολὴν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ ἀνέγνω τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἐν ἣ  
γέγραπται· ἰδοὺ, ἀποστέλλω Ναιμαν, τὸν δοῦλόν μου, καὶ ἀποσυνάξεις αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς λέπρας αὐτοῦ.  
ὡς ἀνέγνω τοῦτο ὁ βασιλεὺς τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ διέρρηξε τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ εἶπε· Μὴ θεὸς ἐγώ, τοῦ  
θανατῶσαι καὶ ζωοποιῆσαι; καὶ οὗτος ἀποστέλλει πρὸς με ἄνδρα εἰς τὸ ἀποσυνάξαι αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς 10  
λέπρας αὐτοῦ.

Ὅτε ἤκουσε ὁ Ελισαῖε ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς διέρρηξε τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτοῦ, ἄγγελμα ἐπέστειλε αὐτῷ· Ἐλθέτω  
πρὸς με Ναιμαν καὶ γνώτω ὅτι προφήτης ἐστὶν ἐν Ἰσραὴλ. ἦλθεν οὖν Ναιμαν ἐν ἵπῳ καὶ ἐν ἄρματι  
ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας τῆς οἰκίας τοῦ Ελισαῖε. Ελισαῖε δὲ ἐπέστειλε δοῦλον αὐτοῦ πρὸς Ναιμαν ὃς εἶπε·  
Πορεύθητι καὶ λούσαι ἐπτάκις ἐν ποτάμῳ Ἰορδάνῃ καὶ ἐπιστρέψει ἡ σὰρξ σου σοι, καὶ καθαρισθήσῃ. 15  
ἐθυμώθη δὲ ὁ Ναιμαν καὶ ἀπῆλθεν καὶ εἶπε· Οὐχὶ οἱ ποταμοὶ Ἀβανα καὶ Φαρφαρ ἀμείνονες εἰσὶν ἢ  
Ἰορδάνῃ; οὐ λούσομαι ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ καθαρίσομαι; ἀλλ' οἱ δούλοι αὐτοῦ ἠγγισαν αὐτῷ καὶ εἶπον·  
Μικρὸν ῥῆμα πρὸς σε εἶπε ὁ προφήτης· χρὴ δέ σε τοῦτο ποιῆσαι. Ναιμαν οὖν αὐτῶν ἤκουσεν, καὶ  
κατέβη πρὸς τὴν Ἰορδάνην καὶ ἐβαπτίσατο ἐπτάκις ἐν τῷ Ἰοραδάνῃ· τότε δὲ ἡ σὰρξ αὐτοῦ  
ἐπέστρεψεν ὡς παῖδος μικροῦ, καὶ ἐκαθαρίσθη.

LXX Βασιλείων Δ 5 1 – 15 (adapted)

#### 37.10.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Ναιμαν	Naaman	
Σύριος, -α, -ον	Syrian (adjective)	

μονόζωνος	a kind of light-armed soldier	
αίχμαλωτεύω, αίχμαλωτεύσω ήχμαλώτευσα	take prisoner, I	
νεάνις, νεάνιδος ή	young girl	
κυρία, ή	mistress	in the good sense
χρή	ought	Takes an accusative and infinitive construction like δεῖ.
Σαμαρεία	Samaria	Unusually for the LXX this name declines
ἀποσυνάγω, ἀποσυνάξω, ἀποσυνήγαγον	recover, I (from an illness)	In the LXX this verb is used both transitively and intransitively.
λέπρα ή	leprosy	
Δεῦρο	hither	
ἐξαποστέλλω, ἐξαποστελῶ	send away, I; despatch, I	
διαρήγνυμι, διαρήξω, διέρρηξα	tear apart, I	Verbs in –μι will be discussed in more detail in Lesson 47.
θανατόω, θανατώσω, ἐθανάτωσα	put to death, I	
ζωοποιῆσαι	to make alive	from ζωή and ποιέω, I make alive
Ελισαιε ό	Elisha	
ἄρμα τό, ἄρματος	chariot	
λούω	wash, I	Note the use of the Aorist Middle Imperative here.
Ιορδάνη	Jordan	The LXX is very idiosyncratic in its use, or lack of, breathings and accents.
Αβανα	Abana	A river near Damascus
Φαρφαρ	Pharpar	Another river near Damascus
θυμόω, θυμώσω, ἐθύμωσα	anger, I make angry; Passive: I am angry	



## Lesson 38 – Revision VII

### 38.1 Lesson 38 Outline

- 38.2 Vocabulary 38
- 38.3 Opening Prayer
- 38.4 Parsing
- 38.5 Exercises A
  - 38.5.1 Translate into English
  - 38.5.2 Translate into Greek
- 38.6 Exercises B
  - 38.6.1 Translate into English
  - 38.6.2 Translate into Greek
- 38.7 Exercises C

#### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον, κύριε, ἀνορθωσομεν πάντα ἃ μεμαθήκαμεν· τὰ ῥήματα, τὰ ὀνόματα, τα ἐπιθετέα. δεῖ ἡμᾶς μνημονεῦσαι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα ἵνα ἀναγνῶμεν τὴν Καίνην Διαθήκην καὶ τὴν Παλαιάν Διαθήκην ἐν τῷ Ἑβδομήκοντα. θέλομεν δὴ ἐπιτηδεῦσαι τούτους τοὺς βίβλους ἐν τῇ Ἑλληνικῇ γλώσσῃ ἵνα σέ τε καὶ τοὺς λόγους σοῦ εὖ γνῶμεν. σε αἰτοῦμεν, κύριε, βοήθησαι ἡμῖν.

Ἀμήν.

εἶπεν αὐτοῖς Ἰησοῦς· ἀμήν, ἀμήν λέγω ὑμῖν, πρὶν Ἀβρααμ γενέσθαι ἐγὼ εἰμί

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 8:5

## 38.2 Vocabulary Lesson 38

Verbs		
σφραγίζω, σφραγίσω, ἐσφράγισα	I mark, usually with a seal (13)	
Adjectives		
βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ	slow (2)	
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν	cold (3)	
Adverbs		
ἐκτενῶς	earnestly (3)	
πάλιν	again (141)	
Nouns		
ἀήρ, ὁ, ἀέρος	air (7)	
ἄπιον, τό	pear	
γείτων, γείτονος, ο	neighbour (4)	
ἐλέφας, ἐλέφαντος, ὁ	elephant	
κώνωψ, κώνωπος, ὁ	gnat (1)	
μέτωπον τό	forehead (8)	
οἶνος κριθέων πεποιημένος	beer	literally, wine made from corn
πολίτης, ὁ	citizen (4)	
χιλιάρχος, ὁ	chiliarch (22)	a leader of 1000 soldiers

## 38.3 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον, κύριε, ἀνορθωσομεν πάντα ἃ μεμαθήκαμεν· τὰ ῥήματα, τὰ ὀνόματα, τα ἐπιθετέα. δεῖ ἡμᾶς μνημονεῦσαι ταῦτα τὰ νοήματα ἵνα ἀναγνῶμεν τὴν Καίνην Διαθήκην καὶ τὴν Παλαιάν Διαθήκην ἐν τῷ Ἑβδομήκοντα. θέλομεν δὲ ἐπιτηδεῦσαι τούτους τοὺς βιβλους ἐν τῇ Ἑλληνικῇ γλώσσῃ ἵνα σέ τε καὶ τοὺς λόγους σοῦ εὖ γνῶμεν. σε αἰτοῦμεν, κύριε, βοήθησαι ἡμῖν.

Ἄμήν.

Let us pray.

Today, Lord we shall revise everything which we have learned; verbs, nouns and adjectives. We need to remember these ideas in order to read the New Testament and the Old Testament in the Septuagint. We really desire to study these books in the Greek language in order that we may know you and your words well. We ask you Lord to help us.

Amen

## 38.4 Parsing

This section is laid out in the same way as the Parsing sections in Lesson 22.

### 38.4.1 Verbs

	Verb	Greek 1st pers. sg.	English from 1st p.	Number and person	Tense	Voice	Mood
1	ἐλύθημεν						
2	ἐτιμῶμεν						
3	ἐδεξάμεθα						
4	ἔστω						
5	γνώθι						
6	ἐπάταξάμεν						
7	ὄψη						
8	ἐγράφη						
9	ἴσῃς						
10	ἀγγελεῖτε						
11	ἀκουσόμεθα						
12	ἐδιώξαμεν						

13	δηλοῖ						
14	φίλει						
15	δηλωθῆναι						

### 38.4.2 Nouns

	Noun	Greek Nominative	Eng. from Nominative	Gender	Case	Number
1	δοῦλε					
2	ἰχθύος					
3	γένη					
4	γυναί					
5	τειχέσι					
6	ὠτός					
7	ἐλπίδες					
8	ἄνερ					
9	σαλπίγγας					



10	θυγατρός					
11	ἀναστάσεως					
12	λέουσι					
13	ὄρνιθι					
14	φλεβῶν					
15	ἀλιεύς					

### 38.4.3 Adjectives

	Adjective	Masc. Sing. Nominative	English from Masc Sg Nom	Gender	Case	Number
1	ἀγαθοῖς					
2	βαθεῖαι					
3	ἀσθενῆ					
4	μέλανα					
5	δίκαιοι					
6	πολλούς					

7	βραχεῖς					
8	μεγάλοι					
9	μείζονα					
10	ἀγία					
11	γλυκεῖ					
12	μακαρίαις					
13	ἥμισυν					
14	πάσαις					
15	ξηράν					

## 38.5 Exercises – A

### 38.5.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐμαρτύρησε ὅτι εἶδε τὸν κλεπτὴν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ.
2. ὁ προδοτὴς, ὃς προέδωκε τὴν πόλιν τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἐλήφθη ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν.
3. ἐγένετο ἄνθρωπος, ὀνόματι Ἰωάννης.
4. πρὸ τοῦ οἰκοδομησάσαι τὸν πύργον τοῦ Βαβυλῶνιαις μία γλῶσσα ἐλέγετο ὑπὸ ὅλου τοῦ κόσμου.
5. ἐν ἐκείνῳ ἔτει σκότος ἐν μίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο.
6. οἱ ἀγαθοὶ πρεσβύτεροι ἔλυσαν τοὺς δούλους ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς.
7. τέλος δὲ, κρινεῖ ὁ θεὸς πάντα τὰ ἔθνη ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ.
8. ὁ ποῦς μέλος τοῦ σώματος ἐστίν.
9. τῇ χειρὶ μου ἤνοιξα τὴν θύραν καὶ εἴσηλθον εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν.
10. ὁ μὲν ἐλήφθη, ὁ δὲ ἐλείφθη.
11. σπείρε τὰ σπέρματα ἐν τῷ ἄγρῳ.
12. ἐκ τῶν στόματων τῶν παιδῶν σοφία ἐκπορεύεται.

### 38.5.2 Translate into Greek

1. The spirit of God moves over the face of the waters.
2. There shall be many wonders on the earth and in the heavens.
3. I came to throw fire against the earth.
4. In the darkness evil is able to abound.
5. While Paul was staying at Rome, he wrote a letter to the Ephesians.
6. For the mouth of the Lord said this.
7. Are you so slow that you do not know these things?
8. Before we go up to the temple we must wash ourselves.
9. We shall preach the gospel to the whole world and no one will hinder us.
10. The earthquake was so great that the tower and the walls of the city fell down.
11. I cannot deny that I wish to be honoured.
12. The crowd stoned Stephen and Paul was watching.

## 38.6 Exercises – B

### 38.6.1 Translate into English

1. οἱ στρατιῶται, οὓς ἔπεμψε ὁ χιλιάρχος πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, διήρχοντο διὰ τῶν πυλωνῶν τῆς πόλεως.
2. καὶ πεσοῦνται οἱ ἀστέρες ἀπὸ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ.
3. ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ ἔφαγε τὸν καρπὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὃ ἐν μέσῳ κήπῳ ἦν.
4. τὰ ἀγγέλματα, ἃ ἔπεμψε ὁ βασιλεὺς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, οὐκ ἤγγειλε ὅτι εἰρήνη ἐστίν.
5. οὕτως εὖ εἶπε ὥστε πάντας αὐτῷ πιστεύσαι.
6. τὸν μὲν ἀμαρτωλὸν φίλει, τὴν δὲ ἀμαρτίαν μίσει.
7. ζητεῖτε ἐκτενῶς τὰ τοῦ θεοῦ.
8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀναβῆναι πρὸς τὸν νόον εἰς τὸ προσεύχεσθαι τῷ θεῷ.
9. δεῖ με μάθειν τὴν γλῶσσαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὅτι θέλω ἀναγνῶναι τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην.
10. τὰ παιδία ἔβαλε λίθους εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ.
11. ἐδράμομεν ταχέως πρὸς τὴν πόλιν εἰς τὸ φυγεῖν τοὺς ἐχθρούς.

12. μετὰ τὸν σεισμὸν, οἱ γείτονες ἡμῶν ἐβοήθησαν ἡμῖν.

### 38.6.2 Translate into Greek

1. The four young men carried the paralysed man to the feet of Jesus.
2. With our eyes we saw Jesus and with our ears we heard his words.
3. The snow was thick on the ground and the air was cold.
4. We suffered many tribulations but the Lord saved us.
5. The elephant is a great animal and the gnat is very small.
6. The general ordered that the spies should be put to death.
7. We ate a rich dinner of pears, apples, wine and beer.
8. The tower was so high that we were not able to conquer it.
9. The steersman steered the ship away from the rocks, so that the ship was saved.
10. The servants, who had come from another city, helped us to proclaim the gospel.
11. In the last days everyone will be marked on the forehead or the hand.
12. The meek will inherit the earth.

## 38.7 Exercises – C

### 38.7.1 Translate into English

Ἐπείρασε δὲ ὁ θεὸς τὸν Ἀβραὰμ καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ· ‘λαβὲ τὸν υἱόν σου, Ἰσαὰκ, καὶ πορεύθητι εἰς τὴν γῆν ὑψηλὴν καὶ ἀνένεγκον αὐτὸν ἐκεῖ εἰς ὀλοκάρπωσιν’. Ἀβραὰμ οὖν τὸ πρῶτον, ἐπέσαξε τὴν ὄνον αὐτοῦ καὶ παρέλαβε δύο παῖδας καὶ τὸν Ἰσαὰκ καὶ τῷ ὀλοκαρπώσει ἔσχισε ξύλα. τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ τρίτῃ ἔβλεψε Ἀβραὰμ τὸν τόπον μακρόθεν περὶ οὗ εἶπε ὁ θεός, εἶπεν δὲ Ἀβραὰμ τοῖς παισὶν αὐτοῦ· ‘μένετε αὐτοῦ μετὰ τῆς ὄνου· ἐγὼ καὶ Ἰσαὰκ βησόμεθα εἰς τὸ προσκυνεῖν· μετὰ τὸ προσκυνεῖν, ἀναστρέψομεν πρὸς ὑμᾶς’. Ἰσαὰκ δὲ ἤνεγκε τὰ ξύλα τῆς ὀλοκαρπώσεως καὶ Ἀβραὰμ ἔλαβε τὸ πῦρ ἐν χειρὶ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν μάχαιραν· τότε δὲ οἱ δύο ἐπορεύθησαν. ὁ δὲ Ἰσαὰκ· Ἴδοὺ τὰ ξύλα καὶ τὸ πῦρ, ἀλλὰ ποῦ ἐστὶ τὸν πρόβατον τῷ ὀλοκαρπώσει; ἀπεκρίθη ὁ Ἀβραὰμ· ὁ θεὸς παρέξει τῷ ὀλοκαρπώσει, τέκνον. καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὸν τόπον. 5

Ἀβραὰμ δὲ ἠκοδόμησε θυσιαστήριον καὶ ἐπέθηκεν τὰ ξύλα ἐπ’ αὐτό. τότε δὲ συνεπόδισε τὸν Ἰσαὰκ καὶ αὐτὸν ἐπέθηκεν ἐπὶ τὸ θυσιαστήριον. Ἀβραὰμ δὲ ἔλαβε τὴν μάχαιραν εἰς τὸ σφάζει τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ. 10

Ἀλλ’ ἀγγέλος κυρίου αὐτὸν ἐκάλεσεν ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ καὶ εἶπε· ‘Ἀβραὰμ! οὐ σφάζεις<sup>1</sup> τὸν υἱόν σου καὶ οὐκ ἀδικήσεις<sup>1</sup> αὐτόν. νῦν γὰρ γινώσκω ὅτι φόβη τὸν θεὸν καὶ οὐκ ἐφείσω τοῦ υἱοῦ σου, τοῦ ἀγαπητοῦ’. τότε δὲ Ἀβραὰμ εἶδε κρὶον κατεχόμενον<sup>2</sup> ἐν φύτῳ· λαμβάνει οὖν Ἀβραὰμ τὸν κρὶον καὶ φέρει αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν ὀλοκάρπωσιν ἀντὶ Ἰσαὰκ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ. καὶ ὠνόμασεν Ἀβραὰμ τὸν τόπον, Κύριος εἶδεν. καὶ πάλιν ἐκάλεσεν ὁ ἀγγέλος κυρίου Ἀβραὰμ· ‘ὅτι ἐποίησας τὸ ῥῆμα τοῦτο καὶ οὐκ ἐφείσω τοῦ υἱοῦ σου, κατ’ ἐμαυτοῦ ὄμνυμι τάδε· εὐλογήσω δὲ σε καὶ πληθυνῶ δὴ τὸ σπέρμα σου ὃ ἔσται ὡς τοὺς ἀστέρας τοῦ οὐρανοῦ καὶ ὡς τὴν ἄμμον τοῦ αἰγιάλου’. 15

τότε δὲ ἀνέστρεψαν Ἀβραὰμ καὶ Ἰσαὰκ πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας αὐτοῦ. 20

Γένεσις 22:1 - 22:19 (adapted)

<sup>1</sup> Prohibitions (Lesson 51) can also be expressed by the Future Indicative as here instead of the Aorist Subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> The passive participle is used adjectivally. Participles are explained more fully in Lessons 44 – 46.

### 38.7.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Αβρααμ	Abraham	Notice the lack of breathing and accent
Ισαακ	Isaac	
ὕψηλός, -η, -ον	high	
ἀναφέρω, ἀνοίσω, ἀνήνεγκον	carry up, I	
εἰς	for	in the sense of <i>purpose</i> . See Liddell and Scott page 231.
ὄλοκάρπωσις, ὄλοκαρπώσεως	a burnt offering	
πρωί	morning, early	
ἐπισάττω, ἐπισάζω, ἐπέσαξα	pile a load on, I	from ἐπί + σάττω
ὄνος, ὄ, ἡ	ass	
παραλαμβάνω, παραλήμψομαι, παρέλαβον	take to oneself, I; associate with, I	This is a <i>secondary</i> meaning to 'I receive'.
σχίζω, σχίσω, ἔσχισα	cut, I; cleave, I	
ξύλον τό	wood	
μακρόθεν	far off	
αὐτοῦ	here	This is another meaning of <b>αὐτοῦ</b>
ἀναστρέφω, ἀναστρέψω, ἀνέστρεψα	return, I; turn back, I	
μάχαιρα ἡ	knife	
ποῦ;	where?	This introduces a <i>direct</i> question; ὅποῦ introduces an <i>indirect</i> question
παρέχω, παρέξω, παρείχον	supply, I; provide, I	
θυσιαστήριον τό	altar	
συμποδίζω, συμποδίσω, συνεπόδισα	bind hand and foot, I	
σφάζω, σφάζω, ἔσφαξα	slaughter, I; kill, I	Instead of <b>σφάζω</b> in later Attic there is <b>σφάττω</b> .
φείδομαι, φείσομαι, ἐφεισάμην	spare, I; refrain, I	This takes a genitive of the thing spared. Notice also the Middle Voice here.
κρίος ὁ	ram	
κατέχω	keep, I; restrain, I	The passive participle is here used adjectivally to say 'restrained by a tree'.
φύτον τό	plant, tree	
ὀνομάζω, ὀνομάσω, ὀνόμασα	name, I	
ὄμνυμι, ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα	I swear, take an oath	In the NT the form ὀμνύω, a by-form from ὄμνυμι occurs 20 times

τάδε	these things	
δή	really, indeed, actually	This word emphasises the previous word; the various adverbs are suggested to bring out the force of this emphasis.
πληθύνω, πληθυνῶ	multiply, I	
ἄμμος ἡ	sand	

## Lesson 39 – Perfect and Pluperfect, οἶδα

### 39.1 Lesson 39 Outline

- 39.2 Vocabulary 39
- 39.3 English Grammar
- 39.4 Greek Perfect and Pluperfect
- 39.5 Reduplication
- 39.6 Reduplication for compound verbs
- 39.7 The meaning of the Perfect
- 39.8 τίθημι and δίδωμι
- 39.9 οἶδα
- 39.10 Opening Prayer
- 39.11 Exercises A
  - 39.11.1 Translate into English
  - 39.11.2 Translate into Greek
- 39.12 Exercises B
  - 39.12.1 Translate into English
  - 39.12.2 Translate into Greek
- 39.13 Exercises C

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον κύριε, μαθησόμεθα δύο χρονῶ τοῦ ρήματος· τὸ τελείω ὄνοματι. νῦν δὲ οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλος χρονὸς, ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν ἔτι πολλὰ. βοήθει ἡμῖν κύριε, ὥστε μανθάνομεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν εὐπρεπῶς. Ἀμήν.

ὅτε οὖν ἔλαβεν τὸ ὄξος ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν· τετέλεσται, καὶ κλίνας τὴν κεφαλὴν παρέδωκεν τὸ πνεῦμα

Ἡ Καινὴ Διαθήκη

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 19:30

## 39.2 Vocabulary Lesson 39

Verbs		
οἶδα	know, I (316)	The full conjugation is given below
δέομαι, -, ἐδεήθην	entreat, I (22)	
εὐαγγελίζομαι, εὐαγγελίσομαι εὐηγγελισάμην	preach, I (54)	
ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην	lead, I (26)	
ἰδοῦ	See!, Behold!	
κάθημαι, καθήσομαι	sit, I (91)	
κατακεῖμαι	lie at table, I (12)	
ἀνακεῖμαι	lie at table, I (14)	in the sense of propping oneself up at the table
μισθόω μισθόσω ἐμισθώκα	let, I (2)	in the sense of letting property
ρίπτω, ρίψω, ἐ(ρ)ριψα	throw, I (8)	
σπλαγχνίζομαι, -, ἐσπλαγχνισθην	I have mercy upon (12)	
συνανακεῖμαι	lie at table with, I (7)	
Nouns		
ἀντίχριστος, ὁ	Antichrist (4)	
εἶδωλον, τό	idol, false god (11)	
κλήσις, κλήσεως, ἡ,	calling, shouting, invitation (11)	
μισθωτής, ὁ	tenant	
ποίημα, ποιήματος, τό	something made, created, work	poem
φόνος, ὁ	murder, homicide, slaughter (10)	
Adjectives		
μάταιος, -αία, -αιον	vain (6)	
ὑπήκοος, -ον	subject (3)	As in subject of the king
ψευδής, ἔς	false (3)	
Adverbs		
ῥαδίως	easily	

## 39.3 English Grammar

In English we form the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses in the following way:

Perfect	Pluperfect
I have heard	I had heard
Thou hast heard	Thou hadst heard
He/she/it has heard	He/she/it had heard
We have heard	We had heard
You have heard	You had heard
They have heard	They had heard



In other words, we form the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses *periphrastically* by using the auxiliary verb ‘to have’.

It is worth remembering that in English the Perfect Tense is used somewhat loosely; sometimes we mean a simple past, sometimes we mean a present state resulting from a past action. Greek was much more disciplined than that as we shall see.

### 39.4 Greek Perfect and Pluperfect

The full conjugation is shown in Koine Greek Accidence sections 4.1. For ease of reference selected parts of that conjugation are shown in sections 39.4.1 and 39.4.2:

#### 39.4.1 Active Voice

English	Perfect	English	Pluperfect	Perfect Imperative
I have loosed	λέλυκα	I had loosed	ἐλελύκειν	
Thou hast loosed	λέλυκας	Thou hadst loosed	ἐλελύκεις	(λέλυκε)
He/she/it has loosed	λέλυκε(ν)	He/she/it had loosed	ἐλελύκει	(λελυκέτω)
We have loosed	λελύκαμεν	We had loosed	ἐλελύκειμεν	
You have loosed	λελύκατε	You had loosed	ἐλελύκειτε	(λελυκετε)
They have loosed	λελύκασι(ν)	They had loosed	ἐλελύκεισαν	(λελυκόντων)
To have loosed	Infinitive	λελύκηναι		

#### 39.4.2 Middle and Passive Voice

English	Perfect	English	Pluperfect	Perfect Imperative
I have been loosed	λέλυμαι	I had been loosed	ἐλελύμην	
Thou hast been loosed	λέλυσαι	Thou hadst been loosed	ἐλέλυσο	(λέλυσο)
He/she/it has been loosed	λέλυται	He/she/it been had loosed	ἐλέλυτο	(λελύσθω)
We have been loosed	λελύμεθα	We had been loosed	ἐλελύμεθα	
You have been loosed	λέλυσθε	You had been loosed	ἐλέλυσθε	(λέλυσθε)
They have been loosed	λέλυνται	They had been loosed	ἐλέλυντο	(λελύσθων)
To have been loosed	Infinitive	λελύσθαι		

The **-αω** and **-εω** verbs lengthen ε to η in the Perfect and **-οω** verbs lengthen ο to ω giving

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Perfect Passive
τιμάω	τιμήσω	ἐτίμησα	τετίμηκα	τετίμημαι

φιλέω	φιλήσω	ἐφίλησα	πεφίληκα	πεφίλημαι
δηλώω	δηλώσω	ἐδήλωσα	δεδήλωκα	δεδήλωμαι

### 39.4.3 General notes on the Perfect Active, Middle and Passive.

1. The conjugation of the Pluperfect in the singular is slightly different to the Attic conjugation.
2. For the sake of completeness, the Perfect Imperative has been included. The Perfect Active Imperative is described as ‘rare’ in Abbot and Mansfield, but the Perfect Passive Imperative is more frequent. The perfect active imperative does not occur in the New Testament but the perfect passive imperative does. There is an example at Πράξεις Αποστόλων 15:29.
3. The endings are the same as **δύναμαι** (Lesson 23).

### 39.4.4 Notes on the Perfect Active

The Perfect Active is made up of:

1. a reduplication: **λε**
2. the stem: **λυ**
3. **κ** which is the characteristic of the First Perfect Active. There are also Second or Strong Perfects as we shall see later in this lesson.
4. a personal ending. These endings are the same as those of the Weak Aorist, except for the third person plural, which is **-ασιν** not **-αν**.

### 39.4.5 Notes on the Pluperfect Active

1. The pluperfect has an augment in addition to the reduplication, hence:

ἐ-λε-λύ-κ-ειν

this is rather cumbersome, and in practice the augment is usually dropped. It is worth noting that the Pluperfect is not often used.

2. The personal endings **-ειν, -εις, -ει** are the same as the endings of **-εβην**, except that **ει** replaces **η**,

### 39.4.6 The Conjugation of the Perfect Passive

The addition of **-μαι, -σαι, -ται, -μεθα, -σθε** and **-νται** to certain consonant stems causes modifications to take place.

	Guttural Stem	Labial Stem	Dental Stem
	ἄγω perfect stem ἡγ-	γράφω perfect stem γεγραφ-	ἀγιάζω perfect stem ἡγιασ-
S. 1	ἤγμαι	γέγραμμαι	ἡγίασμαι
S. 2	ἤξαι	γέγραψαι	ἡγίασαι
S. 3	ἤκται	γέγραπται	ἡγίασται
P. 1	ἤγμεθα	γεγράμμεθα	ἡγιάσμεθα
P. 2	ἤχθε	γέγραχθε	ἡγίασθε
P.3	ἡγμένοι εἰσί(ν)	γεγραμμένοι εἰσί(ν)	ἡγιασμένοι εἰσί(ν)
Infinitive	ἤχθαι	Infinitive: γεγράφθαι	Infinitive: ἡγιάσθαι

Notice the formation of the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural; this arises from the difficulty, nay the impossibility, of attaching **-νται** to a consonant stem. The tense is actually formed *periphrastically* using the perfect passive participle (participles are discussed more fully in Lessons 44 – 46) and the 3<sup>rd</sup> person plural of εἰμί. For the *pluperfect* the imperfect of εἰμί is used.

## 39.5 Reduplication

Reduplication is a means of prolonging the sound of the stem to signify continuance of the action of the verb, and this is also a feature of nouns as well as verbs.

There are three types of reduplication:

- The verb begins with a single consonant
- The verb begins with two consonants, the double letters ζ, ξ, ψ or ρ
- The verb begins with a vowel

### 39.5.1 The verb begins with a single consonant

Present	Perfect
λύω	λέλυκα
δουλόω	δεδούλωκα
πιστεύω	πεπίστευκα

Verbs beginning with χ, φ, θ reduplicate with κεχ-, πεφ-, τεθ-:

Present	Perfect
χειμάζω	κεχειμάσμαι
φιλέω	πεφίληκα
θεραπεύω	τεθεράπευκα

### 39.5.2 The verb begins with two consonants, the double consonants ζ, ξ, ψ or ρ

There are two types here:

#### 39.5.3 Two consonants, ζ, ξ, ψ or ρ

In this case only ε is prefixed, but ρ is doubled.

Present	Perfect
ζητέω	έζητηκα
σπείρω	έσπαρκα
ρίπτω	έρριφα

#### 39.5.4 Two consonants the second being a liquid or a nasal

In this case the first consonant is usually repeated as follows:

Present	Perfect
γράφω	γέγραφα
κλέπτω	κέκλοφα
κράζω	κέκραγα

This is known as the ‘Strong’ Perfect; unlike the Strong Aorist the endings do not differ from the ordinary Perfect; however, the endings include φ or γ not κ.

### 39.5.5 The verb begins with a vowel

When the verb begins with a vowel, the vowel is lengthened like the formation of the Imperfect or the Aorist:

Present	Perfect
ἀγγέλλω	ἤγγελκα
ἀκολουθέω	ἠκολούθηκα
αἰτέω	ἤτηκα

### 39.6 Reduplication for compound verbs

When adding the augment to a compound verb, the augment is placed *between* the *last* preposition and the stem of the verb. Reduplication works in the same way; the reduplication is placed *between* the *last* preposition and the stem of the verb. Thus:

	I fold	I fold over	I dress, put on
Present	τυλίσσω	ἐντυλίσσω	ἐνδύω
Aorist	ἐτύλιξα	ἐνετύλιξα	ἐνέδυσσα
Perfect	τετύλιχα	ἐντετύλιχα	ἐνδέδυσκα
Perfect Passive	τετύλιγμαι	ἐντετύλιγμαι	ἐνδέδυμαι
Aorist Passive	ἐτυλίχθη	ἐνετυλίχθη	ἐνεδύθη

ἐνδύω behaves like a compound verb but δύω (actually δύνω) means ‘I sink’ or ‘I go down’.

This does occur in the New Testament; here is an example (albeit with a participle rather than a finite verb) from Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 20:7:

καὶ τὸ σουδάριον, ὃ ἦν ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς αὐτοῦ, οὐ μετὰ τῶν ὀθονίων κείμενον ἀλλὰ χωρὶς ἐντετυλιγμένον εἰς ἓνα τόπον.

And the face-cloth, which was around his head, was not lying with the linen cloth, but was folded up without them in another place.

### 39.7 The meaning of the Perfect

So far there have been three kinds of tense in Greek:

- The Future which is a full time-tense, referring to a future time
- The ‘linear’ tenses; the Imperfect and usually the Present which imply a continuous or repeated action
- The ‘punctiliar’ tenses, the Weak and Strong Aorists which are regarded as simply an event

We now have a fourth type of tense:

- The Perfect represents a present state resulting from a past action.

Thus:

**γέγραπται** – it stands written

That is to say, it was written in the past, and bears its witness *now*, in the present.

This use of the Greek Perfect is not the same as that in English, nor in Latin incidentally. The English Perfect will usually accurately translate the Greek Perfect and the English Past simple (I ate, for example) will accurately translate the Greek Aorist but this correspondence is not exact. Note that:

- The Greek Aorist is wider in meaning than the English Past Simple
- The Greek Perfect is narrower in meaning than the English Perfect.

Consider these three sentences:

- Your faith has saved you.
- Have you not read?
- He called them.

A speaks of present state of salvation resulting from an action (in this case an act of faith) in the past. Therefore, it is Perfect both in Greek and in English:

Ἡ πίστις σου σέσωκέν σε (Κατὰ Μάρκον 5:34)

B speaks of an action at some time in the past, without emphasis on the reader's present state. It *could* be argued that one is in a present state of having read something in the past, but this is not the usual interpretation. The phrase 'Have you not read?' is really equivalent to 'Did you not read' which is a more accurate interpretation of the English. So although it is *Perfect* in English it will be *Aorist* in Greek:

οὐκ ἀνέγνωτε; (Κατὰ Μάρκον 12:26)

When translating from English into Greek it is very necessary to understand what the words really mean, and this is not always so obvious. I often think that this is why the Classics have fallen into disuse because if children were forced to attend to the real meaning of words, politicians and the like would be obliged to talk more sense.

C speaks of a simple action in past time, so it will be past simple in English and Aorist in Greek:

ἐκάλεσεν αὐτοὺς (Κατὰ Μάρκον 1:20)

Diagrammatically, it is possible to represent these concepts as in the following table:

English Perfect	A Present state resulting from past action	Greek Perfect
	B An action in the indefinite past	Greek Aorist
English Past Simple	C An action in definite past	

This diagram may be further illustrated by three sentences more closely related to each other:

- He has killed her.
- He has killed a number of women in his time.
- He killed her.

A will be English Perfect and Greek Perfect

B will be English Perfect and Greek Aorist

C will be English Past Simple and Greek Aorist

There are times, however, when the Greek Perfect must be translated by the Past Simple, but such a Perfect still retains its proper force.

For example:

Χριστὸς ἀπέθανεν καὶ ἐγήγερται τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ τρίτῃ (Πρὸς Κορινθίους Α 15 3-4)

Christ died (Aorist) and was raised (Perfect) on the third day.

In this sentence the translation:

Christ died and has been raised on the third day  
does not make a great deal of sense.

So it must be translated as in the first example, but it suggests the further thought ‘and is a risen Saviour *today*’.

In every case the idea of the Greek tense must be discovered and then the nearest English equivalent found.

### 39.8 τίθημι and δίδωμι

The full conjugation of **τίθημι** and **δίδωμι** including the Perfect and Pluperfect can be found in Koine Greek Accidence sections 4.3.2 and 4.3.5.

### 39.9 οἶδα

The conjugation of οἶδα can be found in Koine Greek Accidence §4.1.6.

### 39.10 Opening Prayer

#### Προσευχὴ τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

σήμερον κύριε, μαθησόμεθα δύο χρονῶ τοῦ ῥήματος· τὸ τελείῳ ὀνόματι. νῦν δὲ οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλος χρονὸς, ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν ἔτι πολλὰ. βοήθει ἡμῖν κύριε, ὥστε μανθάνομεν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν εὐπρεπῶς.

Ἀμήν.

Let us pray.

Today, Lord, we shall learn two tenses of the verb, called the perfect tenses. There are now no other tenses to learn, but we must yet learn much. Help us, Lord, so that we can learn this language properly.

Amen

## 39.11 Exercises – A

### 39.11.1 Translate into English

1. τεθεράπευμαι ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
2. οἱ στρατιῶται λελοίπασι τὴν κόμην καὶ πορεύονται πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.
3. οἱ ἱερεῖς καὶ ὁ ἀρχιερεὺς τοῦ Ἰησοῦ κατεγνώκασιν.
4. οἶδα ὅτι ζῆ ὁ σωτὴρ ἐμοῦ.
5. πέπραχα τὸ πράγμα.
6. μεμάθηκα πολλὰ καὶ δύνάμαι διδάξαι ἀλλοῦς.
7. μὴ πεπίστευκας τοῖς τοῦ Χριστοῦ λόγοις;
8. γέγραπται δὲ ἐν ταῖς γραφαῖς ὅτι ὁ Χριστὸς πάλιν ἐλεύσεται.
9. ἤγγειλαν οἱ ἀγγέλοι τοὺς ἐχθροὺς νενικῆσθαι.
10. συνανακείμεθα σὺν τοῖς φίλοις ἡμῶν καὶ ἐφάγομεν τὸ δεῖπνον.
11. ἰδοῦ! τίθημι τὰ θεμέλια τοῦ ναοῦ μου ἃ οὐδεὶς δύναται κινήσαι.
12. δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπαινεῖν τὸν θεὸν καὶ τιμᾶν τὰ ποιήματα αὐτοῦ.

### 39.11.2 Translate into Greek

1. The slave entreated the judge to show mercy upon him.
2. The king has ruled this country for many years.
3. The disciples reported that they had healed the sick and cast out demons.
4. We have seen the most wondrous things in that city.
5. In the last days the Antichrist will rule and will do everything he wishes
6. I have been commanded to lead the army and to attack the city of our enemies.
7. The murder of the righteous man cried out for justice.
8. He wrote many books.
9. He has written many books.
10. The slave said that he had prepared the table and the dinner was ready.
11. I sent a message to the king in which it was written that we were not his subjects.
12. Listen to the voice of your conscience.

## 39.12 Exercises – B

### 39.12.1 Translate into English

1. ὁ κύριος πεφύτευκε τὸν κῆπον, πεφύλακτε τὰ τειχῆ, καὶ μεμίσθωκε τὸν κῆπον τοῖς μισθωταῖς.
2. τῷ κυρίῳ ἀνεβόησα καὶ ἐμοῦ ἀκήκοεν.
3. ἀποδέδωκα τὸν κυβερνητὴν ὥστε δυνησάμεθα πλεῦσαι πρὸς τὸν Ἔφεσον.
4. ἐν πολλαῖς πόλεις εὐηγγελισάμεθα τὸν λαὸν ἐπιστρέψαι ἀπὸ ματαίων εἰδολῶν.
5. οἱ πρεσβύτεροι ἐπέθηκαν τὰς χεῖρας αὐτῶν ἐφ' ἡμᾶς καὶ ἐξήλθομεν εἰς τὰς πόλεις ἐν τῇ γῆ.
6. ἠπείλησε αὐτὸς ἡμᾶς παραδοῦναι τοῖς κριταῖς.
7. ὑπὸ τοῦ πνεύματος ἠναγκάσθημεν λαλῆσαι τοῖς ἔθνεσιν.
8. ὁ Παῦλος διηγήσατο τὴν ἱστορίαν τῶν Ἰουδαίων τοῖς ἐν Λυκαϊονίᾳ ἀνδράσιν.
9. ἐπετίμησε ὁ Παῦλος τὸν ψευδοπροφήτην καὶ ἰδοῦ, τυφλὸς ἐγένετο.
10. τοσοῦτοι οἱ ἐχροὶ ὥστε ἡμᾶς νικηθῆναι ῥαδίως.
11. πεποίηκε κάλλιστον εἰκόνα καὶ αὐτὸν ἔθηκε ἐν τῷ ναῷ.

12. ἐνδεδύκαμεν τὸν Ἰησοῦν Χριστὸν ὥστε ὁ κόσμος οὐ δύναται ἡμᾶς νικῆσαι.

### 39.12.2 Translate into Greek

1. The saviour of the world has come.
2. We must not sacrifice to false idols; we must worship the true God.
3. We have read in the book of the Law that we must honour our father and mother.
4. The Lord said to Abraham, 'you will have many sons and daughters'.
5. A horse can be led to water, but cannot be forced to drink it.
6. In their distress the people called upon the Lord.
7. We have sailed many months but we have not seen a fabulous creature.
8. The disciples encircled Paul and Barnabus and prayed for them.
9. The Jews and the leaders of the city threatened that they would stone Paul and throw him out.
10. We shall build foundations of stone so that the house will not be destroyed by a storm.
11. Many strangers have entered our city but they obey our laws.
12. Have you tried to climb the walls of this city?

### 39.13 Exercises – C

#### 39.13.1 Translate into English

Ἐν τῷ ἐγγίξειν τῷ Ιεριχω, ὁ Ἰησοῦς ἀνέβλεψε καὶ εἶδεν ἄνθρωπον ἐναντίον αὐτοῦ· εἶχε δὲ ῥομφαίαν ἐν τῇ χειρὶ αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς εἶπε αὐτῷ· μάχη σὺ μεθ' ἡμῶν ἢ καθ' ἡμᾶς; ὁ δὲ εἶπε· Ἐγὼ ἀρχιστράτηγος δυνάμεως τοῦ κυρίου παραγίνομαι. ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς ἔπεσε ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν καὶ εἶπε· τί λέγεις, κύριε, τῷ οἰκέτῳ σου; λέγει δὲ ὁ ἀρχιστράτηγος· λῦσον τὰ ὑποδήματα σου ἐκ τῶν ποδῶν σου, ἅγιος γὰρ οὗτος ὁ τόπος. 5

Καὶ Ιεριχω συνεκλείσθη τε καὶ ὠχυρώσθη ὥστε οὐδένα δύνασθαι ἐκπορεύεσθαι ἢ εἰσπορεύεσθαι. εἶπε δὲ ὁ κύριος πρὸς Ἰησοῦν· Ἴδοῦ, ἐγὼ παραδίδωμι ὑποχείριτῳ σου τὴν Ιεριχω καὶ τὸν βασιλέα αὐτῆς· παρασκεύασον τοὺς στρατιώτας κύκλῳ. καὶ τοῦτο ποιήσον ἕξ ἡμέρας· πορευσάσθωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ οἱ ἱερεῖς περὶ τὴν πόλιν ἀλλὰ μὴ βοᾶτε μηδεὶς ἀκουέτω τὴν φωνὴν ὑμῶν. τῇ δὲ ἐβδόμῃ, μετὰ τὸ σάλπιγξαι τὴν σαλπίγγα, ἀνακραγέτω πᾶς ὁ λαὸς καὶ πέσεται αὐτόματα τὰ τεῖχη τῆς πόλεως ὥστε εἰσερχέσθαι τὸν λαὸν εἰς τὴν πόλιν. ὁ οὖν Ἰησοῦς ἔβη πρὸς τοὺς ἱερεῖς καὶ εἶπε· Παραγγείλατε τῷ λαῷ περιελθεῖν περὶ τὴν πόλιν· πορευέσθωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ κιβώτου τῆς διαθήκης καὶ ἑπτὰ ἱερεῖς, οἱ ἑπτὰ σαλπίγγας ἔχουσι, ὀπίσω τοῦ κιβώτου τῆς διαθήκης, καὶ σαλπίζέτωσαν οἱ ἱερεῖς τὰς σαλπίγγας, ἀλλὰ μὴ βοᾶτε καὶ μὴ ἀκουέτω μηδεὶς τὴν φωνὴν ὑμῶν. τοῦτο ἐποίησαν ὁ λαὸς, οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ οἱ ἱερεῖς ἕξ ἡμέρας· καθ' ἡμέραν ἐπανῆλθον δὲ εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. τῇ δὲ ἐβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦρον ὄρθρῳ πᾶς ὁ λαὸς· οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ οἱ ἱερεῖς καὶ ὁ λαὸς ἐπορεύσαντο περὶ τὴν πόλιν ἑξάκις· τότε δὲ, τῇ ἐβδόμῃ, ἐσάλπισαν οἱ ἱερεῖς καὶ εἶπε ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Κραξατε. καὶ πᾶς ὁ λαὸς ἐκραξαν μεγάλη φωνῇ· καὶ ἔπεσεν πάντα τὰ τεῖχη τοῦ Ιεριχω, καὶ ἀνέβη πᾶς ὁ λαὸς εἰς τὴν πόλιν. 10 15

Ἰησοῦς 5:13 - 6:20 (adapted)



### 39.13.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

Ιεριχώ ἡ	Jericho	There is no breathing and this is indeclinable
Ἰησοῦς	Joshua	This Hebrew name has a breathing, not to be confused with Ἰησοῦς in the NT.
ἐναντίον	opposite	This takes the genitive
ρόμφαία ἡ	large sword	
μάχομαι, μαχέσομαι, ἐμαχεσάμην	fight, I	This verb is in the middle voice.
ἀρχιστράτηγος ὁ	commander-in-chief	
παραγίνομαι, παραγενήσομαι, παρεγενόμην	I am present, at hand	
οἰκέτης	servant, menial	
ὑπόδημα τό	sandal	
συγκλείω, συγκλείσω, συνεκλείσα	close up, I	
ὀχυρόω, ὀχυρώσω, ὠχύρωσα	fortify, I; make fast, I	
ἐξεπορεύομαι	come out, I	
εἰσπορεύομαι	go in, I	
παραδίδωμι	hand over, I	
ὑποχέριος –α –ον	command, power	
παρασκευάζω, παρασκευάσω, παρεσκεύασα	prepare, I	
κύκλος ὁ	circle	
ἀνακράγω	cry out, I	Formed from ἀνα + κράγω.
παραγγέλλω, παραγγελῶ, παρήγγειλα	command, I	
περιέρχομαι, περιελύσομαι, περιήλθον	I march around	
κιβώτος ὁ	ark	i.e. ark of the covenant
βοάω	cry aloud, I	
ἕβδομος, -η –ον	seventh	
σαλπίζω, σαλπίσω, ἐσάλπιγξα	sound a trumpet, I	The older ‘Attic’ future of <b>σαλπιδῶ</b> is often seen in the LXX. <b>σαλπίσω</b> tends to be the Koine form.
αὐτόματα	of its own accord	
ὄρθρος –η, –ον	early, daybreak	



## Lesson 40 – Direct and Indirect Questions, more uses of the cases

### 40.1 Lesson 40 Outline

- 40.2 Vocabulary 40
- 40.3 Direct Questions
- 40.4 Double Questions
- 40.5 Deliberative Questions
- 40.6 Indirect Questions
- 40.7 Some more uses of the cases
- 40.8 Opening Prayer
- 40.9 Exercises A
  - 40.9.1 Translate into English
  - 40.9.2 Translate into Greek
- 40.10 Exercises B
  - 40.10.1 Translate into English
  - 40.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 40.11 Exercises C

### Προσευχή τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

πολυμερῶς συνελεγόμεθα ὧδε ἵνα ἐπιτηδεύωμέν τε καὶ μαθάνωμεν ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ᾧ κύριε, ἔτι ἡμεῖς χαίρομεν δὴ ἀπαντῶντες ἀλλήλους. σ' ἱκετεύομεν βοήθειν ἡμῖν μαθάνουσι τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε ἀναγνῶναι ἡμᾶς τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην, τὴν παλαιάν διαθήκην καὶ τὰ ἔργα τῶν γραφέων Ἀθανασίου, Εὐσέβιου, καὶ ἄλλων. ἴσθι μεθ' ἡμῶν κύριε νῦν καὶ ἀεί,

Ἀμήν

Grais ingenium, Grais dedit ore rotundo

Musa loqui.

To the Greeks the Muse gave native wit, to the Greeks  
the gift of graceful eloquence.

Ars Poetica 323

Horace

## 40.2 Vocabulary Lesson 40

Verbs		
ἐξηγέομαι, ἐξηγήσομαι, ἐξηγησάμην	explain, I (6)	
εὐχαριστέω, εὐχαριστήσω, ἠὲχαρίστησα	thank, I; am thankful, I(38)	Takes a dative of the person thanked and an accusative of the thing
θανατόω, θανατώσω, ἐθανάτωσα	put to death, I (11)	
καυχάομαι, καυχήσομαι, ἐκαυχησάμην	boast, I (37)	
τελέω, τελέσω, ἐτέλεσα	finish, I; complete, I (29)	Note that ε does not change to η
τολμάω, τολμήσω, ἐτόλμησα	dare, I (15)	
φυτεύω, φυτεύσω, ἐφύτευσα	plant, I (11)	
Nouns		
ἄνθος, ἄνθους, τό	flower	gen. plural ἀνθέων
βάθος, βάθους, τό	depth (8)	
βρῶσις, βρώσεως, ἡ	corrosion, rust (11)	
γέφυρα, ἡ	bridge	
κατάσκοπος, ὁ	spy (1)	
μῆκος, μήκους, τό	length (2)	
πλάτος, πλάτους, τό	breadth (3)	
σῆς σεός, ὁ	moth (3)	Also σητός as the genitive
ὕψος, ὕψους, τό	height (6)	
Adjective		
πονηρός, -ή, -όν	evil (78)	
Direct Questions		
πότερον ... ἢ	whether ... or ... (1)	This can be used in both Direct and Indirect questions
τίς; τί;	Who? Which? (555)	Note that these are declined like adjectives
πόσος;	How great? (27)	
πόσοι;	How many? (27)	
ποῖος	Of what kind? (33)	
ποῦ;	Where? (47)	
ποῖ;	Whither?	
πόθεν;	Whence? (27)	
πότε;	When? (17)	
πῶς;	How? (104)	
Indirect Questions		
ὅστις; ὅτι;	Who? Which? (152)	Note that these are declined like adjectives
ὁπόσος	How great?	

ὅποσοι	How many?	
ὅποῖος	Of what kind? (5)	
ὅπου;	Where? (82)	
ὅπου;	Whither?	
ὅπόθεν;	Whence? (1)	
ὅποτε;	When?	
ὅπως;	How? (53)	
<b>Adverb</b>		
ἐχθές	yesterday (3)	can be used with the article in any case.
<b>Place Name</b>		
Μυκῆναι, αἱ	Mycenae	

### 40.3 Direct Questions

Direct questions can take one of three forms in Greek:

- Single Questions
- Double Questions
- Deliberative Questions

#### 40.3.1 Single Questions

Single Questions can be framed in one of three ways:

- Without any Interrogative word at all
- With the Interrogative particle ἄρα
- With Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs

##### 40.3.1.1 Without any Interrogative word at all

This type of question was introduced in Lessons 3 and 21 and is simply phrased with the question mark sign (;) at the end:

ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ; Is he in the house?

ἔχει φίλους; Does he have friends?

If the negative used is οὐ, the expected answer is yes:

οὐκ ἔχει φίλους; He does have friends, doesn't he?

If the negative used is μή, the expected answer is no:

μὴ ἔχει φίλους; He doesn't have friends, does he?

Note that, when translating these questions from English into Greek the English *Idiom* with its question tags, is *not* translated into Greek; Greek *Idiom* is used instead.

##### 40.3.1.2 With the Interrogative particle ἄρα

The Interrogative particle ἄρα does not really change anything as regards the question itself; it is merely a different way of expressing the question. For example:

ἐστὶν φίλος σου; Is he your friend?

ἄρ' ἐστὶν φίλος σου; Is he your friend?

ἄρ' οὐκ ἐστὶν φίλος σου; He is your friend, isn't he?

ἄρα μὴ ἐστὶν φίλος σου; He isn't your friend is he?

Distinguish this use of the particle ἄρα, from the *inferential* particle ἄρα and furthermore from the *noun* ἄρα meaning *curse*. All three are used in the New Testament but the commonest use is that of ἄρα.

Here are three examples from the New Testament:

ἄρα εὐρήσει τὴν πίστιν ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς;

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 8:18

Shall he find faith on the earth?

εἰ γὰρ διὰ νόμου δικαιοσύνη ἄρα Χριστὸς δωρεὰν ἀπέθανεν

Πρὸς Γαλάτας 2:21

If righteousness is through the law, then Christ died for nothing.

ὃ τὸ στόμα ἀρῶς καὶ πικρίας γέμει

Πρὸς Ῥωμαίους 3:14

whose mouth is full of curses and bitterness

#### 40.3.1.3 With Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs

Direct Questions can also be introduced with the following Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs:

Interrogative		Relative			Demonstrative	
Direct	Indirect					
τίς; τί;	ὅστις, ὅτι	Who?	ὅς	who	οὗτος, ὅδε	this
πόσος;	ὅπόσος	How great?	ὅσος	as great as	τοσοῦτος	so great
πόσοι;	ὅπόσοι	How many?	ὅσοι	as many as	τοσοῦτοι	so many
ποῖος;	ὅποῖος	Of what kind?	οἷος	such as	τοιούτος	such
ποῦ;	ὅπου	Where?	οὔ, ὅπου	where	ἐκεῖ	there
ποῖ;	ὅποι	Whither?	οἷ, ὅποι	whither	ἐκεῖσε	thither
πόθεν;	ὅπόθεν	Whence?	ὅθεν	whence	ἐκεῖθεν	thence
πότε;	ὅποτε	When?	ὅτε	when	τότε	then
πῶς;	ὅπῳ	How?	ὡς	as	οὕτως	thus

Note that τίς, τί;, πόσος, (-η, -ον);, πόσοι, (-αι, -α);, ποῖος, (-α, -ον); etc, are declined like adjectives.

The column for Indirect questions will be used in §40.6.

Some examples:

ποῦ ἐστὶν ἡ ἀγορά;

Where is the market place?

ποῖ βαίνεις;

Where are you going? *more archaically* Whither goest thou?

πόθεν ἦλθες;

Where have you come from? *more archaically* Whence hast thou come?

πῶς τοῦτο ποιήσεις;

How will you do this?

### 40.3.2 Double Questions

These are asked with the conjunctions **πότερον ... ἢ** ....., but **πότερον** is often omitted; it is used only once in the New Testament.

Some examples:

τὸ βαπτισμα τὸ Ἰωάννου πόθεν ἦν; ἐξ οὐρανοῦ ἢ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων;

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 21:25

Whence came the baptism of John? From Heaven **or** from man?

τίς γὰρ μείζων; ὁ ἀνακείμενος ἢ ὁ διακονῶν;

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 22:27

Who is greater? The one reclining at the table or the one serving?

### 40.3.3 Deliberative Questions

Deliberative Questions in the 1<sup>st</sup> person, where the speaker asks *what* he or she is to do, are put into the Subjunctive. This type of question is dealt with in Lesson 51.

## 40.4 Indirect Questions

### 40.4.1 Construction

Indirect Questions are expressed in the same way as Indirect Speech introduced by **ὅτι**, the main difference being the greater number and variety of the conjunctions that are used. The construction is formed in one of two ways:

- After a *Primary* tense (Present, Future or Perfect) the mood of the verb in the Indirect clause is *Indicative*
- After an *Historic* tense (Imperfect, Aorist or Pluperfect) the mood of the verb in the Indirect clause is generally *Indicative* but may be *Optative*. In the New Testament, especially in Luke, this is one of the main uses of the Optative. Since the Imperfect and Pluperfect have no corresponding tenses in the Optative, these tenses are kept in the Indicative.

At this point in the course, all of the exercises and examples will use the Indicative (expressed or implied), which is also (in Attic Greek) the *vivid* or *graphic* form.

πόσον (ἐστὶ) τὸ τεῖχος;                      How great is the wall? (Direct)

ἤτησε ὅποσον (ἐστὶ) τὸ τεῖχος.            He asked how great the wall was. (Indirect)

Observe that (a) the tense in the Indirect clause does not change in Greek but it does in English and (b) the words **πόσον** and **ὅποσον** agree with the noun **τεῖχος**.

ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ ναός;                              Where is the temple? (Direct)

ἤτησε ὅπου ἐστὶν ὁ ναός.                    He asked where the temple was. (Indirect)

πόσοι οἱ ἐχθροὶ;                                How many are the enemy? (Direct)

ἤτησε ὅποσοι οἱ ἐχθροὶ                      He asked how many were the enemy. (Indirect)

It is worthwhile noticing, particularly when one is engaged upon Prose Composition, that the presence of an Indirect Question is not always obvious. For example consider the following sentences:

He was considering **what he ought to do**.

He knows **the reason for the change in our plan**.

She was aware **what sort of man he was**.

The clauses in **bold** are actually Indirect Questions; ‘What should I do?’, ‘Why has our plan changed?’ ‘What sort of man is he?’.

By expressing the Indirect Question openly in these sentences it will then be clear as to which *tense* of the verb to use in each case; i.e. the tense of the original indirect question.

The negative in an Indirect question is usually **οὐ**, but in the second part of an alternative question, **μή** can be used as well.

#### 40.4.2 A note on the use of **πόσος**

**πόσος**, (**όπόσος** in Indirect Questions) in Greek is used to introduce the question ‘how big’ or ‘how great’ with a singular noun. With a plural noun it is used as ‘how many’. However, in English we frequently say:  
how high are the walls?  
how broad is the river?

With such questions, **πόσος** or **όπόσος** cannot be used. It is necessary to use instead an abstract noun and say something like:

what is the height of the walls?

τί τὸ ὕψος ἔχει τὰ τεῖχη;

Different considerations apply to ‘Indirect Questions’ such as:

He said what a good piece of work it was.

He remarked how beautiful her eyes were.

In both of these cases, it is necessary to *interpret* the English into Greek *idiom*. There are several ways of accomplishing this, here are two suggestions:

He said that the work had been done very well.

He noticed that her eyes were very beautiful.

In the first case the superlative of the adverb (**ἄριστα**) should be used.

In the second case the superlative of the adjective (**κάλλιστοι**) should be used.

As was noted in Lesson 37, the superlative (both adjective and adverb) is often used in an *elative* (very, exceedingly) sense.

#### 40.4.3 Indirect Questions in the New Testament

Here are some examples of Indirect Questions from the New Testament.

Μὴ θαυρίζετε ὑμῖν θησαυροὺς ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, **ὅπου** σῆς καὶ βρῶσις ἀφανίζει καὶ **ὅπου** κλέπται διορύσσουσιν καὶ κλέπτουσιν·

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 6:19

Do not be storing up to yourself treasures on the earth **where** moth and rust disfigure and **where** robbers break in and steal.

οἱ δὲ εἶπαν αὐτῷ· τὰ περὶ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ Ναζαρηνοῦ, ὃς ἐγένετο ἀνὴρ προφήτης δυνατὸς ἐν ἔργῳ ἐναντίον τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ παντὸς τοῦ λαοῦ, **ὅπως** τε παρέδωκαν αὐτὸν οἱ ἀρχιερεῖς καὶ οἱ ἀρχόντες ἡμῶν εἰς κρίμα θανάτου καὶ ἐσταύρωσαν αὐτόν.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 24:19 – 20

They said to him, about Jesus of Nazareth, who became a powerful prophet in deed before God and all the people, and **how** the chief priests and our leaders delivered him up to a sentence of death and crucified him.



## 40.5 Some more uses of the Cases

### 40.5.1 Accusative Case

#### 40.5.1.1 Double Accusative

As we have seen so far, some verbs such as αἰτέω (I ask) or διδάσκω (I teach) take two accusatives, one of the person and another of the thing:

I teach the students Greek – διδάσκω τοὺς μαθητὰς τὴν γλῶσσαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων

#### 40.5.1.2 Accusative of Respect

The Accusative of Respect (sometimes also called the Adverbial Accusative) limits the meaning of the verb or adjective:

κακίζομαι τὸ ἔργον μου I am abused in respect of my work

ἡ ὁδὸς μεγάλη τὸ μῆκος The road is long (literally, big in respect of length)

τὸ τεῖχος εἴκοσι πόδας ἔχει τὸ ὕψος The wall is twenty feet high

The accusative of respect is not very common in the New Testament; according to Zerwyck, its functions have been (largely) superseded by the *Dative* of respect.

### 40.5.2 Dative Case

#### 40.5.2.1 Dative of Possessor

The Dative case can often be used to denote possession:

οἰκία ἐστὶν ἐμοί *instead of* ἔχω οἰκίαν.

In Attic Greek the usual verbs with which to use this are εἰμί or γί(γ)νομαι; but in Κατὰ Λοῦκαν ὑπάρχω (I exist) is also used. In prose, this construction is *usually* used with *persons* or *cities* rather than *things*, but in verse this ‘rule’ is generally more relaxed.

#### 40.5.2.2 Dative of Respect

ὀνόματι (by name) is very frequently used as in ἀνὴρ τις, Στέφανος ὀνόματι a certain man, Stephen by name.

## 40.6 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

πολυμερῶς συνελεγόμεθα ὧδε ἵνα ἐπιτηδεύωμέν τε καὶ μανθάνωμεν ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ᾧ κύριε, ἔτι ἡμεῖς χαίρομεν δὴ ἀπαντῶντες ἀλλήλους. σ’ ἰκετεύομεν βοήθειν ἡμῖν μανθάνουσι τὴν γλῶσσαν ὥστε ἀναγνῶναι ἡμᾶς τὴν καινὴν διαθήκην, τὴν παλαιάν διαθήκην καὶ τὰ ἔργα τῶν γραφῶν Ἀθανασίου, Εὐσέβιου, καὶ ἄλλων. ἴσθι μεθ’ ἡμῶν κύριε νῦν καὶ ἀεί,

Ἀμήν

Let us pray.

Many times we have gathered here to study and learn this language, O Lord, yet we still rejoice to meet each other. We beseech you to help us learn the language so that we may read the New Testament, the Old Testament and the works of writers Athanasius, Eusebius and others. Be with us Lord now and always, Amen.

## 40.7 Exercises – A

### 40.7.1 Translate into English

1. θέλω γνῶναι ὅποσα βιβλία ἔχει.
2. εὔρον τὸν τόπον ὅπου ἔκρυψε τὸν ἀργύριον.
3. λέγει ἡμῖν ὅποθεν ἦλθε.
4. πῶς τοῦτο ποιήσεις;
5. πότε λείψεις τοῦτον τὸν τόπον καὶ ποῖ βήσῃ;
6. εἰπὲ ἡμῖν, κύριε, ὅπου βησόμεθα καὶ τίσι ἀγγελοῦμεν τὴν εὐαγγελίαν.
7. ἐθέλησαν οἱ Φαρισαῖοι γνῶναι τίνι ἐξουσία ὁ Ἰησοῦς ταῦτα ποιεῖ.
8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς μάθειν ταύτην τὴν γλῶσσαν καὶ λαλεῖν αὐτήν.
9. ταῖς Μυκίταις λιμὴν οὐκ ἐστίν.
10. ποῦ βαίνεις; καὶ τί ποιήσεις;
11. ποῖοι στρατιῶται ἐν τούτῳ τῷ στρατεύματι εἰσίν;
12. ἐμάθομεν ὅπου ὁ ναὸς ἐστίν καὶ ὅποιοι οἱ ἱερεῖς ἐν αὐτῷ.

### 40.7.2 Translate into Greek

1. What kind of gifts did you send to the elders?
2. The lepers told the priests from where they had come.
3. Did he say whether he wished to stay or leave?
4. He has a house and many slaves. (translate twice, once with ἔχω and once without)
5. What kinds of flowers are there in the garden?
6. The slave did not tell us where he was going.
7. Where is the man to whom we wish to speak?
8. The spies told us how high the city walls were.<sup>1</sup>
9. Which city have you come from?
10. He did not tell us what the king said.
11. When did you do this?
12. Tell us who you are and where you have come from.

<sup>1</sup> how great the city walls were *in respect* of height

## 40.8 Exercises – B

### 40.8.1 Translate into English

1. τίνι ἀνδρὶ ἐλάλησας;
2. ὁ Παῦλος κατήγγειλε τῷ λαῷ ὅποσον ἔργον πεποίηκεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς.
3. ποῖους καρποὺς ἠγόρασας;
4. εἰπὲ ἡμῖν ὅποι βαίνεις.
5. πρὸς τίνα πόλιν ἔπεμψας τὸν δοῦλόν σου;
6. προσεβάλομεν τῇ πόλει ὅπου τὰ τείχη λεπτότατα.
7. πότε λήμψῃ τὸ τέκνον πρὸς τὸν ναόν;
8. ὅποθεν ἦλθε ἡμῖν οὐκ εἶπες.
9. πόσοι ἀνδρὲς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ πόλει; γινώσκεις;
10. ἐβλέψαμεν ὅτι τὰ τῆς πόλεως τείχη ἔχει δέκα ποδας τὸ βάθος καὶ πενήκοστα ποδας τὸ ὕψος.

11. τίνοι τεχνῆ οἰκοδομήσεις ταύτην τὴν γέφυραν;
12. ἤτησα αὐτὸν πότερον τοῦτον γινώσκει ἢ μή.

#### 40.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. Who dares to enter this house?
2. He told us what he had found in the field.
3. Which languages do you teach?
4. He boasted how big a fish he had caught.
5. When did you buy this slave?
6. He asked the general whether he would attack the city or not.
7. How will you finish this task?
8. Where are you leading us?
9. What kind of flowers do you have?
10. They did not tell us which city they were going to.
11. What kind of trees have you planted in your garden?
12. Did you receive the gifts and the letter which I sent to you?

#### 40.9 Exercise – C

##### 40.9.1 Translate into English

Ἠχθήσθη δὲ ὁ κύριος τῷ πονηρῷ ὃ ἐποίησεν ὁ Δαυιδ.

Ἐπεμψε οὖν ὁ κύριος τὸν προφήτην Ναθαν πρὸς Δαυιδ. ὁ δὲ εἶπε μῦθον τοῦτον·

Δύο ἄνδρες ἦσαν ἐν πόλει τινι, ὁ μὲν πλούσιος, ὁ δὲ πένης. ὁ μὲν πλούσιος ἔχει ποιμνία καὶ βουκόλια πολλὰ, ὁ δὲ πένης ἔχει ἄμνον μόνον, ἣν περιποιήσατο καὶ ἐξεθρεψεν· ἔφαγε τὸν ἄρτον αὐτοῦ, ἔπιε ἐκ τοῦ ποτηρίου αὐτοῦ καὶ ἦν αὐτῷ ὡς θυγάτηρ. καὶ ἦλθε τῷ πλουσίῳ ξένος τις· 5 ἐφείσατο ὁ πλούσιος λαβεῖν τινα ἐκ τῶν ποιμνίων αὐτοῦ ἢ ἐκ τῶν βουκόλιων τῷ ξένῳ. ἔλαβεν οὖν τὴν τοῦ πένιτος ἄμνον καὶ ἔδωκεν αὐτὴν τῷ ξένῳ τε καὶ ἑαυτῷ.

Μετὰ τὸ ἀκούειν τοῦτο, ἐθυμώθη Δαυιδ καὶ εἶπε πρὸς Ναθαν· δεῖ τὸν ἀνδρὰ ἀποθανεῖν ὃς ἐποίησε τοῦτο. Ναθαν δὲ εἶπε· σὺ εἶ ὁ ἀνὴρ ὃς ἐποίησε τοῦτο. οὕτως λέγει ὁ κύριος ὁ θεὸς Ἰσραηλ· ἐγὼ σε ἔχρισα εἰς βασιλέα Ἰσραηλ καὶ ἐγὼ σε ἐρρυσάμην ἐκ χειρὸς Σαουλ. ἀπ' ἐμοῦ ἐδέξω τὸν οἶκον Ἰσραηλ 10 καὶ Ἰουδα. τί ἐφάυλισας τὸν λόγον τοῦ κυρίου ὥστε ποιῆσαι πονηρὸν ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς κυρίου; τὸν Ουριαν ἐπάταξας ῥομφαία καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα αὐτοῦ ἔλαβες σεαυτῷ. καὶ νῦν, οὕτως λέγει ὁ κύριος· ἐγὼ ἐξεγείρω ἐπὶ σε κακὰ ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου σου καὶ λήμψομαι τὰς γυναῖκας σου πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν σου. καὶ δώσω αὐτὰς τοῖς γειτόσι σου. ὅτι σὺ μὲν ἐποίησας κρυβῆ, ἐγὼ δὲ ποιήσω τὸ ῥῆμα τοῦτο 15 ἐναντίον ὄλου Ἰσραηλ.

Καὶ εἶπεν Δαυιδ τῷ Ναθαν· ἥμαρτον τῷ κυρίῳ. εἶπε Ναθαν τῷ Δαυιδ· ὁ κύριος παρεβίβασε τὸ ἀμάρτημά σου. σὺ μὲν οὐκ ἀποθάνη, ὁ δὲ υἱὸς σου ὃς ἔτεκέ σοι, αὐτὸς ἀποθανεῖται. καὶ ἀπῆλθεν Ναθαν εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ.

Βασιλείων Β 11:27 - 12:15 (adapted)

##### 40.9.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

ἄχθομαι	am displeased, I	Takes a dative
Δαυιδ	David	The LXX usually omits accents and breathings on imported

		Hebrew words
Ναθαν	Nathan	
μύθος	story	myth
πένης, πένιτος ὁ	a poor man	This is not <i>quite</i> the same as πτωχος, which commonly means ‘a beggar’. πένης is someone who works for living, a day labourer
ποιμνίον τό	a flock, a herd	
βουκόλιον τό	a herd of bulls	
ἐκτρέπω, ἐξεθρέψω, ἐξέθρεψα	I care for from childhood, I bring up	
περιποιέω, περιποιήσω, περιποίησα	care for, I; protect, I	
φείδομαι, φείσομαι, ἐφεισάμην	refrain from, I	
ἄμνος, ὁ	lamb	
θυμώω, θυμώσω, ἐθύμωσα	make angry, I; <i>in Passive</i> , am angry, I	
οὕτως	thus, in this manner	
Ἰσραηλ	Israel	
χρίω, χρίσω, ἔχρισα	anoint, I	chrism
ρύομαι, ρύσομαι, ἐρρυσάμην	rescue, I	
Σαουλ	Saul	
Ἰουδα	Judah	
φαιλίω, φαιλίω, ἐφαιλίω	hold cheap, I; disparage, I	
Ουριαν	Uriah	
πατάσσω, πατάξω, ἐπάταξα	beat, I; strike, I	
ρόμφαία ἡ	large sword	
ἐξεγείρω	raise up, I	
γείτων, γειτόνος, ὁ	neighbour	
κρυβῆ	secretly (adverb)	
ἐναντίον	before, in the face of	followed by a genitive
παραβιβάζω	put aside, I; remove, I	
ἁμάρτημα, ἁμαρτήματος	sin	
τίκτω, τέξω (also τέξομαι), ἔτεκον	of the mother I bear (a child), of the father I beget	

# Lesson 41 – ἴσθημι

## Present, Imperfect, Aorist Imperative and Infinitive Active, Middle Voices

### 41.1 Lesson 41 Outline

- 41.2 Vocabulary 41
- 41.3 Conjugation of ἴσθημι
- 41.4 A recap on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs
- 41.5 Notes on the uses of the tenses of ἴσθημι
- 41.6 Principal Parts of Compound Verbs of ἴσθημι
- 41.7 The uses of ἴσθημι in the New Testament
- 41.8 Opening Prayer
- 41.9 Exercises A
  - 41.9.1 Translate into English
  - 41.9.2 Translate into Greek
- 41.10 Exercises B
  - 41.10.1 Translate into English
  - 41.10.2 Translate into Greek
- 41.11 Exercises C

### Προσευχὴ τῶ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

Κύριε, σήμερον ἐπιτηδεύσομεν τὸ ρῆμα ἴσθημι ὀνόματι ὃ χαλεπὸς λόγος ἐστίν. βοήθει ἡμῖν κύριε ὥστε  
μανθάνομεν ἀκριβῶς τε καὶ ταχέως.

Ἀμήν

Stands the Church Clock at ten to three  
and is there honey still for tea?

Peace  
Rupert Brooke

## 41.2 Vocabulary Lesson 41

The main difficulty with **ἵστημι** is that the verb is *Transitive* in some tenses or forms and *Intransitive* in others. In order to bring out this difference, this vocabulary is expressed in a slightly different way. The meanings given are the commonest meanings; there are other meanings and Liddell & Scott or Arndt & Gingrich can be consulted on this. The prepositions used are shown in brackets in **red**.

	Transitive meaning	Intransitive meaning
<b>ἵστημι (154)</b>	I place	I stand
<b>ἵσταμαι</b>		I place myself, I place for myself
<b>ἀνθίστημι (14) (ἀντί)</b>		I resist, oppose (14) <sup>1</sup>
<b>ἀνθίσταμαι</b>		I resist, oppose (14) <sup>1</sup>
<b>ἀνίστημι (108) (ἀνα)</b>	I raise, I set up	I stand up
<b>ἀνίσταμαι</b>		I stand up, I arise
<b>ἀφίστημι (13) (ἀπό)</b>	I put away, I remove, I draw away	I stand away, I keep far from
<b>ἀφίσταμαι</b>		I stand away, I keep far from
<b>ἐνίστημι (7) (ἐν)</b>	I put, set, place in	
<b>ἐνίσταμαι</b>		I am set in, stand in
<b>ἐξίστημι (17) (ἐκ, ἐξ)</b>	I move out of place, I astonish	I stand aside from, I am amazed
<b>ἐξίσταμαι</b>		I am amazed
<b>ἐφίστημι (21) (ἐπί)</b>	I set or place upon	I come upon, I stand by <sup>2</sup>
<b>ἐφίσταμαι</b>		I come upon, I stand by <sup>2</sup>
<b>καθίστημι (21) (κατά)</b>	I establish, I appoint, I ordain	I settle, I arrive, I prevail, I exist
<b>καθίσταμαι</b>		I settle, I arrive, I prevail, I exist
<b>μεθίστημι (also μεθιστάνω)</b>	I move out of place, I remove (5)	I stand among, <i>or</i> in the midst of, I change my position
<b>μεθίσταμαι (μετά)</b>		
<b>παρίστημι (also παριστάνω) (41)</b>	I place beside, I bring, I offer	I stand by, beside, or near
<b>παρίσταμαι (παρά)</b>	I bring forward, I produce	I stand by, I am at hand
<b>προίστημι (8) (πρό)</b>	I set before or in front	I stand in front, I take the lead
<b>προίσταμαι</b>		I stand in front, I take the lead
<b>συνίστημι (15) (σύν)</b>	I set together	I stand together, I am held together
<b>συνίσταμαι</b>		I stand together, I am held together

Other Verbs		
<b>ἀντιλέγω, ἀντερῶ, ἀντεῖπον</b>	I speak against, I say in opposition (11)	The person opposed is in the Dative
<b>ἐκπλήσσω, ἐκπλήξω, ἐξέπληξα</b>	to be amazed (13)	
<b>κρούω, κρούσω, ἔκρουσα</b>	I knock (9)	

μνημονεύω, μνημονεύσω, ἐμνημόνευσα	I remember, I hold in remembrance (21)	
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα	I conquer (28)	
<b>Nouns</b>		
γείτων, γείτονος, ὄ, ἦ	neighbour (4)	
κολώνη, ἦ	mound, hill, cairn	
λόφος, ὄ	hill	
μνήμα, μνήματος, τό	tomb, monument	μνημεῖον can also mean 'monument'
πειρασμός, πειρασμοῦ	temptation, trial (21)	
ῥάβδος, ὄ	staff, rod (11)	
σημεῖον, τό	sign, miracle (77)	
τέρμα, τέρατος, τό	boundary	
τροπαῖον τό	trophy	
<b>Conjunctions</b>		
ἐπεὶ	since, because, when (26)	Followed by the Indicative unless the clause is Indefinite
ἐπειδὴ	since, because, when (10)	
<b>Adverb</b>		
ᾧδε	here	

#### Notes

<sup>1</sup> Takes a Dative of the person opposed

<sup>2</sup> The person or thing stood or imposed upon is in the Dative

### 41.3 Conjugation of ἵστημι

The full conjugation of ἵστημι is given in Koine Greek Accidence §4.3.2, but here is an excerpt from that booklet showing the Present, Imperfect, Strong Aorist and Perfect for the Active voice and the Present and Imperfect for the Middle voice. These tables only show the Indicative, Imperative and Infinitive.

#### 41.3.1 Active Voice

		Indicative			Imperative	
		Primary	Historic			
Present I place	S 1	ἵστημι	ἵστην			
	S 2	ἵστης	ἵστης		ἵστη	
	S 3	ἵστησι(ν)	ἵστη		ἱστάτω	
Imperfect I was placing	P 1	ἵσταμεν	ἵσταμεν			
	P 2	ἵστατε	ἵστατε		ἵστατε	
	P 3	ἱστᾶσι(ν)	ἵστασαν		ἱστάτωσαν	
Aorist I stood (Strong) I placed (Weak)	S 1		ἔστην	ἔστησα		
	S 2		ἔστης	ἔστησας	στήθι	στήσον
	S 3		ἔστη	ἔστησε	στήτω	στησάτω
	P 1		ἔστημεν	ἔστήσαμεν		
	P 2		ἔστητε	ἔστήσατε	στήτε	στήσατε
	P 3		ἔστησαν	ἔστησαν	στάτωσαν	στησάτωσαν
Perfect I stand  Pluperfect I had stood	S 1	ἔστηκα	εἰστήκειν	ἔστηκα		
	S 2	ἔστηκας	εἰστήκεις	ἔστηκας	ἔστηκε	
	S 3	ἔστηκε(ν)	εἰστήκει	ἔστηκε(ν)	ἔστηκέτω	
	P 1	ἔσταμεν	εἰστήκειμεν	ἔστηκαμεν		
	P 2	ἔστατε	εἰστήκειτε	ἔστηκατε	ἔστηκατε	
	P 3	ἔστᾶσι(ν)	εἰστήκεισαν	ἔστηκεσαν	ἔστηκόντων	

	Present	Future	Strong Aorist	Weak Aorist	Perfect
Infinitive	ἱσθάναι	στήσειν	στήναι	στήσαι	ἔστηκέναι

#### Notes

1. ἵστημι has both a *Strong* and a *Weak* Aorist; the Strong Aorist is shown in the second and fourth columns in blue, Weak Aorist is shown in the third and fifth columns in red
2. ἵστημι has both a *Strong* and a *Weak* Perfect; the Strong Perfect is shown in the first column in blue, the Weak Perfect is shown in the third column in red
3. Notice that the Weak and Strong Aorists have a *smooth* breathing, but the Perfect has a *rough* breathing
4. Unlike the Aorist, the different forms as between the Strong and Weak Perfects are merely different *forms*.
5. For the Pluperfect, the Koine forms are shown; Attic forms are: εἰστήκη, εἰστήκης, εἰστήκει, ἔσταμεν, ἔστατε, ἔστασαν.



### 41.3.2 Middle Voice

		Indicative		Imperative
		Primary	Historic	
Present	S 1	ἵσταμαι	ιστάμην	
I place myself	S 2	ἵτασαι	ἵτασο	ἵτασο
	S 3	ἵταται	ἵτατο	ἵτάσθω
Imperfect	P 1	ιστάμεθα	ιστάμεθα	
I was placed myself	P 2	ἵτασθε	ἵτασθε	ἵτασθε
	P 3	ἵτανται	ἵταντο	ἵτάσθωσαν

	Present	Aorist
Infinitive	ἵτασθαι	στήσασθαι

### 41.3.3 Principal Parts

The principal parts of ἵστημι are:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Perf. Passive	Aorist Passive
ἵστημι	στήσω (tr)	ἔστησα (tr) ἔστην (intr)	ἔστηκα (intr)	ἔσταμαι (rare)	ἑστάθην (intr)
I place	I shall place	I placed (tr) I stood (intr)	I stand	I have been placed	I was placed

## 41.4 A Recap on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

It was noted earlier (Lesson 4) that some verbs are Transitive, that is, they require a direct object to complete their meaning and other verbs are Intransitive, they do NOT require a direct object to complete their meaning. Furthermore, some verbs can be *both* Transitive and Intransitive depending on the the context and meaning.

Some examples of transitive verbs are:

I close *the door*.

I held *the child's hand*.

I typed *the letter*.

In each of these cases the omission of a direct object leaves the sentence incomplete; I close *what?*, I held *what?*, I typed *what?*

Some examples of intransitive verbs are:

I walked.

I ran.

It should not be supposed that the sentences 'I walked a mile' or 'I ran a race' have examples of *direct* objects; one should *really* say 'I walked *for* a mile' or 'I ran *in* a race'. Inserting the preposition shows that the *apparent* direct object is not an object at all.

Some examples of verbs that are both transitive and intransitive are:

I stopped. I stopped the car.

I ran.      I ran the job.

The last example (from Computer usage) shows that what is apparently the same verb can have two very different meanings.

### 41.5 Notes on the uses of the tenses of ἵστημι

ἵστημι is a rather complex verb in that it has different meanings in different tenses and furthermore, in some forms it is *transitive* and in other forms it is *intransitive*. ‘Forms’ has been used here instead of ‘tenses’ because one tense is *both* Transitive and Intransitive. The Active *Weak* Aorist is *Transitive*; Active *Strong* Aorist is *Intransitive* since ἵστημι has BOTH a First (Weak) and a Second (Strong) Aorist.

It is worthwhile mastering the various uses as the verb is fairly common, in the New Testament, Septuagint, Patristic Writers and, of course, the Classics.

The *transitive* tenses are:

Present Active	ἵστημι	I place
Imperfect Active	ἵστην	I was placing
Future Active	στήσω	I shall place
1 <sup>st</sup> (Weak) Aorist Active	ἔστησα	I placed

The *intransitive* tenses are:

2 <sup>nd</sup> (Strong) Aorist Active	ἔστην	I stood
Perfect Active	ἔστηκα	I stand (Note, this is <i>Present</i> in meaning)
1 <sup>st</sup> (Weak) Aorist Passive	ἔσταθην	I stood

It is worth noting that this division between Transitive tenses and Intransitive tenses also applies to the compound verbs like καθίστημι.

In the table above only the Active and Passive Voices have been shown. The Middle voice ἵσταμαι means ‘I place myself’ or ‘I place for myself’. The 1<sup>st</sup> (Weak) Aorist Middle ἐστησάμην always means ‘I placed for myself’.

## 41.6 Principal Parts of Compound Verbs of ἵστημι

### 41.6.1 Indicative

Present	Future	St. Aorist	Wk. Aorist	Perfect	Aorist Pass.
ἀνθίστημι (ἀντί)	ἀντιστήσω	ἀντέστην		ἀνθέστηκα	ἀντεστάθην
ἀνίστημι (ἀνά)	ἀναστήσω	ἀνέστην	ἀνέστησα		ἀνεστάθην
ἀφίστημι (ἀπό)	ἀποστήσω	ἀπέστην	ἀπέστησα	ἀφέστηκα	ἀπεστάθην
ἐνίστημι (ἐν)	ἐνστήσω	ἐνέστην	ἐνέστησα	ἐνέστηκα	ἐνεστάθην
ἐξίστημι (ἐκ)	ἐκστήσω	ἐξέστην	ἐξέστησα	ἐξέστηκα	ἐξεστάθην
ἐφίστημι (ἐπί)	ἐπιστήσω	ἐπέστην	ἐπέστησα	ἐφέστηκα	ἐπεστάθην
καθίστημι (κατά)	καταστήσω	κατέστην	κατέστησα	καθέστηκα	κατεστάθην
μεθίστημι (μετά)	μεταστήσω	μετέστην	μετέστησα	μεθέστηκα	μετεστάθην
παρίστημι (παρά)	παραστήσω	παρέστην	παρέστησα	παρέστηκα	παρεστάθην
προΐστημι (πρό)	προστήσω	προϋστην	προϋστησα	προέστηκα	προεστάθην
συνίστημι (σύν)	συστήσω	συνέστην	συνέστησα	συνέστηκα	συνεστάθην

#### Notes

1. From the conjugation of ἵστημι in §41.3, note that the Strong and Weak Aorist have *smooth* breathings which is why prepositions ending in a vowel (refer to Lesson 11) retain the π or τ, e.g. ἐπέστην.
2. On the other hand, note that because the Present and the Perfect have *rough* breathings, the prepositions ending in a vowel change the π or τ to a φ or θ, e.g. μεθέστηκα.
3. The Perfect Passive is rare.
4. Note also that προ + ε → πρου

### 41.6.2 Infinitive

	Present	Future	St Aorist	Wk Aorist	Perfect	Aor. Pass
ἀνθίστημι	ἀνθιστάναι	ἀντιστήσῃν	ἀντιστῆναι	ἀντιστῆσαι	ἀνθιστηκέναι	ἀντιστήσασθαι
ἀνίστημι	ἀνιστάναι	ἀναστήσῃν	ἀναστῆναι	ἀναστῆσαι	ἀνεστηκέναι	ἀναστήσασθαι
ἀφίστημι	ἀφιστάναι	ἀποστήσῃν	ἀποστῆναι	ἀποστῆσαι	ἀφεστηκέναι	ἀποστήσασθαι

ένιστημι	ένιστάναι	ένστησειν	ένστηῆναι	ένστησαι	ένεστηκέναι	ένστησασθαι
έξιστημι	έξιστάναι	έκστησειν	έκστηῆναι	έκστησαι	έξεστηκέναι	έκστησασθαι
έφιστημι	έφιστάναι	έπιστήσειν	έπιστηῆναι	έπιστησαι	έφεστηκέναι	έπιστήσασθαι
καθίστημι	καθιστάναι	καταστήσειν	καταστηῆναι	καταστησαι	καθεστηκέναι	καταστήσασθαι
μεθίστημι	μεθιστάναι	μεταστήσειν	ματαστηῆναι	μεταστησαι	μεθστηκέναι	μεταστήσασθαι
παρίστημι	παριστάναι	παραστήσειν	παραστηῆναι	παραστησαι	παραστηκέναι	παραστήσασθαι
προίστημι	προϊστάναι	προστήσειν	προστηῆναι	προστησαι	προστηκέναι	προστήσασθαι
συνίστημι	συνιστάναι	συστήσειν	συστηῆναι	συστησαι	συστηκέναι	συστήσασθαι

### 41.6.3 Imperative

	Present	St Aorist	Wk Aorist	Perfect	Aorist Pass
άνθιστημι	άνθιστη	άντιστηθι	άντιστησον	άνθέστηκε	άντιστάθητι
άνιστημι	άνιστη	άναστηθι	άνάστησον	άνέστηκε	άναστάθητι
άφιστημι	άφιστη	άπόστηθι	άπόστησον	άφέστηκε	άποστάθητι
ένιστημι	ένιστη	ένστηθι	ένστησον	ένέστηκε	ένστάθητι
έξιστημι	έξιστη	έκστηθι	έκστησον	έξέστηκε	έκστάθητι
έφιστημι	έφιστη	έπίστηθι	έπίστησον	έφέστηκε	έπιστάθητι
καθίστημι	καθίστη	κατάστηθι	κατάστησον	καθέστηκε	καταστάθητι
μεθίστημι	μεθίστη	μετάστηθι	μετάστησον	μεθέστηκε	μεταστάθητι
παρίστημι	παρίστη	παράστηθι	παράστησον	παρέστηκε	παραστάθητι
προίστημι	προίστη	πρόστηθι	πρόστησον	προέστηκε	προστάθητι
συνίστημι	συνίστη	σύστηθι	σύστησον	συνέστηκε	συστάθητι

## 41.7 The uses of ἵστημι in the New Testament

Here are some examples of the use of ἵστημι

### 41.7.1 Transitive

ἔστησεν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸ πτερύγιον τοῦ ἱεροῦ.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 4:5

He stood him on the pinnacle of the temple.

ὁ δὲ Ἰησοῦς εἰδῶς τὸν διαλογισμὸν τῆς καρδίας, ἐπιλαβόμενος παιδίον ἔστησεν αὐτὸ παρ' ἑαυτῶ

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 9:47

Jesus, knowing the debate in their hearts, took up a child and stood the child before him.

### 41.7.2 Intransitive

πᾶς ὁ ὄχλος ἐπὶ τὸ αἰγιαλὸν εἰστήκει

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 13:2

The whole crowd was standing on the shore

ἔρχεται ὁ Ἰησοῦς τῶν θυρῶν κεκλεισμένων καὶ ἔσθη εἰς τὸ μέσον

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 20:26

Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood amongst them

### 41.7.3 In compounds

#### 41.7.3.1 ἀνίστημι

καὶ λέγει αὐτῷ· ἀκολούθει μοι. καὶ ἀναστὰς ἠκολούθησεν αὐτῷ

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 9:9

And he said to him, Follow me. And having got up, he followed him.

ὅτι ἐγὼ καταλύσω τὸν ναὸν τοῦτον τὸν χειροποίητον καὶ διὰ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ἄλλον ἀναστήσω ἀχειροποίητον

Κατὰ Μάρκον 14:58

that I shall destroy this temple made by hands and in three days I shall raise another not made by hands.

#### 41.7.3.2 καθίστημι

ἄνθρωπε, τίς με κατέστησεν κριτὴν ἢ μεριστὴν ἐφ' ὑμᾶς;

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 12:14

Sir, who appointed me as a judge or as a divider over you?

ἐπισκέψασθε δέ, ἀδελφοί, ἄνδρας ἐξ ὑμῶν μαρτυρουμένους ἑπτὰ, πλήρεις πνεύματος καὶ σοφίας οὓς καταστήσομεν ἐπὶ τῆς χρείας ταύτης

Πράξεις Ἀποστόλων 6:3

Brothers, examine for yourselves seven men out of you of good character, full of the spirit and wisdom whom we shall appoint for this need.

## 41.8 Opening Prayer

Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα

Κύριε, σήμερον ἐπιτηδεύσομεν τὸ ῥῆμα ἴσθημι ὀνόματι ὃ χαλεπὸς λόγος ἐστίν. βοήθει ἡμῖν κύριε ὥστε μανθάνομεν ἀκριβῶς τε καὶ ταχέως.

Ἀμήν

Lord, today we shall be studying the verb ἴσθημι which is a difficult word. Help us, Lord, so that we learn accurately and quickly.

Amen.

## 41.9 Exercises – A

### 41.9.1 Translate into English

1. ὧδε ἔστηκα. οὐ δύναμαι ἀλλοῦ πράξαι.
2. κατέστησά σε διδάσκαλον εἰς τὸ διδάσκειν τούτους τοὺς μαθητάς.
3. ἰδοῦ, ἐφίστημι τὸ σημεῖόν μου ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ σου.
4. τετέλεκα τὸ ἔργον ὥστε δεῖ σέ με ἀποδοῦναι τὸν μίσθον.
5. δεῖ ἡμᾶς παραστήσαι σώματα ἡμῶν τῷ θεῷ.
6. προστήτω τῷ Παύλῳ.
7. προστήσω τὸ τροπαῖον πρὸ τοῦ ναοῦ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις.
8. τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκστήσω τοῦτο τὸ ἱερόν εἰς τὸν ἄλλον τόπον.
9. τίς στήσεται ἐπὶ τῷ ὄρει Σιον ὀνόματι; αὐτὸς ἔχει χεῖρας κάθαρας.
10. ἐπεὶ ἀντέπε ὁ Ἰησοῦς τοῖς Φαρισαίοις, ἀντέστησαν αὐτῷ.
11. οὐκ ἀποστήσω τὰ τέρματα τοῦ γείτονός μου.
12. ὁ Σατανᾶς ἔστησε τὸν Ἰησοῦν ἐπὶ τῷ πτερυγίῳ τοῦ ναοῦ.

### 41.9.2 Translate into Greek

1. We stood outside the city and waited for our friends.
2. The king, by whom we were sent to give this message, has appointed this man as the general.
3. I was ordered by him to raise up a monument.
4. Father, I place<sup>1</sup> into your hands the things I cannot do.
5. True friends come up and stand by us.
6. The disciples astonished the crowd with powerful teaching.
7. I placed the church upon a hill outside the city.
8. We received the messages which were written by priests.
9. We came upon the enemy by night and conquered them.
10. I shall make my witness stand before all the people.
11. In the assembly I stood up and opposed the chief priest.
12. Moses struck the rock with his staff and water came out.

<sup>1</sup> Use τίθημι

## 41.10 Exercises – B

### 41.10.1 Translate into English

1. στήσομεν μνήμα ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ εἰς τὸ μνημονεύειν τῶν φίλων ἡμῶν.
2. ἄγγελος κυρίου ἐπέστη αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐξεπλήσσοντο.
3. καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ πέτρᾳ καταστήσω τὴν ἐκκλησίαν μου.
4. ὁ στρατιώτης τὸν δοῦλον ἐπάταξε τῷ ξίφει αὐτοῦ.
5. κολώνην ἀναστήσομεν ἐπὶ τούτον τὸν τόπον καὶ χαίρησομεν, νενικήκαμεν γὰρ ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν.
6. ἀνὴρ τις κατέβη πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Ἱερουσαλὴμ ὀνόματι εἰς τὸ ἰδεῖν τὸν ναόν.
7. συνέστησα τοὺς φίλους μου εἰς τὸ ἐπαινεῖν τὸν θεόν.
8. ἐπέστησε μεῖζον μνημεῖον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον.
9. τῷ καιρῷ τοῦ πειρασμοῦ, παρέστη ἡμῖν ὁ Κύριος.
10. οἱ παῖδες ἤλθον καὶ ἔθεσαν τὰ δῶρα αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ.

11. εκείνη ἡ ἡμέρα ἔσται ἡμέρα τοῦ σκότους, οὐ τοῦ φότος καὶ στήσω τὸ σημεῖόν μου ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς.
12. ἡμεῖς συνέστημεν καὶ ἐνικήσαμεν τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ἡμῶν.

#### 41.10.2 Translate into Greek

1. With his great hand the Lord brought the sons of Israel out of Egypt.
2. I shall make you stand before my people and you will show my way to them.
3. Behold, I stand at the door and knock.
4. The herald came and stood in the assembly and proclaimed a message from the king.
5. He placed his hands upon the eyes of the blind man so that the blind man saw.
6. He ordered me to stand at the temple and wait.
7. I introduced the teacher whom I brought from Athens to the students.
8. Peter, who was filled with the Spirit, stood in front of the crowd and preached the good news.
9. We brought forward the fruits of the field which we had gathered.
10. The saints resisted the temptations of the devil.
11. In Ephesus, Paul stood in front of the crowd and preached concerning Jesus.
12. Jesus stood in the midst of a hostile crowd.

#### 41.11 Exercise – C

##### 41.11.1 Translate into English

Καὶ ἀπέστειλεν Ἀχαβ εἰς πάντα Ἰσραὴλ καὶ ἐπισυνήγαγεν πάντας τοὺς προφῆτας εἰς ὄρος Καρμήλιον. καὶ εἶπεν Ἥλιου αὐτοῖς· ἕως πότε χωλανεῖτε ἐπ’ ἀμφοτέροις ταῖς ἰγνύαις; ἢ κύριος ὁ θεὸς ἐστὶν ἢ ὁ Βααλ ὁ θεὸς ἐστὶν. καὶ οὐκ ἀπεκρίθη ὁ λαός. καὶ εἶπεν Ἥλιου πάλιν· ἐγὼ ὑπολέλυμαι προφήτης τοῦ κυρίου μόνον ἀλλ’ οἱ προφῆται τοῦ Βααλ τετρακόσιοι καὶ πενήκοντα. ἐγὼ ἔχω βόας δύο· ἓνα τοῖς προφήταις τοῦ Βααλ, καὶ ἓνα ἐμοί. ἔκλεξε ἓνα τοῖς προφήταις τοῦ Βααλ 5  
καὶ γὰρ λήμψομαι τὸν ἄλλον.

Ἐτοιμασέτωσαν τὸν βοῦν καὶ βαλέτωσαν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων ἀλλὰ μὴ πῦρ βαλέτωσαν. καὶ ἐγὼ ποιήσω τὸν ἄλλον βοῦν καὶ βαλῶ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων καὶ οὐ πῦρ βαλῶ. καὶ καλέτωσαν οἱ προφῆται τοῦ Βααλ ἐν ὀνόματι τοῦ θεοῦ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγὼ καλήσω ἐν ὀνόματι τοῦ θεοῦ μου. καὶ ὁ θεὸς ὃς πέμπει πῦρ ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων, αὐτός ἐστὶν ὁ ἀληθὴς θεός. καὶ εἶπε ὁ λαός· τοῦτο τὸ ρῆμα καλὸν 10  
ἐστίν.

Οἱ οὖν προφῆται τοῦ Βααλ καλοῦσι τὸν θεὸν αὐτῶν. ὃ Βααλ, ἡμῖν ἀποκρίνου. οὐδεὶς ἀπεκρίθη. καὶ πάλιν ἔκραξαν· ὃ Βααλ, ἡμῖν ἀποκρίνου. ἀλλ’ οὐδεὶς ἀπεκρίθη. ὁ δὲ Ἥλιου αὐτῶν κατεφρόνει, καὶ εἶπε· μήπως ὁ θεὸς ὑμῶν ἐν ὕψῳ ἢ πορεύεται· δεῖ ὑμᾶς κράζειν φωνῇ μείζονι. ἔκραξαν οὖν φωνῇ 15  
μείζονι καὶ ἑαυτοὺς ἔτεμον, ἀλλ’ οὐδεὶς ἀπεκρίθη.

Τέλος δὲ ὁ Ἥλιου εἶπε τῷ λαῷ· ἔλθετε ὧδε. καὶ εἶπε, λάβετε τέσσαρας ὑδρίας ὑδάτος καὶ χέετε αὐτὰ ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων. καὶ τοῦτο ἐποίησαν. πάλιν εἶπε ὁ Ἥλιου, χέετε ὑδῶρ ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων. καὶ τοῦτο ἐποίησαν. τῇ τριτῇ εἶπε ὁ Ἥλιου· χέετε ὑδῶρ ἐπὶ τῶν ξύλων. καὶ τοῦτο ἐποίησαν.

Τότε δὲ ἐκαλήσε ὁ Ἥλιου εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν· κύριε, ὁ θεὸς τοῦ Ἀβρααμ καὶ Ἰσαακ καὶ Ἰσραὴλ, 20  
ἄκουσόν μου σήμερον ἐν πυρὶ ὥστε πάντα τὸν λαὸν γινώσκειν ὅτι συ εἶ ὁ ἀληθὴς θεὸς τοῦ Ἰσραὴλ. καὶ ἔπεσεν πῦρ παρὰ θεοῦ ἀπὸ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ καὶ καίεται ὁ βοῦς. πᾶς οὖν ὁ λαὸς ἔπεσε ἐπὶ τὸ πρόσωπον αὐτῶν καὶ εἶπε· ἀληθῶς κύριός ἐστιν ὁ θεός.

### 41.11.2 Vocabulary for Exercise C

ἀποστέλλω, ἀποστελλῶ, ἀπεστείλα	I send out	apostle
Ἀχααβ	Ahab	
Ἡλίου	Elijah	
ἐπισυνάγω, ἐπισυνάξω, ἐπισυνήγαγον	collect together, I	
Καρμήλιον	Carmel	Unusually, for Hebrew names in the LXX this has an accent
χωλαίνω, χωλανῶ	am lame, I; hobble, I	Refer to Lesson 29
ἄμφοτερος, -η, -ον	both, either	
ἰγνύα ἥ	the part behind the thigh and the knee, the ham	
Βααλ	Baal	
ὑπολείπω, ὑπολείψω, ὑπέλιπον, ὑπέλοιπα, ὑπελέλυμαι, ὑπεληφθην	leave remaining, I	
τετρακόσιοι	Four Hundred	This is declined like <b>ἀγαθός</b>
πεντήκοντα	Fifty	This is indeclinable
βοῦς ὁ, βοός	bull	The accusative plural is <b>βοούς</b>
ἐκλέγω, ἐκλεξῶ	choose, I	
ξύλον τό	wood	Usually, wood cut for firewood
καταφρονέω	despise, I	Takes a genitive of the person despised
μήπως	perhaps	
ὑπνος ὁ	sleep, slumber	
τέμνω, τεμῶ, ἔτεμον	cut, I	
ὑδρία ἥ	pitcher, bucket	
χέω	pour, I	In Attic, dissyllabic verbs (such as <b>χέω</b> ) do <b>not</b> contract except for εε and εει. This rule is generally observed in the LXX, but in the Koine it is extended to cover those forms as well.
καίω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα	burn, I	



## Lesson 42 – Revision of Verbs – A Retrospective View

### 42.1 Lesson 42 Outline

- 42.2 Introduction
- 42.3 English Verb Structure
- 42.4 Contractions
- 42.5 Some notes on the structure of the Greek Verb
- 42.6 Opening Prayer
- 42.7 Vocabulary 42
- 42.8 Exercises A
  - 42.8.1 Translate into English
  - 42.8.2 Translate into Greek
- 42.9 Exercises B
  - 42.9.1 Translate into English
  - 42.9.2 Translate into Greek
- 42.10 Exercises C

### Προσευχὴ τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, σήμερον ἀναγνώσομεθα τὸ βιβλίον τοῦ Ἑβδομήκοντα Ἰωνας ὀνόματι. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ ἀναγινώσκειν, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπιτηδεύειν τὰ τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσας ῥήματα ἵνα εἰδῶμεν ἅμεινον αὐτά. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν κύριε, ὥστε συνιέντες φανερῶς δυνάμεθα ἀναγινώσκειν ῥᾶον τὴν Καινὴν Διαθήκην καὶ τὰ βιβλία τοῦ Ἑβδομήκοντα.

χαίρομεν δὴ μαθάνοντες ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ἐν ἧ ἐνεθουσίασας τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ.  
Ἀμήν.

A verb has a hard time enough of it in this world when it's all together. It's downright inhuman to split it up. But that's just what those Germans (Greeks) do. They take part of a verb and put it down here, like a stake, and they take the other part of it and put it away over yonder like another stake, and between these two limits they just shovel in German (Greek).

Address at dinner of the Nineteenth Century Club,  
New York, 20 November 1900

to the toast 'The Disappearance of Literature'

Mark Twain

## 42.2 Introduction

The object of this Lesson is to revise all tenses of the Greek Verb.

At this stage in the Course all tenses have been learned in the Indicative, Imperative and Infinitive. Although Participles, the Subjunctive and the Optative are yet to be taught, the next Lesson will mention them briefly so as to provide an initial overview.

This Lesson will also describe the tenses and moods of English and will also refer to Latin.

## 42.3 English Verb Structure

Though this has been called English Verb Structure, these general remarks apply to all Indo-European languages; Semitic Languages are somewhat different.

There are two main divisions in Verb Structure:

- The Verb Finite
- The Verb Infinitive

Each of these will be explained in turn.

### 42.3.1 The Verb Finite

By the phrase 'the Verb Finite' is to be understood that the verb is limited by person. Thus the sentence 'He sees John', is an example of a finite verb, 'He sees'.

There are five parts to the Verb Finite:

- Person
- Tense
- Mood
- Voice
- Aspect

#### 42.3.1.1 Person

The person is the subject of the verb. Thus in the phrase, 'He sees', 'He' is the subject. In Grammatical terms this is called third person singular. There are three persons, first second and third corresponding to 'I', 'Thou' and 'He', 'She' or 'It' for the singular and 'We', 'You' and 'They' for the Plural.

In Older languages (Classical and Homeric Greek, Sanskrit, Akkadian and Old Church Slavonic are examples) and some modern languages (Lithuanian and Slovenian are two examples) there is a third number called the Dual, meaning the subject is TWO. The Dual does not occur in the New Testament or the LXX.

#### 42.3.1.2 Tense

The tense of the verb describes (in the Indicative, see below) the time at which an action takes place.

Although the concept of tense refers to time, and hence to Past, Present and Future, there are in fact nine tenses in English as the table shows below. In Greek there are only six tenses (there is a seventh, the Future perfect, which occurs in Homeric and Classical Greek, but this does not appear in the New Testament) and in Latin there are also six tenses.

In the following table I have used 'I love' in English, 'amo' in Latin and 'φιλέω' in Greek. The first table is for the Active Voice, the second table is for the Passive Voice. See the section on 'Voice' next.

The correspondence between the tenses in English, Latin and Greek is not as precise as one might expect. These tables are at best a guide.

Active Voice			
	Past	Present	Future
Continuous	(Imperfect) I was loving amabam ἐφίλουν	(Present Continuous) I am loving amo φιλῶ	(Future Continuous) I shall be loving - -
Momentary	(Past or Aorist) I loved amavi ἐφίλησα	(Present) I love - -	(Future) I shall love amabo φίλησω
State	(Pluperfect) I had loved amaveram ἐπεφίληκειν	(Perfect) I have loved amavi πεφίληκα	(Future Perfect) I shall have loved amavero -

Passive Voice			
	Past	Present	Future
Continuous	(Imperfect) I was being loved amabar ἐφιλούμην	(Present Continuous) I am being loved amor φιλοῦμαι	(Future Continuous) I shall be being loved - -
Momentary	(Past or Aorist) I was loved amatus sum ἐφιλῆθην	(Present) I am loved - -	(Future) I shall be loved amabor -
State	(Pluperfect) I had been loved amatus eram ἐπεφίλημην	(Perfect) I have been loved amatus sum πεφίλημαι	(Future Perfect) I shall have been loved amatus ero -

Notes:

It will be observed that not all tenses exist in Latin and Greek. There are also some other Indo-European languages that distinguish between the Present Continuous and Present Momentary; Spanish, Catalan, Portuguese and Irish are some examples.

Because English forms its tenses by the use of auxiliary verbs, many more combinations are possible. There are other tenses besides these in English. For example, we would often say 'I do love' which has an emphatic sense. Another tense is shown by 'I used to love' with the implication that I no longer do so. In Latin and Greek this is usually rendered by the Imperfect.

For Latin notice that the Perfect of amo, (amaui) is shown both as a Past and a Perfect tense; Greek does not have this problem. In Latin, the Perfect tense can be either Primary or Historic.

For simplicity, in this table, the Middle Voice in Greek has been ignored. See the section on 'Voice' below.

#### 42.3.1.3 Mood

According to the Oxford English Dictionary, which is quoted here, mood 'is any one of the several groups of forms in the conjugation of a verb which serve to indicate the function in which the verb is used, i.e. whether it expresses a predication, a command, a wish or the like; that quality of the verb which depends on the question to which of these groups its form belongs.'

In English and Latin there are three moods of the verb:

- Indicative
- Imperative
- Subjunctive

Greek has another mood called the Optative; in many Grammar books the Subjunctive and Optative are grouped together as ‘Conjunctive’; the Subjunctive is the Primary Conjunctive, the Optative is the Historic Conjunctive.

Some other languages also have an Optative: Sanskrit and Old Church Slavonic are two. The Optative is not used very much in the New Testament or the Septuagint, but it was extensively used in Classical and Homeric Greek.

So following the definition from the OED:

The Indicative mood makes a definite statement, thus in the sentence ‘He opens the gate’ the verb ‘opens’ is in the Indicative mood.

The Imperative mood gives a command such as ‘Go!’ or ‘Come!’. In English the Imperative mood is confined, in terms of the conjugation of the verb, to the second person. In the Authorised Version the second person singular is often emphasised by ‘Go thou’.

In Greek however, the Imperative also has a conjugation for the third person; this is best translated into English as ‘Let him come’ or ‘Let him hear’. An example from Greek is ἀκουέτω – let him hear (or let her hear).

Latin and Greek do not have a first person imperative as such; instead the subjunctive is used. An example of this is the difference between:

εὐχόμεθα – we are praying

εὐχώμεθα – let us pray

As can be seen the construction in English is to say ‘Let us go (to the theatre)’. These statements are also called ‘exhortations’. The construction in the Subjunctive is known as the ‘Hortatory Subjunctive’.

The Subjunctive mood exists as a separate conjugation in both Latin and Greek (and German and many other modern European languages), but, except for the verb ‘to be’, not in English. The following table shows the conjugation of the verb ‘to be’ for the Indicative, Imperative and Subjunctive:

	Indicative		Imperative		Subjunctive	
Present	I am	We are			I be	We be
	Thou art	You are	Be thou	Be	Thou beest	You be
	He/she/it is	They are			He/she/it be	They be
Past	I was	We were			I were	We were
	Thou wast	You were			Thou wert	You were
	He was	They were			He/she/it were	They were

In English the use of the Subjunctive is mostly confined to the rather formulaic statement ‘If I were you’, which is a example of the protasis (first part) of a conditional statement in the subjunctive mood. Sometimes one might see ‘If he do this well, he will be honoured’, which is an example of the subjunctive used in another verb, but this is not usual nowadays, it being more normal to say ‘If he does this well, he will be honoured’.

Fowler, in ‘Modern English Usage’, first published in 1926, lists four ‘categories’ of the use of Subjunctives and these are:

- Alive
- Revivals
- Survivals
- Arrivals

There is not sufficient space in this Lesson to deal adequately with his masterly discussion, so I fear that I must refer the reader to the essay itself.

For our Greek course, we will be studying the Subjunctive in Lessons 49 – 51; it does occur quite extensively in the New Testament.

Having said that English does not use the Subjunctive very much these days, I have noticed that the momentary present, described in the table above, is not necessarily always Indicative.

For example, consider the verb ‘to eat’. If I say ‘I am eating strawberries’ this is a definite statement about an action taking place now; I am actually eating strawberries at this moment. But if I say ‘I eat strawberries’, this does not mean (usually) that I am eating strawberries at the moment, what it really implies is that I would eat strawberries if they were offered to me; a stronger way of putting this is to say ‘I do eat strawberries’. So the use of the ‘momentary present’ is not always purely Indicative; quite how to describe it I do not know. Is it Subjunctive? One person has suggested ‘Generic Present’.

However, note that this remark does not apply to all verbs.

#### 42.3.1.4 Voice

English and Latin have two voices, Active and Passive. The intent of the voice of the verb is that in the Active voice, the subject is performing the action, whereas in the Passive voice the subject is having an action performed upon him (or her or it).

Consider these two sentences which are really saying the same thing:

I am building a house

οικοδομῶ οἰκίαν

A house is being built by me

οἰκία οικοδομεῖται ὑπ’ ἐμοῦ

In the first sentence the subject (I) is performing the action; thus the verb is in the Active Voice.

In the second sentence the subject (the house) is NOT performing the action; the action in this case is being performed upon it and so the verb is in the Passive Voice. Notice also that the subject in the first sentence has now become the agent (by me) in the second sentence. In Greek the agent (in this context) is expressed by ὑπό followed by the genitive; in Latin by a (or ab) + the ablative for a person or only the ablative for an object.

Greek has a third voice called the Middle. The form of the Middle is the same as the passive in all tenses except the Future and Aorist.

The Middle Voice has various meanings but the main idea is that of self-advantage. The chief uses are:

- To do a thing for oneself. For example, Active: γράφω τὸ μαθήμα, I am writing the lesson. If this is changed to the Middle so that we write γράφομαι τὸ μαθήμα, I am writing the lesson *for myself*. Another interpretation is that I am getting the lesson written for myself, e.g. by a slave. The verb is shown to be Middle because (in this case) it has a direct object.
- To get a thing done for oneself. διδάσκομαι τὸν υἱόν, I get my son taught.
- To do a thing to oneself. λούομαι, I wash (i.e. I wash myself.)

Some verbs only have a conjugation for the Middle Voice; other verbs have conjugations for all three voices.

### 42.3.1.5 Aspect

The tables in §42.3.1.2 imply the concept of Aspect. According to the OED, aspect ‘in the Slavonic languages a verbal form of which the function is to express action or being in respect of its inception, duration or completion; by extension applied to such forms in other languages’.

In Greek there are three aspects:

- Continuous
- Momentary
- A state

The crucial thing to note about Greek (and this applies especially to Classical Greek, but also to the Koine) is that differences in tense coincide with differences in aspect. Thus:

- For the Present and Imperfect, the aspect is continuous; this is why ‘φιλέω’ means I am loving (continuous) rather than ‘I love’ (momentary)
- For the Aorist, the aspect is momentary, so ‘ἐφίλουν’ (Imperfect) is ‘I was loving’, but ‘ἐφίλησα’ is ‘I loved’. It should not be inferred from this (as has been done in the past) that whenever the Aorist is used in the New Testament that it means that the event described happened only once; it might have happened only once, but the Aorist (the word literally means ‘indefinite’ or ‘unlimited’ from ‘ἀόριστος’) only says that the event occurred; how many times is not stated.
- For the Future, the tense is outside the normal aspectual system, unless it be regarded as an aspect all by itself.
- For the Perfect and Pluperfect the aspect is that of a state. For the Perfect tense this is a present state resulting from a past action; for the Pluperfect this is a past state resulting from action previous to the past state.

A good example of the Perfect tense is ‘τετέλεσται’ in Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 19:30. This is often translated as ‘it is finished’ or ‘it is completed’. A more expansive way of saying this would be to say ‘it is now in a present state of having in the past been completed’. But this is a gross over translation!

It is worth noting that the Pluperfect is not often used. For the Future Perfect (not found in the New Testament) this would be a future state from an action; and this action could be past, present or future.

### 42.3.2 The Verb Infinitive

The phrase ‘Verb Infinitive’ covers those conjugations of the verb which are not limited by a person. There are two:

- The Infinitive
- Participles

#### 42.3.2.1 The Infinitive

The Infinitive in English is straightforward, the preposition ‘to’ is placed before the verb and this becomes the Infinitive. Because, (in English) the Infinitive has two words and not one, there is the possibility, much frowned upon, of ‘Splitting the Infinitive’ usually by placing an adverb between the ‘to’ and the verb. Thus in the (in)famous example of Star Trek ‘to boldly go’ instead of ‘to go boldly’ or ‘boldly to go’.

Latin and Greek (and German, French and other Indo-European languages) do not have this problem, since in those languages the infinitive is one word, for example, ‘amare’ or ‘φιλεῖν’.

It is possible in English to have different tenses of the infinitive though this can sometimes be a bit clumsy. Here is a table showing the Infinitives for ‘to love’, amare and φιλεῖν:

Tense	English	Latin	Greek
Past	(To have loved)	-	φίλησαι
Present	To love	amare	φιλεῖν
Perfect	To have loved	amauisse	πεφιλήκεναι
Future	To be about to love	amaturus esse	φιλησειν

#### Notes

It was very difficult to think of a way of expressing a Past Infinitive in English.

Both Latin and Greek have a future Infinitive, and this is difficult to render in English; the above example has been derived from Kennedy's Revised Latin Primer.

Note that the correspondence given above for the Perfect is far from exact. The perfect infinitive in Greek has (as noted above) very much the notion of a present state resulting from a past action.

#### 42.3.2.2 Participles

Participles will be discussed fully in Lessons 44 – 46, this is merely introduce the concepts.

Participles in English are quite straightforward. The following table shows participles in English, Latin and Greek.

Tense	English	Latin	Greek
Past	(having loved)	-	φίλησας
Present	loving	amans	φιλῶν
Perfect	loved	amatus	πεφιλήκως
Future		amaturus	φιλήσων

Incidentally, the Latin participle 'amatus' is passive, not active

Participles in English do not change their form according to number, case and gender. So we can have sentences like this:

Having done this, they went out.

Having done this, he went out.

In these two sentences the first part 'having done this' does not change even though the first sentence refers to the plural whereas the second sentence refers to the singular.

There are several differences to this in both Latin and Greek:

- In both Latin and Greek, participles are declined like adjectives according to number, case and gender. So in the two sentences above, the first sentence in Greek would decline the participle so that it would be plural. In Greek (Latin has different complications), the two sentences would look like this:
  - τοῦτο ποιησάντες, ἐξέβησαν
  - τοῦτο ποιησὰς, ἐξέβη.
- Greek has many participles, but Latin has very few. It would not be possible to translate the above sentences into Latin directly; the sentence would need to be 'turned' as follows:
  - These things having been done, they went out
  - These things having been done, he went out
 and then one can use a construction called the 'Ablative Absolute'.
- Another difference in the use of participles as between Greek (and Latin) and English is the use of the tenses. Consider the following two sentences:

- a. Crossing the bridge, he fell into the river.
- b. Crossing the road he went into the house.

In the first example, the action in the second clause (he fell into the river) occurred while he was crossing the bridge. The tense of the participle in Greek (and Latin) is therefore the present tense. In other words, the present tense is used for actions that occur *at the same time* as the action in the first clause.

However, in the second example, the action in the second clause (he went into the house) occurred *after* crossing the road. Strictly speaking, the sentence *should* read:

Having crossed the road he went into the house.

In this case, the tense of the participle in Greek (Latin in this case is the same, but for a different reason) will be the Aorist. In other words the Aorist participle is used when the action in the second clause occurs *after* the action in the first clause.

## 42.4 Contractions

Certain combinations of vowels contract to one syllable because it is easier to pronounce them. These contractions were introduced very early on in this course (Lesson 10) with the verbs τιμάω, φιλέω and δηλόω. However, such contractions do not only occur with verbs but also, depending on the declension, with nouns and adjectives. It is very useful to know what these contractions are and here is a table of them.

It is also worth knowing which vowels are long and which are short.

Short vowels: ε, ο

Long vowels: η, ω

The vowels, α, ι, and υ can be either short or long.

In this table (which has been derived and expanded from Abbot and Mansfield: A Primer of Greek Grammar) these latter vowels are marked with a macron (ˉ) where they are long.



Combination	Result	Examples	
		Verbs	Nouns and Adjectives
α α	ᾱ		ἄατος becomes ἄτος
α ε	ᾱ	τίμαε becomes τίμα	
α η	ᾱ	τιμάητον becomes τιμάτον	
α ο	ω	τιμάομεν becomes τιμάωμεν	
α ω	ω	τιμάωμεν becomes τιμάωμεν	
α ει	α	τιμάει becomes τιμά	
α οι	ῶ	τιμάοιμι becomes τιμάωμι	
α ου	ω	τιμάου becomes τιμάω	
α η	α	τιμάης becomes τιμάς	
ε α	η		γένεα becomes γένη
ε ε	ει	φίλεε becomes φίλει	
ε η	η	φιλέητον becomes φιλέητον	
ε ο	ου	φιλέομεν becomes φιλέωμεν	
ε ω	ω	φιλέω becomes φιλέω	γενέ(σ)ων becomes γενῶν
ε αι	η	τύπτει becomes τύπτει	
ε ει	ει	φιλέει becomes φιλέει	
ε οι	οι	φιλέοιμι becomes φιλέωμι	
ε ου	ου	φιλέουσι becomes φιλέωσι	
ε η	η	φιλεης becomes φιλεῖς	
η αι	η	λύηαι becomes λύει	
ο α	ω		αἰδία becomes αἰδῶ
ο ε	ου	δηλόετον becomes δηλόετον	
ο η	ω	δηλόητον becomes δηλόητον	
ο ο	ου	δηλόομεν becomes δηλόωμεν	
ο ω	ω	δηλόωμεν becomes δηλόωμεν	
ο ει	οι	δηλόει becomes δηλόει	
ο ου	ου	δηλόου becomes δηλόου	
ο η	οι	δηλόη becomes δηλόει	

## 42.5 Some notes on the structure of the Greek Verb

This has been divided into seven sections:

- Tenses and Moods
- The augment
- The meaning of the tenses in different moods of the verb
- Formation of the Second or Strong Aorist
- Formation of the contracted Future

- Use of Prepositions in verbs
- Summary of endings of Greek Verbs

### 42.5.1 Tenses and Moods

The following table shows the possible tenses for each mood. Note that not all tense/mood combinations exist in the New Testament, and some combinations (for example the Future Participle and Perfect Subjunctive) are rare. Tenses that are rare in the New Testament are shown in italics; those that do not occur at all are in brackets.

Indicative	Imperative	Subjunctive	Optative	Infinitive	Participle
Present	Present	Present	Present	Present	Present
Imperfect					
Future			(Future)	<i>Future</i>	<i>Future</i>
Aorist	Aorist	Aorist	Aorist	Aorist	Aorist
Perfect	(Perfect)	<i>Perfect</i>	(Perfect)	(Perfect)	Perfect
Pluperfect					

### 42.5.2 The augment

In the Indicative and *in the Indicative only* the past tenses of the verb are indicated by the addition of an augment or prefix at the beginning of the word. It is worth noting that this feature of Greek is shared by two other Indo-European languages: Sanskrit and Armenian. Thus, λύω, I loose, ἔλυον, I was loosing, ἔλυσα I loosed.

There are TWO types of augment:

- The syllabic augment
- The temporal augment

#### 42.5.2.1 The syllabic augment

The *syllabic* augment prefixes ε to stems beginning with a consonant:

λύω – I loose, ἔλυον – I was loosing  
 φιλῶ - I love, ἐφίλουν – I was loving.

#### 42.5.2.2 The temporal augment

The *temporal* augment lengthens a short initial vowel:

α into η as ἄγω – I lead, ἤγον – I was leading  
 ε into η as ἐθέλω – I wish, ἤθελον – I was wishing  
 ο into ω as ὀνομάζω – I name, ὠνόμαζον, – I was naming  
 ι into ī as ἰκτεῦω – I beseech, ἰκέτευον – I was beseeching  
 υ into ū as - ὑβρίζω – I insult, ὕβριζον - I was insulting

The symbols ι, υ mean the vowel is short; the symbols ī, ū mean that the vowel is long.

Similarly the diphthongs αι, οι and αυ are augmented thus:

αι into η as αἰρέω – I take, ἤρουν – I was taking  
 οι into ω as οἰκτεῖρω – I pity, ὀκτεῖρον – I was pitying  
 αυ into ηυ as αὐξάνω – I increase, ἤξανον – I was increasing

In the perfect tense, if the verb begins with a vowel, the vowel is lengthened, like the temporal augment:

ἀγγέλλω – I announce, ἤγγελα – I have announced

However, as stated above this augment only appears in the Indicative.

Consequently, when forming the Aorist Imperative, the augment must *not* be inserted as in the following:

λύω – I loose, ἔλυσα – I loosed, λύσον – loose (Aorist Imperative)

ἔρχομαι – I come, ἦλθον – I came, ἔλθε – come (Aorist Imperative)

Notice in the last example the ε in the Aorist indicative has become lengthened to η because of the temporal augment (as above), but in the Aorist Imperative, the ε stays as an ε.

### 42.5.3 The meaning of the tenses in different moods of the verb

There is an important distinction to be observed in the meaning of the tenses between the Indicative and the other moods, participles and infinitives.

In the Indicative, a difference in tense implies a difference in time. Thus, the Future Indicative implies a reference to the future and the Imperfect, Aorist and Pluperfect Indicative refer to past time.

In other moods of the verb (Imperative, Subjunctive, Optative) and the verb infinite (Infinitive and Participles) this is not the case. The meaning of the different ‘tenses’ refers, not to time but to the aspect of the verb. Here are some examples:

γίνεσθε ποιήται λογοῦ, μὴ μόνον ἀκρόαται

Be ye doers of the word, not hearers only

The first word here, γίνεσθε, is the present imperative, so the real implication (virtually impossible to render in English) is ‘Be ye and keep on being’. In other words do this lots of times or keep on doing it.

εἴσελθε εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν

Come into the house

The first word, εἴσελθε, is the Aorist Imperative so the implication is ‘Come into the house on this occasion’. It does not make sense to make this a present imperative; one does not continually go into a house. Though it *could* be argued that one goes into a house *regularly*.

For the Infinitive there is one important exception to this and it occurs in Indirect Speech to which we will come later in Lesson 56.

### 42.5.4 Formation of the Second or Strong Aorist

Essentially, the formation of the Second or Strong Aorist is that instead of the normal endings of the Aorist, the endings are those of the Imperfect. The difference between the Imperfect and the Aorist in these verbs is that the Strong Aorist endings (i.e. Imperfect endings) are attached to what is called the verbal stem as opposed to the present stem.

An example of this is the verb ‘βάλλω’. The present stem is ‘βαλλ’ but the verbal stem is ‘βαλ’. Thus we have βάλλω I throw, ἔβαλον I threw. This, by the way, is an example of a Strong Tense in English. Another example is the verb ‘μανθάνω’; the present stem is ‘μανθαν’ but the verbal stem is ‘μαθ’. Hence μανθάνω, I learn, ἔμαθον I learnt, another Strong Tense in English. However, with regard to the last example, there is another more regular form, ‘learned’.

There was a tendency in Koine times (and this process started earlier and can be seen in the LXX) to ‘regularise’ the Aorist tenses and Strong Aorist forms were beginning to change into Weak Aorist forms so instead of writing ‘εἶπον’ (I said *or* they said) one will see ‘εἶπα’ (I said) or ‘εἶπαν’ (they said). Often these two forms will occur very close to each other.

### 42.5.5 Formation of the contracted Future

The contracted Future, which is frequently seen in Liquid and Nasal verbs, for example, μένω, βάλλω, and ἀγγέλλω, arises from the dropping of a σ in the Future Tense. Future Tenses normally have a σ as in λύσω, λύσεις, λύσει, but these verbs have dropped the σ and then contraction of the vowels takes place, so:

μενέσω becomes μενέω which contracts to μενῶ.

It is useful to know about the accentuation of these verbs as the forms for the singular and the third person plural are exactly the same.

#### 42.5.6 Use of Prepositions in verbs

It is very common in Greek to prefix a verb with a preposition, thus changing the meaning of the verb.

Here are some examples:

ἀγγέλλω – I announce

εὐαγγέλλω – I evangelise or I announce well

καταγγέλλω – I denounce or betray

παραγγέλλω – I command

γινώσκω – I know

ἀναγινώσκω – I read

καταγινώσκω – I accuse

In the past tenses and the perfect, the verb changes by the addition of a prefix. This augment is placed between the preposition (there are *some* exceptions, of course) and the main part of the verb thus:

Present	Aorist	Perfect	English
ἀγγέλλω	ἤγγειλα	ἤγγελκα	I announce
καταγγέλλω	κατήγγειλα	κατήγγελκα	I accuse
παραγγέλλω	παρήγγειλα	παρήγγελκα	I command
βάλλω	ἔβαλον	βέβληκα	I throw
ἐκβάλλω	ἐξέβαλον	ἐξεβέβληκα	I throw out
προσβάλλω	προσέβαλον	προσεβέβληκα	I attack
βαίνω	ἔβην	βέβηκα	I go
ἀναβαίνω	ἀνέβην	ἀναβέβηκα	I go up
καταβαίνω	κατέβην	καταβέβηκα	I go down
γινώσκω	ἔγνων	ἔγνωκα	I know
ἀναγινώσκω	ἀνέγνων	ἀνέγνωκα	I read
καταγινώσκω	κατέγνων	κατέγνωκα	I accuse
ἔρχομαι	ἦλθον	ἐλήλυθα	I come
εἰσέρχομαι	εἰσῆλθον	εἰσελήλυθα	I come in
προσέρχομαι	προσῆλθον	προσελήλυθα	I come towards

For verbs which are prefixed by two or more prepositions the augment is placed between the last preposition and the stem, i.e. always before the stem.

#### 42.5.7 Summary of endings of Greek Verbs

The following tables in sections 42.5.7.1 – 42.5.7.4 summarise the endings of the Greek Verb in the Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive and Optative moods:

### 42.5.7.1 Indicative Mood

Voice	Persn	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Pluperfect
Active	S 1	-ω	-ον	-σω	-σα	-κα	-κη
	S 2	-εις	-εις	-σεις	-σας	-κες	-κης
	S 3	-ει	-ε	-σει	-σε	-κε	-κει
	P 1	-ομεν	-ομεν	-σομεν	-σαμεν	-καμεν	-κειμεν
	P 2	-ετε	-ετε	-σετε	-σατε	-κατε	-κειτε
	P 3	-ουσι(ν)	-ον	-σουσι(ν)	-σαν	-κεσαν	-κεισαν ορ -κεσαν
Middle	S 1			-σομαι	-σαμην		
	S 2			-σει ορ ση	-σω		
	S 3			-σεται	-σατο		
	P 1			-σομεθα	-σαμεθα		
	P 2			-σεσθε	-σασθε		
	P 3			-σοντο	-σαντο		
Passive	S 1	-ομαι	-ομην	-θησομαι	-θην	-μαι	
	S 2	-ει ορ η	-ου	-θησει ορ θηση	-θης	-σαι	
	S 3	-εται	-ετο	-θησεται	-θη	-ται	
	P 1	-ομεθα	-ομεθα	-θησομεθα	-θημεν	-μεθα	
	P 2	-εσθε	-εσθε	-θησεσθε	-θητε	-σθε	
	P 3	-ονται	-οντο	-θησονται	-θησαν	-ντο	

### 42.5.8 Imperative Mood

Voice	Persn	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Pluperfect
Active	S 1						
	S 2	-ε			-σον	-κε	
	S 3	-ετω			-σατω	-κετω	
	P 1						
	P 2	-ετε			-σατε	-κετε	
	P 3	-οντων ορ -ετωσαν			-σαντων ορ -σατωσαν	-κοντων	
Middle	S 1				-σαι		
	S 2				-σασθω		
	S 3						
	P 1						
	P 2				-σασθε		
	P 3				-σασθων		
Passive	S 1				-θητι	-σο	
	S 2	-ου			-θητω	-σθω	
	S 3	-εσθω					
	P 1						
	P 2	-εσθε			-θητε	-σθε	
	P 3	-εσθων ορ -εσθωσαν			-θεντων ορ -θετωσαν	-σθων	

#### 42.5.9 Subjunctive Mood

Voice	Persn	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Pluperfect
Active	S 1	-ω			-σω	-κω	
	S 2	-ης			-σης	-κης	
	S 3	-η			-ση	-κη	
	P 1	-ωμεν			-σωμεν	-κωμεν	
	P 2	-ητε			-σητε	-κητε	
	P 3	-ωσι(ν)			-σωσι(ν)	-κωσι(ν)	
Middle	S 1				-σμαι		
	S 2				-σης		
	S 3				-ση		
	P 1				-σωμωθα		
	P 2				-σησθε		
	P 3				-σωνται		
Passive	S 1	-ωμαι			-θω	-μενος ῶ	
	S 2	-η			-θης	-μενος ῆς	
	S 3	-ηται			-θη	-μενος ῆ	
	P 1	-ωμεθα			-θωμεν	-μενοι ῶμεν	
	P 2	-ησθε			-θητε	-μενοι ῆτε	
	P 3	-ωνται			-θωσι(ν)	-μενοι ῶσι(ν)	

#### 42.5.10 Optative Mood

Voice	Persn	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Pluperfect
Active	S 1	-οιμι		-σοιμι	-σαιμι	-κοιμι	
	S 2	-οις		-σοις	-σαις	-κοις	
	S 3	-οι		-σοι	-σαι	-κοι	
	P 1	-οιμεν		-σοιμεν	-σαιμεν	-κοιμεν	
	P 2	-οιτε		-σοιτε	-σαιτε	-κοιτε	
	P 3	-οιεν		-σοιεν	-σαιεν	-κοιεν	
Middle	S 1			-σοιμην	-σαιμην		
	S 2			-σοιο	-σαιο		
	S 3			-σοιτο	-σαιτο		
	P 1			-σοιμεθα	-σαιμεθα		
	P 2			-σοισθε	-σαισθε		
	P 3			-σοιντο	-σαιντο		
Passive	S 1	-οιμην		-θησοιμην	-θειην	-μενος εἶην	
	S 2	-οιο		-θησοιο	-θειης	-μενος εἶης	
	S 3	-οιτο		-θησοιτο	-θειη	-μενος εἶη	
	P 1	-οιμεθα		-θησοιμεθα	-θειμεν	-μενοι εἶμεν	
	P 2	-οισθε		-θησοισθε	-θειτε	-μενοι εἶτε	
	P 3	-οιντο		-θησοιντο	-θειεν	-μενοι εἶεν	

### 42.5.11 Some patterns to assist

The above tables might appear to be rather daunting, but here are some notes which may help:

- The Subjunctive endings tend to follow *primary* tenses whereas the Optative endings follow *historic* tenses
- In the Primary Indicative tenses the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person dual are the same; in the Historic Indicative the 2<sup>nd</sup> person Dual ends in –ον, whereas in the third person it ends in –ην
- A characteristic feature of the Subjunctive is the *lengthening of the vowel in the ending*, thus λύομεν (Indicative) and λύωμεν (Subjunctive)
- A characteristic feature of the Optative is the presence of an ι (λύοιμι etc)

## 42.6 Opening Prayer

### Προσευχή τῷ μαθήματι

εὐχόμεθα.

κύριε, σήμερον ἀναγνώσομεθα τὸ βιβλίον τοῦ Ἑβδομήκοντα Ἰωνας ὀνόματι. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ ἀναγινώσκειν, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπιτηδεύειν τὰ τῆς Ἑλληνικῆς γλῶσσας ῥήματα ἵνα εἰδῶμεν ἅμεινον αὐτά. βοήθει οὖν ἡμῖν κύριε, ὥστε συνιέντες φανερῶς δυνάμεθα ἀναγινώσκειν ῥᾶον τὴν Καινὴν Διαθήκην καὶ τὰ βιβλία τοῦ Ἑβδομήκοντα.

χαίρομεν δὴ μαθάνοντες ταυτὴν τὴν γλῶσσαν ἐν ἣ ἐνεθουσίασας τῇ Καινῇ Διαθήκῃ.  
Ἄμήν.

Let us pray.

Lord today we shall read the Book of Jonah from the Septuagint. But before reading it, we must study the verbs of the Greek Language in order to know them better. Help us therefore, Lord, so that having understood clearly we can read more easily the New Testament and the Septuagint.

We do rejoice in learning this language in which you inspired the New Testament.

Amen.

## 42.7 Vocabulary Lesson 42

ὅσιος, ὅσια, ὅσιον	holy, pure (8)	
συνέδριον, τό	council (22)	
Ξενοφών Ξενοφόντος	Xenophon	
τράπεζα ἢ	table (14)	In Modern Greek this means 'a Bank'.



## 42.8 Exercises – A

### 42.8.1 Translate into English

1. τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐδεξάμην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν σοῦ.
2. οἱ ἄνδρες ἦλθον πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.
3. ἀπέστησαν οἱ μαθηταὶ τοῦ Ἰωάννου τὸ σῶμα.
4. ὦ ἅγιοι, φιλεῖτε πάντας.
5. γινώσκομεν ὅποθεν ἦλθεν.
6. ἐπιστήσω τὰ δῶρα, ἃ ἐδόθη ὑπὸ τοῦ λαοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ.
7. πῶς οἰκοδομήσομεν τούτον τὸν πύργον;
8. δεῖ ἡμᾶς μαθεῖν ὀπόση ἢ πλουσία αὐτοῦ καὶ ὅπως ἐκτήσατο.
9. ἀνέγνωμεν τὴν πρὸς τοὺς Γάλατας ἐπιστολὴν τοῦ Παυλοῦ.
10. ἔπεμψε ἄγγελον πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
11. ἐπέμφθη ἄγγελος πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα
12. βήσεις πρὸς τὴν ἀγοράν;

### 42.8.2 Translate into Greek

1. In order to see the sea, you must climb the hill.
2. In order to cross this river we must find out how wide it is.
3. Tell us where you have come from and what messages you bring.
4. Christ appeared to his disciples in a room and said to them ‘Peace unto you’.
5. Who will be able to stand when he appears?
6. We have seen the Lord!
7. It is written, ‘My house shall be called a house of prayer’.
8. He knew how great and difficult the task was.
9. We wish to speak to Jesus.
10. The king considered whether to attack with horses or to attack with only soldiers.
11. Who shall ascend the holy mount of Zion and who shall dwell in the house of the Lord?
12. He that hath clean hands and a pure heart.

## 42.9 Exercises – B

### 42.9.1 Translate into English

1. ἐθεράπευσεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς τοὺς λεπροὺς καὶ τοὺς τυφλοὺς.
2. οἱ λεπροὶ καὶ οἱ τυφλοὶ ἐθεραπεύθησαν ὑπὸ τοῦ Ἰησοῦ.
3. οὐκ οἴδατε ὅτι ὁ Χριστὸς ἀπὸ τῶν νεκρῶν ἀνέστηκε;.
4. εἶπε ὅτι γινώσκει ἃ μέλλει ποιῆσαι.
5. δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐγγίξειν πρὸς τὸν θεόν.
6. ἐδήλωσε ἡμῖν ὁ κύριος πολλὰ τέρατα.
7. ἐκείνῳ τῷ ἔτει ἦλθον μάγοι τρεῖς πρὸς τὸ Ἱηρουσάλημ.
8. περιπατεῖτε ἐν ταῖς τοῦ θεοῦ ὁδοῖς.
9. βήσομαι πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας καὶ ἀκούσω τοὺς λόγους τοῦ Παύλου.
10. καὶ ἔπεμψε τὸ πλοῖον τοῖς ἀδελφοῖς.
11. δεδοκίμασται ὁ μαρτυρὸς καὶ ἀληθῶς λέγει.

12. ἐκ τῆς κόμης οἱ παῖδες τῷ ἀύλητῇ ἠκολούθησαν.

### 42.9.2 Translate into Greek

1. The man who stood before the king said that he had escaped from the enemy.
2. We must preach the gospel to the whole world.
3. While he was drawing near to Jericho, Joshua saw a man who was carrying a large sword.
4. A large crowd gathered and heard what Paul was saying.
5. A certain man called Xenophon, came to Jesus and fell at his feet.
6. At the right time the Lord will return to this earth.
7. He ruled the kingdom so badly that he was hated by all.
8. Repent and return to the ways of the Lord, for the kingdom of heaven is near.
9. I know that Jesus has saved me from my sins.
10. We ate the bread which was on the table.
11. In the council Paul opposed Peter face to face.
12. Paul stood up in the market place of Athens and said the following.

### 42.10 Exercise C – Continuous Passages

#### 42.10.1 Continuous Passage 1

Καὶ ὄρθρισαν Ἰαρθαλ, ὀνόματι Γεδεων, καὶ πᾶς ὁ λαὸς καὶ παρενέβαλον ἐπὶ πηγὴν Ἀραδ· παρεμβολὴ τοῦ Μαδιαμ ἦν ἐπὶ τῆς βόρειας ἐν κοιλάδι Γαβαθ Ἀμωρα. εἶπεν δὲ ὁ κύριος πρὸς Γεδεων· ‘Πολὺς ὁ λαὸς ὁ μετὰ σοῦ ὥστε μὴ δυνάσθαι νικῆσαί με τὴν Μαδιαμ τῇ χειρὶ αὐτῶν· καυχῆσεται γὰρ Ἰσραηλ, Ἡ χεὶρ μου ἔσωσέν με. λάλησον οὖν τῷ λαῷ· Τίς δειλὸς ἢ φοβούμενος, ἀποστρεψάτω’. ἀπέστρεψαν μὲν ἔικοσι καὶ δύο χιλιάδες, ὑπελείφθησαν δὲ δέκα χιλιάδες. καὶ αὐτίς 5 εἶπεν ὁ κύριος πρὸς Γεδεων· ‘Ἔτι ὁ λαὸς πολὺς· κατάγαγε αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ ἐκεῖ σ’ ἐρῶ τινὰς ἐκλέγω.’ κατήγαγε δὲ ὁ Γεδεων τὸν λαὸν πρὸς τὸ ὕδωρ· καὶ εἶπεν ὁ κύριος πρὸς Γεδεων· ‘τίς λάπτει ὡς ὁ κύων λάπτει, βάλε αὐτὸν εἰς μίαν σύστασιν, καὶ τίς κλίνει ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα πίειν βάλε αὐτὸν εἰς ἄλλην σύστασιν.’ καὶ τριακόσιοι οἱ ἄνδρες οἱ ἔλαψαν τὸ ὕδωρ ὡς ὁ κύων. εἶπε δὲ ὁ θεὸς πρὸς 10 Γεδεων· ‘οἱ τριακόσιοι ἄνδρες νικήσουσι τὴν Μαδιαμ· ἀποστρέψουσιν οἱ λοιποὶ εἰς τὸν τόπον αὐτῶν.’ ἐξάπεστειλε μὲν ὁ Γεδεων πάντα ἄνδρα Ἰσραηλ εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν αὐτοῦ, κατέσχε δὲ τοὺς τριακοσίους, οἱ ἔλαβον τὸν ἐπισιτισμὸν τοῦ λαοῦ καὶ τὰ κέρατα αὐτῶν. ἡ δὲ παρεμβολὴ τοῦ Μαδιαμ ἦν ὑποκάτω ἐν τῇ κοιλάδι.

Ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ ἐκείνῃ εἶπε πρὸς Γεδεων ὁ κύριος· ‘σὺ καὶ Φαρα, τὸ παιδάριον σου, καταβῆτε εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Μαδιαμ, παρέδωκα γὰρ αὐτὴν ἐν τῇ χειρὶ σου, καὶ ἀκουετέ τι λαλοῦσιν’. καὶ κατέβη ὁ 15 Γεδεων τε καὶ ὁ Φαρα εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Μαδιαμ· καὶ Μαδιαμ καὶ Ἀμαληκ καὶ πάντες υἱοὶ ἀνατολῶν ἦσαν ἐν τῇ κοιλάδι ὡσεὶ ἀκρις εἰς πλῆθος· οἱ καμήλοι αὐτῶν οὐκ ἦν ἀριθμὸς. ἦλθε δὲ ὁ Γεδεων καὶ ἤκουσε ἄνδρος ὃς ἐξηγεῖτο ἐνύπσιον τῷ πλησίῳ αὐτοῦ. εἶπε δὲ ὁ ἀνὴρ· ‘ἐνύπσιον ἐνυπιασάμην· μαγὶς ἄρτου ἐστρέψατο εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Μαδιαμ καὶ ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τῇ σκηνῇ καὶ ἐπάταξεν αὐτὴν ὥστε πέσειν τὴν σκηνήν’. εἶπε δὲ ὁ πλησίος αὐτοῦ· ‘οὐκ ἔστιν αὕτη ἡ ῥομφαία τοῦ 20 Γεδεων υἱοῦ Ἰωας· ὁ θεὸς ἔβαλε<sup>1</sup> τὴν Μαδιαμ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν παρεμβολὴν ἐν χειρὶ αὐτοῦ.’ ὅτε ἤκουσε ταῦτα, ὁ Γεδεων προσεκύνησε τῷ κυρίῳ καὶ ὑπέστρεψε εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Ἰσραηλ.

LXX Κριταὶ 7 1 – 15 (adapted from Vaticanus)

<sup>1</sup> βάλλω often has a weakened sense of ‘to put’ rather than ‘to throw’.

## 42.10.2 Vocabulary for Continuous passage 1

ὄρθρίζω, ὄρθρισω, ὄρθρισα	I arise early	From <b>ὄρθρος</b> ; the Attic word is <b>ὄρθρεύω</b>
Ιαρβαλ	Jerubbaal	
Γεδεων	Gideon	
παρεμβάλλω, παρεμβάλῶ, παρενέβαλον	I encamp	Notice that this verb is prefixed with <i>two</i> prepositions – <b>παρα</b> and <b>έν</b> , and that the augment precedes the <i>un</i> prefixed verb.
πήγη, ή	spring	as in a water spring, not the season
Αραδ	Arad	
παρεμβολή ή	encampment	
Μαδιαμ	Midian	
βόρειος, -α, -ον	North	Latin boreās hence Aurora Borealis
κοιλάς, κοιλάδος ή	deep valley	
Γαβαθ Αμωρα	Moreh	The Alexandrinus has <b>τοῦ βουνοῦ τοῦ Αβωρ</b> at this point; the hill of Abor.
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα	I conquer	
καυχάομαι, καυχήσομαι	I boast	Note this is in the Middle Voice; ‘boasting’ is something one does for oneself or for one’s own advantage...
δειλός, -ή, -όν	cowardly	
φοβούμενος, -η, -ον	fearful, fearing	This is really the present participle of <b>φοβέομαι</b> , here used as an adjective.
ἀποστρέφω, ἀποστρέψω, ἀπέστρεψα	I turn away	
ὑπολείπω, ὑπολείψω, ὑπέλιπον, ὑπέλοιπα, ὑπελέλυμμαι, ὑπεληφθην	I leave remaining	
αὔθις	again	
ἔτι	yet, still	
λάπτω, λάψω, ἔλαψα	I lap with the tongue	
κύων, ό	dog	
βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον	I put or place	<b>βάλλω</b> can have a weakened sense of I place or I put.
σύστασις, συστάσεως ή	group	
γόνυ τό γόνατος	knee	
τριακόσιοι, -α -ον	three hundred	

ἐξαποστέλλω, ἐξαποστελῶ, ἐξαπέστειλα	I send away	
σκηνή ἢ	tent	The word is also used by the Attic dramatists in the sense of 'scene', whence the use in English.
ἐπισιτισμός ὁ	provisions	
κέρας τό, κέρατος	horn	
ὑποκάτω	below, under	This is used as an adverb.
Φαρα	Phurah (AV), Purah (NIV)	There is no accent and this does not decline
παιδάριον τό	young boy, child	Also used as a servant, as here
Αμαληκ	Amalek	
ἀνατολῶν	of the east	
καμήλος ὁ, ἡ	camel	
ἐξηγέομαι	I relate, I relate at length	from ἐξ + ἡγέομαι
ἐνύπιον τό	dream	
πλησίος, -α, -ον	neighbour	
ἐνυπιάζω	I dream	This is also used (as here) in the Middle and Passive
μαγίς, μαγίδος ἡ	cake	
στρέφομαι	I turn myself, I roll	
πατάσσω, πατάζω, ἐπάταξα	I hit, I strike	
Ἰωας	Joash	
ὑποστρέφω, ὑποστρέψω, ὑπέστρεψα	I turn about, I turn back	

### 42.10.3 Continuous Passage 2

Ὅτε ἐπανῆλθε εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Ἰσραὴλ εἶπεν ὁ Γεδεων. Ἐνάστητε, παρέδωκεν ὁ κύριος ἐν χειρὶ ἡμῶν τὴν παρεμβολὴν Μαδιαμ. καὶ διεῖλε τοὺς τριακόσιους ἄνδρας εἰς τρία μερῆ· ἔδωκε δὲ πᾶσι ἄνδρασι κέρασ, καὶ ὑδρία κένη καὶ λαμπάδα ἐν κένη ὑδρία. καὶ εἶπε πρὸς αὐτοὺς· ἡμεῖς καὶ ὁμοίως ποιήσατε. ἐγὼ εἰσπορεύσομαι ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς παρεμβολῆς, κάγω σαλπιδ ἐν κέρατι, καὶ πάντες σαλπιδίτε ἐν κέρασι κύκλω ὅλης τῆς παρεμβολῆς. καὶ ἐρεῖτε Ἐπι κυρίῳ καὶ ἐπι Γεδεων. εἰσῆλθον οὖν Γεδεων καὶ ἄνδρες ἑκατὸν εἰς τὴν παρεμβολὴν Μαδιαμ καὶ ἡγειραν τοὺς φυλάκας καὶ ἐσάλπιγξαν τὰ κέρατα αὐτῶν καὶ ἐξετίναξαν τὰς ὑδρίας τὰς ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν αὐτῶν. καὶ εὐθὺς ἐσάλπιγξαν τὰ τρία μερῆ τὰ κέρατα καὶ συνέτριψαν τὰς ὑδρίας· ἐκράτησαν μὲν ἐν ταῖς ἀριστεραῖς χερσὶν τὰς λαμπάδας ἐν δὲ δεξιάς τὰ κέρατα ἃ ἐσάλπιγξαν. καὶ ἀνέκραξαν ῥομφαία ἐπι κυρίῳ καὶ ἐπι Γεδεων. οἱ τριακόσιοι ἄνδρες ἐτάχθησαν ἐν κύκλω τῆς παρεμβολῆς Μαδιαμ· τότε δὲ πᾶσα ἡ παρεμβολὴ ἔσημανεν, καὶ ἔδραμε καὶ ἔφυγον.

LXX Κριταὶ 7 16 – 25 (adapted from Vaticanus)

#### 42.10.4 Vocabulary for Continuous Passage 2

ἐπανερχομαι, ἐпанελεύσομαι, ἐπανήλθον	I return	
παρεμβολή ἢ	encampment	
Ιαρβαλ	Jerubbaal	
Γεδεων	Gideon	
Ἀνάστητε	get up, arise	
παρέδωκεν	he has given	
διαιρέω, διαιρήσω, διεῖλον	I divide into parts	
ἔδωκε	he gave	
κέρας τό, κέρατος	horn	
ὑδρία	bucket	
ὁμοίως	likewise, similarly	
λαμπάς	lamp	
τηρέω	watch carefully, observe	This is another meaning of <b>τηρέω</b>
ἀρχή ἢ	end, corner	Some other meanings of <b>ἀρχή</b>
σαλπίζω, σαλπίσω, ἐσάλπιγξα	I sound a trumpet	The older 'Attic' future of <b>σαλπιδῶ</b> is often seen in the LXX as here. <b>σαλπίσω</b> tends to be the Koine form.
ἐγείρω	I rouse, I stir up	Another meaning of <b>ἐγείρω</b>
φύλαξ ὁ, φυλάκος	guard	
ἐκτινάσσω, ἐκτινάξω, ἐξετιναξα	I shake out	This comes from <b>τινάσσω</b> I shake or brandish a weapon
εὐθύς	straight away, immediately	
συντρίβω, συντρίψω, συνέτριψα	I rub together	This comes from <b>τρίβω</b> I rub
κρατέω, κρατησω, ἐκρατησα	I hold fast	
ἀριστερός, -ή, -όν	left	not to be confused with <b>ἄριστος</b> , best, or <b>ἄριστον</b> , breakfast.
δεξιός, -ά, -όν	right	
ἀνακράγω, ἀνακράξω, ἀνέκραξα	I cry aloud	
ρόμφαία ἢ	a large sword	
σημαίνω, σημανω, ἐσημανα	I give a signal (as in war)	This can also mean 'I signify, I declare' from which 'semantics' is derived.
τρέξω, δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον	I run	



## List of passages used

Lesson	Subjects	Passage
32	Third declension, consonant stems	LXX Γένεσις 12:1-7 (adapted)
33	Revision VI	LXX Βασιλείων Α 3:3 – 9 (Adapted)
34	Third declension, Neuter nouns, Irregular Nouns	LXX Κριταί 14:5 – 9 (Adapted)
35	Third declension, vowel stems	LXX Γένεσις 37:12 – 35 (Adapted)
36	Third declension adjectives, numbers, τις	LXX Ίωνας 1:1 – 16 (adapted)
37	Formation and Comparison of adjectives, Adverbs	LXX Βασιλείων Δ 5:1 – 15 (adapted)
38	Revision VII	LXX Γένεσις 22:1 - 22:19 (adapted)
39	Perfect and Pluperfect	LXX Ίησοῦς 5:13 - 6:20 (adapted)
40	Direct Questions, Indirect Questions	LXX Βασιλείων Β 11:27 - 12:15 (adapted)
41	ἴστημι Present, Imperfect, Aorist, Active, Middle	LXX Βασιλείων Γ 18:20 – 40 (adapted)
42	Revision of Verbs – a Retrospective View	LXX Κριταί 7:1 – 15 (adapted from Vaticanus) LXX Κριταί 7:16 – 25 (adapted from Vaticanus)





## Vocabulary Greek – English

<b>Aa</b>					
ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν	good (102)	8	ἄλλομαι, ἀλοῦμαι,	spring, I; jump, I (3)	29
ἀγαπάω, ἀγαπήσω,	love, I (143)	10	ἠλάμην		
ἡγαπησα			ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο	Other, another (155)	15
ἀγγελία, ἡ	message (2)	8	ἀμαρτάνω,	make a mistake, I;	24
ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ,	announce, I (2)	2	ἀμαρτανῶ,	sin, I	
ἡγγελια			(ἀμαρτήσομαι),		
ἀγγέλμα,	message	36	ἡμαρτον		
ἀγγέλματος, τό			ἀμαρτία, ἡ	sin (173)	10
ἄγγελος, ὁ	messenger, angel	6	ἀμαρτωλός, ὁ	sinner (47)	7
	(175)		ἀμείνων, -ον	better	37
ἀγιάζω, ἀγιάσω,	sanctify, I (28)	16	ἄμμος, ἡ	sand (5)	27
ἡγίασα			ἄμπελος ἡ	vine (9)	32
ἄγιός, -ά, -όν	holy (233)	8	ἀμπελών,	vineyard (23)	32
ἀγορά, ἡ	market (11)	8	ἀμπελῶνος, ὁ		
ἀγοράζω, ἀγοράσω,	buy, I (30)	16	ἀνά	up (acc) (12)	9
ἡγόρασα			ἀναβαίνω,	climb, I (82)	11
ἀγρός, ὁ	field, farm, country	7	ἀναβήσομαι,		
	(36)		ἀνέβην		
ἄγω, ἄξω, ἡγαγον	bring, I, lead, I (67)	2, 24	ἀναβλέπω,	look up, I (25)	11
			ἀναβλέψω,		
ἀδελφή, ἡ	sister (26)	4	ἀνέβλεψα		
ἀδελφός, ὁ	brother (343)	6	ἀναβοάω,	cry out, I (1)	36
ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω,	injure, I (25)	13	ἀναβοήσω,		
ἡδίκησα			ἀνεβόησα		
ἀδικία, ἡ	unrighteousness (25)	11	ἀναγινώσκω,	read, I (32)	11
ἀεί	always (7)	35	ἀναγνώσομαι,		
ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ	air (7)	38	ἀνέγγων		
ἀθετέω, ἀθετήσω,	set aside, I, ignore, I	27	ἀναγκάζω,	compel, I (9)	23
ἡθέτησα	(16)		ἀναγκάσω,		
αἰγιαλός, ὁ	beach, shore (6)	37	ἡνάγκασα		
αἷμα, αἵματος, τό	blood (97)	34	ἀνάγω, ἀνάξω,	lead up, I, bring up, I	11
αἶρω, ἄρω, ἤρα	arise, I	29	ἀνήγαγον	(23)	
αἰτέω, αἰτήσω,	ask, I (70)	12	ἀνακεῖμαι	lie at table, I (14)	39
ἤτησα			ἀνάστασις,	resurrection (42)	35
αἰχμαλωτός, ὁ	captive, prisoner (1)	17	ἀναστάσεως, ἡ		
αἰχμή, ἡ	spear	18	ἀνδρείος, -α, -ον	brave	8
αἰών, αἰῶνος ὁ	age, aeon (122)	32	ἀνέμος ὁ	wind (31)	13
ἀκάθαρτος, -ον	unclean (32)	8	ἄνευ	without (4)	13
ἀκολουθεῶ,	follow, I (90)	10,	ἀνῆρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ	man, husband (216)	32
ἀκολουθήσω,		13	ἀνθίσταμαι	I resist, oppose, I	41
ἡκολούθησα			(14) ( <i>intr</i> )		
ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι	hear, I (428)	6	ἀνθίστημι (14)	resist, I; oppose (14)	41
or ἀκούσω, ἤκουσα			( <i>intr</i> )		
ἄκρον τό	summit (4)	13	ἄνθος, ἄνθους τό	flower	40
ἀλήθεια ἡ	truth, truthfulness	13	ἄνθρωπος, ὁ	man, human (550)	6
	(109)		ἀνίσταμαι	stand up, I; arise, I	41
ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true (26)	36	( <i>intr</i> )		
ἄλιεύς, ἀλιεύς, ὁ	fisherman (5)	35	ἀνίστημι (108)	raise, I; set up, I	41
ἀλλά	but	5	ἀνοήτος, -ον	foolish (6)	16
ἀλλήλους	One another (100)	15	ἀνοίγω, ἀνοίξω,	open, I (77)	16
			ἀνέωξα (ἡνοιξα)		
			ἀντί	instead of, opposite	9
				(gen) (22)	
			ἀντιλέγω, ἀντερῶ,	speak against, I; say	41
			ἀντεῖπον	in opposition, I (11)	

ἀντίχριστος, ὁ	Antichrist (4)	39
ἄξιος, -α, -ον	worthy (6)	20
ἀπάγγελω,	proclaim, I	30
ἀπαγγελῶ,		
ἀπήγγειλα		
ἀπάγω, ἀπάξω,	lead away, I	11
ἀπήγαγον		
ἀπαντάω,	meet, I (2)	23
ἀπαντήσω,		
ἠπάντησα		
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν	all (34)	36
ἀπειλέω, ἀπειλήσω,	threaten, I (2)	28
ἠπέιλησα		
ἀπέρχομαι,	go away, I (117)	25
ἀπελεύσομαι,		
ἀπῆλθον		
ἄπιον, τό	pear	38
ἄπιστος, -ον	incredible, unbelievable, unbelieving (23)	8
ἀπό, ἀπ', ἀφ'	from (gen) (646)	9
ἀποδίδωμι,	give back, I; pay, I	27
ἀποδώσω, ἀπέδωκα	(48)	
ἀποθνήσκω,	die, I	24
ἀποθανοῦμαι,		
ἀπέθανον		
ἀποκάλυψις,	revelation (18)	35
ἀποκαλύψεως, ἡ		
ἀποκρίνομαι,	answer, I (231)	34
ἀποκρινοῦμαι,		
ἀπεκρίθην		
ἀπολύω, ἀπλύσω,	release, I (66)	12
ἀπέλυσα		
ἀποστέλλω,	send away, I; send	13
ἀποστελῶ,	out, I (132)	
ἀπέστειλα		
ἀπόστολος ὁ	apostle (80)	12
ἀποστρέφω,	turn away, I (9)	35
ἀποστρέψω,		
ἀπέστρεψα		
ἀποτίθημι,	put away, I ( <i>Act</i> )	26
ἀποθήσω, ἀπέθηκα	put away from myself, I ( <i>Mid</i> ) (9)	
ἀποχωρέω,	withdraw, I (4)	34
ἀποχωρήσω,		
ἀπεχώρησα		
ἄπτομαι, ἄψομαι,	touch, I (39)	25
ἠψάμην		
ἀργύριον, τό	silver, money (20)	12
ἀρετή, ἡ	virtue (5)	29
ἀριθμέω,	count I, number I (3)	35
ἀριθμήσω,		
ἠρίθμησα		
ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν	left (4)	27
ἄριστος, -η, -ον	best	37

ἀρνέομαι,	deny, I (33)	25
ἀρνήσομαι,		
ἠρνησάμην		
ἄρπάζω, ἄρπάσω,	steal, I; snatch, I;	36
ἤρπασα	carry off (14)	
ἄρτος, ὁ	bread, loaf (97)	7
ἀρχαῖος, -α -ον	old (10)	8
ἀρχή, ἡ	beginning, first principle, rule (55)	4
ἀρχιερεύς,	high-priest, chief	35
ἀρχιερέως ὁ	priest (122)	
ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἤρξα	rule, I (86)	16
ἄρχων, ἄρχοντος ὁ	ruler (37)	32
ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές	feeble, weak (26)	36
ἀσπάζομαι,	greet, I (59)	25
ἀσπάζομαι,		
ἠσπασάμην		
ἀστήρ, ἀστέρος ὁ	star (24)	32
ἀσφαλής, ἐς	safe (5)	36
αὐλέω, αὐλήσω,	play the flute, I	29
ἠὔλησα		
αὐλή, ἡ	hall (12)	15
αὐλητής, ὁ,	flute player, flautist	20
αὐλητοῦ	(2)	
αὐξάνω, αὐξήσω,	grow, I, increase, I	31
ἠὔξησα	(23)	
αὔριον	tomorrow (14)	13
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	Used as a personal pronoun: 'He, she, it'.	15
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	Used as an emphasising pronoun 'himself, herself, itself'.	15
αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	Used as an identical adjective meaning 'same'	15
ἄφεσις, ἀφέσεως, ἡ	forgiveness (17)	35
ἀφίσταμαι	stand away, I; keep far from, I ( <i>intr</i> )	41
ἀφίστημι (13)	put away, I; remove, I; draw away, I	41
<b>Ββ</b>		
βαδίζων, ὁ,	walker, one who	36
βαδίζοντος	walks	
βάθος, βάθους, τό	depth (8)	40
βαθύς, βαθεῖα,	deep (4)	36
βαθύ		
βαίνω, βήσομαι,	come, I; go I	9,
ἔβην		22
βάλλω, βαλῶ,	throw, I (122)	2
ἔβαλον		
βαπτίζω, βαπτίσω,	I baptise, I, wash, I,	2
ἐβάπτισα	dip, I (77)	
βάπτισμα	baptism (19)	34

<b>βαπτίσματος</b>			
<b>βαπτιστής, ό</b>	washer, baptiser, Baptist (12)	11	
<b>βάρβαρος, ό</b>	barbarian (5)	37	
<b>βαρύς, βαρεΐα, βαρύ</b>	heavy (6)	36	
<b>βασανίζω, βασανίσω, έβασάνισα</b>	torment, I, torture, I (12)	20	
<b>βασιλεύς</b>	ό, king (115)	35	
<b>βασιλέως</b>			
<b>βασίλισσα, ή</b>	queen (4)	32	
<b>βέλτιστος, -η, ον</b>	best	37	
<b>βελτίων, -ον</b>	better	37	
<b>βιβλίον, τό</b>	book	12	
<b>βλασφημέω, βλασφημήσω, έβλασφήμησα</b>	blaspheme, I (34)	10	
<b>βλασφημία, ή</b>	blasphemy (17)	35	
<b>βλέπω, βλέψω, έβλεψα</b>	see, I (132)	2	
<b>βοηθέω, βοηθήσω, έβοήθησα</b>	help, I (8)	10	
<b>βραδύς, βραδεΐα, βραδύ</b>	slow (2)	38	
<b>βραχίων, ό</b>	arm (3)	35	
<b>βραχίονος</b>			
<b>βραχύς, βραχεΐα, βραχύ</b>	short (7)	36	
<b>βρωΐς, βρώσεως, ή</b>	corrosion, rust (11)	40	
<b>Γγ</b>			
<b>γάρ</b>	for (1041)	9	
<b>γειτών, γείτονος, ό, ή</b>	neighbour (4)	38	
<b>γένος, γένους, τό</b>	race (20)	34	
<b>γέφυρα, ή</b>	bridge	40	
<b>γεωργός, ό</b>	farmer (18)	28	
<b>γη, ή</b>	earth, land (250)	4	
<b>γίνομαι, γενήσομαι, έγενόμην</b>	happen, I; become, I (669)	31	
<b>γινώσκω, γνώσομαι, έγνω</b>	know, I, come to know, I, recognise, I (222)	2, 22	
<b>γλυκύς, γλυκεΐα, γλυκύ</b>	sweet (4)	36	
<b>γλώσσα ή</b>	tongue, language (50)	12	
<b> γνώμη, ή</b>	opinion, counsel (9)	27	
<b>γνώσις, γνώσεως ή</b>	knowledge (29)	35	
<b>γραμματεΐς, γραμματεΐως, ό</b>	scribe (63)	35	
<b>γραφή, ή</b>	written document, scripture (50)	4	

<b>γράφω, γράψω, έγραψα</b>	write, I, engrave, I, inscribe, I, record, I (191)	2
<b>γυνή, γυναικός, ή</b>	woman, wife (215)	32
<b>Δδ</b>		
<b>δαιμόνιον, τό</b>	demon (63)	6
<b>δάκνω, δήξομαι, έδακον</b>	bite, I (1)	24
<b>δακρύω, δακρύσω, έδάκρυσα</b>	shed tears, I weep, I (1)	20
<b>δάκτυλος, ό</b>	finger (9)	24
<b>δέ</b>	and, but, so (2642)	9
<b>δει, δεήσει, έδέησε</b>	it is necessary	31
<b>δεινός, -ή, -όν</b>	strange, terrible	35
<b>δειπνον, τό</b>	dinner, supper (16)	16
<b>δένδρον, τό</b>	tree (25)	7
<b>δεξιός -ά -όν</b>	right (54)	27
<b>δέομαι</b>	I entreat (22)	39
<b>δεύτερος, δευτέρη, δεύτερον</b>	second (44)	9
<b>δέχομαι,δέξομαι, έδεξάμην</b>	receive, I (56)	25
<b>δηλόω, δηλώσω, έδήλωσα</b>	show, I (7)	10
<b>δηνάριον, τό</b>	denarius, a small silver coin (15)	19
<b>διά</b>	because of (acc) (667)	9
<b>διά</b>	through (gen) (667)	9
<b>διάβολος, ό</b>	devil (37)	10
<b>διαθήκη, ή</b>	testament, covenant (32)	8
<b>διακονέω, διακονήσω, διηκόνησα</b>	serve, I (37)	10
<b>διάκονος, ό</b>	servant, deacon (29)	7
<b>διαλογίζομαι, διαλογιϋμαι, διελογισάμην</b>	I consider, ponder, reason (15)	29
<b>διαπεράω, διαπερήσω, διεπάρησα</b>	cross over, I (6)	36
<b>διαρήσω, διαρήξω, διέρηξα</b>	tear apart, I (5)	35
<b>διδάσκαλος, ό</b>	teacher (59)	6
<b>διδάσκω, διδάξω, έδίδαξα</b>	teach, I (97)	2
<b>διδασχή ή, διδαχής</b>	teaching	27
<b>δίδωμι, δώσω, έδωκα</b>	give, I (415)	27
<b>διέρχομαι, διελεύσομαι, διήλθον</b>	go through, I (43)	25

διηγέομαι,	narrate, I; describe ,	30
διηγήσομαι,	I (8)	
διηγησάμην		
δίκαιος, δικαία,	righteous, just, right	34
δίκαιον	(79)	
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ	righteousness,	4
	justice (92)	
διόπτρον, τό	mirror	14
διότι	wherefore, for what	36
	reason, because (23)	
διώκω, διωξω,	pursue, I, persecute,	7,
ἔδιωξα	I (45)	16
δοκιμάζω,	prove, I, approve, I,	17
δοκιμάσω,	test, I (22)	
ἔδοκίμασα		
δόξα, ἡ	glory (166)	5
δοῦλος, ὁ	slave; slavish, servile	6
	(124)	
δρᾶμα, δράματος,	drama	35
τό		
δύναμαι,	am able, I (210)	23
δυνήσομαι,		
ἔδυνάσαμην		
δύναμις, δυνάμεως,	power (119)	35
ἡ		
δῶρον τό	gift (19)	6
Εε		
ἑαυτόν, -ήν, -ο	himself, herself,	14
	itself (319)	
ἑαυτούς, -άς, -α	themselves (319)	14
ἔάω, ἔάσω, εἶασα	allow, I (11)	35
ἐγγίζω, ἐγγιῶ,	bring near, I, come	15
ἤγγισα	near, I (42)	
ἐγγύς	near (32)	17
ἐγείρω, ἐγερῶ,	raise, I, lift up, I	2
ἤγειρα	(144)	
ἐθέλω, ἐθελήσω,	wish, I; want, I	23
ἠθέλησα		
ἔθνος, τό, ἔθνους	nations (161)	34
εἰδωλον, τό	idol, false god (11)	39
εἰκόν, εἰκόνοσ ἡ	image (23)	32
εἰμί, ἔσομαι, ἦν	am, I (2462)	13
εἰρήνη, ἡ	peace (92)	4
εἰς	in, into ( <i>Acc</i> ) (1767)	6
εἰς τον αἰῶνα	for ever	32
εἰς τον αἰῶνα τῶν	for ever and ever	32
αἰώνων		
εἰσάγω, εἰσάξω,	lead into, I,	11
εἰσήγαγον	introduce, I (11)	
εἰσακούω,	hear, I, hearken, I (5)	11
εἰσακούσω,		
εἰσήκουσα		
εἰσέρχομαι,	go in I, enter I (194)	25
εἰσελεύσομαι,		
εἰσηλθον		

ἐκ, ἐξ	out of (gen) (914)	9
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον	each, every	14
ἐκβάλλω, ἐκβαλῶ,	throw out, I (81)	11
ἐξέβαλον		
ἐκεῖ	there (105)	32
ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη,	that (265)	14
ἐκεῖνον		
ἐκκλησία, ἡ	congregation,	5
	assembly, church	
	(114)	
ἐκλέγομαι, -,	choose, I (22)	36
ἐξελεξάμην		
ἐκπλήσσω,	amazed, I am (13)	41
ἐκπλήξω, ἐξέπληξα		
ἐκτενῶς	earnestly (3)	38
ἔλαιον, τό	oil (10)	22
ἐλάσσω, -ον	fewer (4)	37
ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα	drive, I	29
ἐλάφος, ὁ	hart, stag	29
ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον	fewest (13)	37
ἔλεος, ἐλέους, τό	mercy, compassion	34
	(27)	
ἐλευθερία ἡ	freedom (11)	13
ἐλεύθερος, -η, -ον	free (23)	9
ἐλευθερόω,	set free, I, liberate, I	18
ἐλευθερώσω,	(7)	
ἠλευθέρωσα		
ἐλέφας, ἐλέφαντος,	elephant	38
ὁ		
ἔλκω, εἰλκύσω,	drag, I (2)	24
εἴλκυσα		
ἐλπίζω, ἐλπῶ,	hope, I (31)	14,
ἤλπισα		29
ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος, ἡ	hope (53)	32
ἐμαυτόν, -ήν	myself (37)	14
ἐμβλέπω, ἐμβλέψω,	look into, I, look	11
ἐνέβλεψα	upon, I, gaze, I (12)	
ἐμφυσάω,	play the flute, I (1)	20
ἐμφυσήσω,		
ἐνεφύσησα		
ἐν	in (2752)	6,
		9
ἐνδύω, ἐνδύσω,	wear, I, put on, I	14
ἐνέδυσα	(27)	
ἐνιαυτός, ὁ	year (14)	9
ἐνίσταμαι	am set in, I; stand in,	41
	I ( <i>intr</i> )	
ἐνίστημι (7)	put, I; set, I; place in,	41
	I	
ἐντολή, ἡ	commandment (67)	4
ἐντός	within (2)	34
ἐξαίφνης	suddenly (5)	29
ἔξεστι, ἐξέσται,	possible, it is;	31
ἔξῃν	allowed, it is	

ἐξηγέομαι,	explain, I (6)	40	ἕτερος, -α, -ον	other	15
ἐξηγήσομαι,			ἐτοιμάζω,	prepare, I (40)	16
ἐξηγησάμην			ἐτοιμασσω,		
ἐξίσταμαι	amazed, I am ( <i>intr</i> )	41	ἤτοιμασα		
ἐξίστημι (17)	move out of place, I;	41	ἔτος, ἔτους, τό	year (49)	34
	astonish, I		εὐαγγελίζομαι,	I preach (54)	39
ἐξουσία, ἡ	authority, power;	22	εὐαγγελίσομαι		
	tribunate (102)		εὐηγγελισάμην		
ἔξω	outside, out of (gen)	9	εὐαγγέλιον, τό	good news, gospel	12
	(44)			(76)	
ἐπαγγέλλομαι, -,	I promise	30	εὐγενής, εὐγενές	well-born, noble (3)	36
ἐπαγγελιάμην			εὐλογέω,	bless, I (41)	10
ἐπαινέω, ἐπαίνησω,	praise, I (5)	24	εὐλογήσω,		
ἠπήνησα			ἠυλόγησα		
ἐπανέρχομαι,	I return (2)	36	εὐμενῶς	in a kindly manner	37
ἐπανελεύσομαι,			εὐρίσκω, εὕησω,	find, I (176)	2
ἐπανῆλθον			εὔρον		
ἐπαύριον	tomorrow (17)	13	εὐσέβεια, ἡ	holiness, piety	29
ἐπεὶ	since, because, when	41	εὐσεβής, εὐσεβές	pious, God-fearing	36
	(26)			(3)	
ἐπειδή	since, because, when	41	εὐχαριστέω,	thank, I; thankful am	40
	(10)		εὐχαριστήσω,	I (38)	
ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	upon or at (dat) (890)	9	ἠυχαρίστησα		
ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	towards (acc) (890)	9	εὐχή ἢ	prayer (3)	36
ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	up to, in the time of	9	εὐχομαι, εὐξομαι,	pray, I (7)	25
	(gen) (890)		εὐξάμην		
ἐπιγινώσκω,	recognise, I (44)	11	ἐφίσταμαι	come upon, I; stand	41
ἐπιγνώσομαι,				by, ( <i>intr</i> )	
ἐπέγνων			ἐφίστημι (21)	set <i>or</i> place upon, I	41
ἐπικαλέω,	call on, I (30)	16	ἐχθές	yesterday (3)	40
ἐπικάλεσσω,			ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν	hostile (32)	23
ἐπεκάλεσα			ἐχθρός, ὁ	hostile, enemy (32)	9
ἐπίσκοπος, ὁ	overseer, supervisor,	20	ἔχω, ἔξω, ἔσχον	have, I (708)	4
	ruler (5)		ἔως	until, as far as (gen)	9
ἐπιστολή, ἡ	letter, epistle (24)	4		(40)	
ἐπιστρέφω,	turn around, I (36)	36	<b>Zz</b>		
ἐπιστρέψω,			ζάω, ζήσω, ἔζησα	live, I (135)	10
ἐπέστρεψα			ζητέω, ζητήσω,	seek, I (117)	10
ἐπιτιμάω,	rebuke, I (29)	17	ἐζήτησα		
ἐπιτιμήσω,			ζωή, ἡ	life, living, way of	14
ἐπετίμησα				life (135)	
ἐπιτίθημι, ἐπιθήσω,	place upon, I (39)	26	<b>Hh</b>		
ἐπέθηκα	( <i>Act</i> ); put on myself,		ἦ	or (309)	34
	I <i>or</i> for myself ( <i>Mid</i> )		ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι,	lead, I (26)	39
ἐργάζομαι,	work, I (40)	25	ἡγησάμην		
ἐργάσομαι,			ἦδη	already (61)	34
ἡργασάμην			ἡμέρα, ἡ	day (388)	5
ἐργάτης, ὁ	workman (16)	5	ἡμισυς, ἡμίσεια,	half (5)	36
ἔργον τό	work (169)	16	ἡμισυ		
ἔρημος, ἡ	desert (48)	8	ἦσσω, -ον	fewer	37
ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι,	come, I (632)	25,	<b>Θθ</b>		
ἦλθον		29	θάλασσα, ἡ	sea, lake (91)	5
ἐσθίω, φάγομαι,	eat, I (158)	7	θάνατος, ὁ	death (120)	6
ἔφαγον					
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον	last (49)	37			

θανατόω,	death, I put to (11)	40	ἴστημι (154)	place. I	41
θανατώσω,			ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν	strong (29)	8
ἐθανάτωσα			ἰσχύς, ἰσχύος, ἢ	strength (10)	35
θάπτω, θάψω,	bury, I (11)	24	ἰχθύς, ἰχθύος, ὁ	fish (20)	35
ἔθαψα			Κκ		
θαυμάζω,	marvel, I wonder, I	16	καθαρίζω,	cleanse, I (31)	16
θαυμάσω,	(43)		καθαριῶ,		
ἐθαύμασα			ἐκαθάρασα		
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν	wondrous, marvellous (6)	13	καθαρός, -ή, -όν	pure (27)	13
θέατρον, τό	theatre (3)	12	καθεύδω,	sleep, I (22)	11
θέλημα, τό,	will (62)	34	καθευδήσω, -		
θελήματος			κάθημαι,	sit, I (91)	39
θέλω, θελήσω,	wish, I; want, I (208)	23	καθήσομαι		
ἐθέλησα			καθίζω, καθιῶ,	sit down, I (46)	31
θεμέλιος, -α, -ον	belonging to the foundation (15)	28	ἐκάθισα		
θεός, ὁ	god, God (1317)	6	καθίσταμαι	settle, I; arrive, I; prevail, I; exist, I ( <i>intr</i> )	41
θεραπεύω,	serve, I; heal, I (43)	6	καθίστημι (21)	establish, I; appoint, I; ordain, I	41
θεραπεύσω,			καί	and	5
ἐθεράπευσα			καινός, -ή, -όν	new (50)	8
θερίζω, θερίσω,	reap, I; do summer	21	καιρός ὁ	time, season, opportunity (85)	16
ἐθέρισα	work, I (19)	35	καίω, κάυσω,	burn, I (12)	35
θέρος, θέρους, τό	summer (3)	35	ἔκαυσα		
θεωρέω, θεωρήσω,	see, I; observe, I (58)	11	κακία ἢ	evil (11)	36
ἐθεώρησα			κάκιστος, -η, -ον	worst	37
θησαυρός, ὁ	treasury (17)	21	κακίων, -ον	worse	37
θλίβω, θλίψω,	pinch, I; compress, I	16	κακός, -ή, -όν	bad (50)	8
ἔθλιψα	(10)		καλέω, κάλεσω,	call, I; summon, I;	8,
θλίψις, θλίψεως ἢ	tribulation trouble, hardship (45)	35	ἐκάλεσα	invite, I (149)	14
θρηνέω, θρηνήσω,	lament, I (4)	20	κάλλιστος, -η, -ον	most beautiful	37
ἐθρήνησα			καλλίων, -ον	more beautiful	37
θρόνος, ὁ, θρόνου	throne, seat (62)	14	καλλονή, ἢ	beauty	29
θυγατήρ, ἢ,	daughter (28)	32	καλός, -ή, -όν	beautiful (100)	8
θυγατρός			καρδία, ἢ	heart (156)	5
θύρα, ἢ	door (39)	16	καρπός, ὁ	fruit, crops (66)	7
θύσια, ἢ	sacrifice (29)	34	κατά, κατ', καθ'	according to (acc)	9
θυσιαστήριον, τό	altar (23)	21	κατά, κατ', καθ'	against (gen) (473)	9
θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσα	sacrifice, I (13)	36	καταβαίνω,	go down, I (81)	11
θώραξ, θώρακος, ὁ	breastplate, also part of the body covered by the breastplate (4)	32	καταβήσομαι,		
Ἦ			κατέβην		
ἰδοῦ	See!, Behold! (200)	39	καταγγέλλω,	announce, I; preach,	11
ἱμάτιον, τό	garment (60)	7	καταγγελῶ,	I (18)	
ἴδιος, -α, -ον	one's own	21	κατήγγειλα		
ἱερεύς, ἱερέως, ὁ	priest (31)	35	καταγινώσκω,	condemn, I (3)	11
ἱερόν, τό	temple (71)	11	καταγνώσομαι,		
Ἰησοῦς, Ἰησοῦ	Jesus	6	κατέγων		
ἵππευς, ἵππεως, ὁ	rider, horseman (2)	36	κατακεῖμαι	I lie at table (12)	39
ἵππος, ὁ	horse (17)	12	καταλείπω,	leave, I; forsake, I	11
ἵσταμαι	place myself, I; place for myself, I ( <i>intr</i> )	41	καταλειψῶ,	(24)	
			κατέλιπον		

καταμανθάνω,	understand, I (1)	28	κρίνω, κρινῶ,	judge, I (114)	2
καταμαθήσομαι,			ἔκρινα		
κατέμαθον			κρίσις, κρίσεως, ἡ	judgement (47)	35
κατάσκοπος, ὁ	spy (1)	40	κριτής, ὁ	judge (19)	12
κατεσθίω,	devour, I (14)	33	κρούω, κρούσω,	knock, I (9)	41
κατέδομαι,			ἔκρουσα		
κατέφαγον			κρύπτω, κρύψω,	hide, I (18)	19
κατέχω, καθέξω	keep, I; possess, I	32	ἔκρυψα		
(κατασχίσω),	(18)		κτάομαι, κτήσομαι,	obtain, I; get, acquire	33
ἐκάτεσχον			ἐκτησάμην	(7)	
καυχάομαι,	boast, I (37)	40	κυβερνάω,	steer, I; direct, I	18
καυχίσομαι,			κυβερνήσω,		
ἐκαυχησάμην			ἐκυβέρνησα		
κεῖμαι, κείσομαι	lie, I (24)	26	κυβερνήτης, ὁ,	steersman,	19
κελεύω, κελεύσω,	command, I; order, I	23		helmsman	
ἐκέλευσα	(26)		κυκλόω, κυκλώσω,	encircle I; surround, I	35
κεφαλή, ἡ	head (75)	14	ἐκυκλώσα	(4)	
κῆπος, ὁ, κήπου	garden (5)	7	κύριος, ὁ	Lord, master, the	6
κῆρυξ ὁ, κήρυκος	herald (3)	32		Lord (717)	
κηρύσσω, κηρύξω,	proclaim, I; preach,	16	κωλύω, κωλύσω,	hinder, I (23)	20
ἐκήρυξα	I(61)		ἐκόλυσα		
κιθαρίζω,	play the lyre, I	29	κώμη, ἡ	village (27)	6
κιθαρίσω,			κώνωψ, κώνωπος,	gnat (1)	38
ἐκιθάρισα			ὁ		
κινδυνεύω,	danger, I am in (4)	36	κωφός –ή –όν	deaf (14)	12
κινδυνεύσω,			Λλ		
ἐκινδύνευσα			λαλέω, λαλήσω,	speak, I; say, I (296)	10
κίνδυνος, ὁ	danger (8)	36	ἐλάλησα		
κινέω, κινήσω,	move, I (8)	36	λαμβάνω,	take, I; receive, I;	2
ἐκίνησα			λήμψομαι, ἔλαβον	choose, I (258)	
κλάω, κλάσω,	break, I (14)	22	λαμπρός, –ά, –όν	shining (8)	35
ἔκλασα			λαός, ὁ	people (142)	6
κλείω, κλείω,	close, I (16)	16	λάρυγξ, λάρυγγος, ὁ	throat (1)	32
ἔκλεισα			λατρεύω,	worship, I; cry, I	22
κλέπτῃς, ὁ	robber, thief (16)	17	λατρεύσω,	(21)	
κλέπτω, κλέψα,	steal, I (13)	16	ἐλάτρευσα		
ἔκλεψα			λέγω, ἐρῶ, εἶπον	say, I; speak, I; tell, I	2
κληρονομέω,	inherit, I	19		(2353)	
κληρονομήσω,			λείπω, λείψω,	leave, I (6)	11
ἐκληρονόμισα			ἔλιπον		
κληρονομία ἡ	inheritance (15)	27	λέπρος, ὁ	leper (9)	7
κλήσις, κλήσεως, ἡ	calling, shouting,	39	λευκός –ή –όν	white (25)	12
	invitation (11)		λέων, λέοντος, ὁ	lion (9)	32
κλητός, ὁ	guest (10)	21	λιμός ὁ	famine (12)	16
κολάζω, κολάσω,	punish, I (2)	30	λιθάζω, λιθάσω,	stone, I (9)	28
ἐκόλασα			ἐλίθασα		
κολώνη, ἡ	mound, hill, cairn	41	λιθοβολέω,	throw stones, I; pelt	19
κόσμος, ὁ	world, mankind,	7	λιθοβολήσω,	with stones, I	
	earth; adornment,		ἐλιθοβόλησα		
	decoration (186)		λίθος, ὁ	stone (59)	6
κράζω, κράξω,	cry out, I (55)	16	λιμὴν, λιμένος, ὁ	harbour (2)	36
ἔκραξα			λογίζομαι,	reckon, I; consider, I	25
κρείσσω, -ον	better (18)	37	λογισθῆμαι,	(40)	
κρημνός, ὁ	crag, precipice (3)	33	ἐλογισάμην		
κρίμα, κρίματος, τό	judgement (27)	34			

λόγος, ὁ	word, speech, message; book, volume (330)	6	μητήρ, μήτρος, ἡ	mother (83)	32
λόφος, ὁ	hill	41	μικρός, -ή, -όν	small (46)	8
λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα	loosen, I; release, I (42)	2	μισέω, μισήσω	hate, I (40)	10
<b>Μμ</b>			ἐμίσησα		
μάθημα,	lesson	35	μισθός, ὁ	wage, reward (29)	7
μαθήματος, τό			μισθόω μισθόσω	let, I (2)	39
μαθητής, ὁ,	disciple, student	5	ἐμισθωκα		
μαθητοῦ	(261)		μισθωτής, ὁ	tenant	39
μακάριος, -α, -ον	blessed (50)	8	μνήμα, μνήματος, τό,	tomb, monument	41
μακρός, -ά, -όν	long (5)	8	μνημεῖον, τό	tomb, sepulchre (41)	13
μανθάνω,	learn, I (25)	2	μνημονεύω,	remember, I; hold in	22,
μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον			μνημονεύσω,	remembrance, I (21)	41
μάννα, τό	manna (4)	32	ἐμνημόνευσα		
μάρσιπος ὁ	bag, pouch	32	μόνος, -η, -ον	only (44)	8
μαρτυρέω,	bear witness, I (76)	13	μουσική, ἡ	music	15
μαρτυρήσω,			μῦθος, ὁ	myth, story	12
ἐμαρτύρησα			<b>Νν</b>		
μάρτυς, μάρτυρος, ὁ	witness (35)	32	ναός, ὁ	temple, shrine; palace (45)	6
μάταιος, -αία, -αιον	vain (6)	39	ναύτης, ὁ	sailor (3)	17
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	big, great (242)	36	νεανίας, ὁ	youth, young man (4)	5
μέγιστος, -η, -ον	greatest (1)	37	νεκρός, -ή, -όν	dead (128)	29
μεθίσταμαι	stand among, I; <i>or</i> in the midst of; change my position, I ( <i>intr</i> )	41	νεός, -ά, -όν	new (24)	8
μεθίστημι (also μεθιστάνω)	move out of place, I; remove, I (5)	41	νεφέλη, ἡ	cloud (25)	4
μείζων, -ον	greater (47)	37	νῆσος, ἡ	island	12
μείων, -ον	smaller	37	νικάω, νικήσω,	conquer, I (28)	41
μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν	black (6)	36	ἐνίκησα		
μέλι, μέλιτος, τό	honey (4)	37	νίπτω, νίψω, ἔνιψα	wash, I (13)	25
μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα	intend, I (109)	23	νομίζω, νομίσω,	think, I (15)	30
μέλος, τό, μέλους	member (34)	34	ἐνόμισα		
μέμφομαι, μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην	blame, I (2)	25	νόμος, ὁ	law, principle (194)	6
μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα	remain, I; abide, I; stay, I (118)	8	νῦν	now (147)	34
μέρος, μέρους, τό	part (42)	34	νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ	night (61)	32
μεσός, -ή, -όν	middle (54)	35	<b>Ξξ</b>		
μετα, μετ', μεθ'	after (acc) (469)	9	ξένος, ὁ	stranger (14)	7
μετα, μετ', μεθ'	with (gen) (469)	9	ξηρός, -ά, -όν	dry (8)	36
μετανοέω, μετανοήσω	repent, I (34)	10	ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	sword	34
μετενόησα			ξύλον, τό	wood (3)	29
μεταξύ	between (9)	13	<b>Οο</b>		
μέτωπον τό	forehead (8)	38	ὀδεύω, ὀδεύσω,	travel, I (1)	23
μή	not (1055)	21	ᾠδεύσα		
μήκος, μήκους, τό	length (2)	40	ὀδηγέω, οδηγήσω,	show the way, I; guide, I (5)	13
μήλον, τό	apple	28	ὀδήγησα		
μήν, μηνός, ὁ	month (18)	32	ὀδός, ἡ, ὁδοῦ	road, way (101)	6
			οἶδα	I know (316)	39
			οἰκήτωρ, οἰκήτορος, ὁ	inhabitant	35
			οἰκία, ἡ	house (93)	8
			οἰκοδομέω, οἰκοδομήσω,	build, I (40)	10
			ὠκοδόμησα		
			οἶκος, ὁ	house (114)	6



οἶνος κριθέων	beer	38	παρά, παρ'	from beside, from (gen) (194)	9
πεποιημένος			παρά, παρ'	beside with (dat) (194)	9
οἶνος, ὄ	wine (34)	7	παραβολή, ἡ	parable (50)	9
ὀλίγος -η -ον	little, few (33)	12	παράδεισος, ὁ	paradise (3)	30
ὅλος -ή -όν	whole, all (109)	10, 12	παραδίδομι,	hand over, I; betray, I (119)	27
ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό	name (231)	34	παραδώσω,		
ὀξύς, ὀξεῖα, ὀξύ	sharp (7)	36	παρέδωκα		
ὀπίσω	behind, after (35)	13	παράδοσις,	tradition (13)	35
ὀπόθεν;	Whence? (1)	40	παραδόσεως, ἡ		
ὀποῖ;	Whither?	40	παρακαλέω,	urge, I; exhort, I;	16
ὀποῖος	Of what kind? (5)	40	παρακάλεσω,	comfort, I (108)	
ὀπόσοι	How many?	40	παρεκάλεσα		
ὀπόσος	How great?	40	παραλυτικός, ὁ	paralytic (10)	7
ὀπότε;	When?	40	παρατίθημι,	set before, I;	26
ὀποῦ;	Where? (82)	40	παραθήσω,	commend, explain (19)	
ὀπτάω, ὀπτήσω,	cook, I	18	παρέθηκα		
ὥπτησα			παρθένος, ἡ	virgin, maiden (15)	22
ὀπῶς;	How? (53)	40	παρίσταμαι	bring forward, I; produce, I	41
ὀράω, ὄψομαι,	see, I (454)	8, 24, 29	παρίστημι (also παριστάνω) (41)	place beside, I; bring, I; offer, I	41
εἶδον			πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	all (1243)	36
ὀργίζομαι, -, ὠργίσθην	rage, I (9)	37	πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον	suffer, I (42)	24
ὀρμάω, ὀρμήσω	rush, I (5)	33	πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ	father (413)	32
ὠρμησα			πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	country, fatherland (2)	36
ὄρος, ὄρους, τό	mountain (63)	34	παχύς, παχεῖα, παχύ	thick	36
ὄς, ἦ, ὄ	who, that, what	20	πειθω, πείσω,	persuade, I (52)	16
ὄσιος, ὄσια, ὄσιον	holy, pure (8)	42	ἔπεισα		
ὄσος, -η, -ον	as great as, how great	31	πειράζω, πειράσω,	try, I; attempt, I (38)	23
ὄστις; ὄτι;	Who? Which? (152)	40	ἐπείρασα		
ὄτι	that (1296)	30	πειρασμός, ὁ	temptation, trial (21)	41
οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ (1619)	not	2	πέμπω, πέμψω,	send, I (79)	2
οὐδέ ... οὐδέ	neither ... nor (143)	36	ἐπεμψα		
οὖν	therefore (499)	9	περί	around (acc) (333)	9
οὐρανός, ὁ	heaven (273)	6	περί	concerning (gen) (333)	9
οὖς, τό, ὠτός	ear (36)	34	περιπατέω,	walk, I; walk around, I (95)	11
οὔτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	this (1387)	14	περιπατήσω,		
οὔτως, οὔτω	so, thus, in this way (208)	37	περιεπάτησα		
ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω,	owe, I (35)	28	περισσεύω,	abound, I (39)	14
ὠφείλησα			περισσεύσω,		
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ	eye (100)	6	ἐπερίσσευσα		
ὀφρύς ὁ, ὀφρύος	eye-brow (1)	35	πέτρα, ἡ	rock (14)	21
ὄχλος, ὁ	crowd; army; people (175)	6	πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον	drink, I (73)	7
Ππ			πιότατος, -η, -ον	fattest	37
παιδίον, τό	child (52)	12	πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι,	fall, I (90)	24
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ	boy, girl, child, servant (51)	32	ἔπεσον		
παλαιός, -ά, -όν	old (19)	8	πιστεύω, πιστεύσω,	believe, I; trust, I (241)	2
πάλιν	again (141)	38	ἐπίστευσα		
πάντοτε	at all times (38)	36	πίστις, πίστεως, ἡ	faith (243)	35
παρά, παρ'	to beside (acc) (194)	9			

πλανάω, πλανήσω,	wander, I (39)	10			
ἐπλάνησα					(700)
πλάτος, πλάτους, τό	breadth (3)	40	πρός	near (dat) (700)	9
πλείστος, -η, -ον	most (4)	37	προσάγω, προςάξω,	bring towards, I (5)	11
πλείων, -ον	more (51)	37	προσιγάγον		
πλέω, πλεύσομαι,	sail, I (6)	30	προσαιτέω,	I beg (1)	32
ἐπλευσα			προσαιτήσω		
πλέων	more (3)	37	προσήτησα		
πλήθος, πλήθους, τό	multitude (31)	34	προσβάλλω,	attack, I	37
πλήρης, πλήρες	full (16)	36	προσβαλῶ,		
πληρόω, πληρώσω,	fill, I (86)	10	προέβαλον		
ἐπληρωσα			προσέρχομαι,	come towards, I (86)	25
πλοῖον, τό	boat, ship (67)	9	προσελεύσομαι,		
πλούσιος, -α, -ον	rich (27)	8	προσηλθον		
πνεῦμα, τό,	spirit, wind (379)	34	προσευχή, ἡ	prayer (36)	4
πνεύματος			προσεύχομαι,	pray, I (85)	31
πόθεν;	Whence? (27)	40	προσεύξομαι,		
ποῖ;	Whither?	40	προσηυξάμην		
ποιέω	make, I; do, I (568)	10	προσκαλέω,	call, I; summon, I	16
ποίημα, ποιήματος,	something made,	39	προσκάλεσω,	(29)	
τό	created, a work (2)		προσεκάλεσα		
ποιός	Of what kind? (33)	40	προσκυνέω,	worship, I (60)	11
πολέμιος, ὁ	enemy	28	προσκυνήσω,		
πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	city (162)	35	προσεκύνησα		
πολίτης, ὁ	citizen (4)	38	προστίθηναι,	put to, I; give I; add	26
πολλάκις	often (16)	35	προσθήσω,	to I; bestow, I (18)	
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ	much (395)	36	προσέθηκα		
πονηρός, -ή, -όν	evil (78)	40	προσφέρω,	offer, I (47)	11
πορεύομαι,	go, I; walk, march	25	προσοίσω,		
πορεύσομαι,	(153)		προσήνεγκον		
ἐπορεύθην			πρόσωπον, τό	face (76)	11
πόρρω	far, at a distance (4)	25	προφητεύω,	prophecy, I (28)	12
πόρρωθεν	far, at a distance (2)	35	προφητεύσω,		
πόσοι	How many? (27)	40	ἐπροφήτευσα		
πόσος	How great? (27)	40	προφήτης, ὁ	prophet (144)	5
ποταμός, ὁ	river (17)	6	πρῶτος, πρώτη,	first (60)	9
πότε;	When? (17)	40	πρῶτον		
πότερον ... ἢ	whether ... or ... (1)	40	πτερύγιον, τό	pinnacle (2)	27
ποτήριον, τό	cup (31)	10	πτωχός, -ή, -όν	poor (34)	8
ποῦ;	Where? (47)	40	πύλη, ἡ	gate (10)	16
πούς, ποδός, ὁ	foot (93)	32	πυλών, πυλώνος, ὁ	gateway (16)	36
πραῖος, -ον	meeek	19	πῦρ, πυρός, τό	fire (71)	34
πράσσω, πράξω,	do, I; accomplish, I	16	πύργος, ὁ	tower (4)	25
ἔπραξα	(39)		πωλέω, πωλήσω,	sell, I (22)	10
πρεσβύτερος, ὁ	older; elder (66)	6	ἐπώλησα		
πρό	before (gen) (47)	9	πῶς;	How? (104)	40
πρόβατον, τό	sheep (39)	7	Ρρ		
προδότης, ὁ	traitor (3)	27	ράβδος, ὁ	staff, rod (11)	41
προΐσταμαι	stand in front, I; take	41	ράδιως	easily	39
	the lead, I ( <i>intr</i> )		ῥᾶστος, -η, -ον	easiest	37
προΐστημι (8)	set before, I; or set	41	ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό	word, thing (68)	34
	in front, I		ῥήτωρ, ῥήτορος, ὁ	orator (1)	32
πρός	to, towards (acc)	9	ρίπτω,	throw, I (8)	39
	(700)		ρίψω,		
πρός	for, in favour of (gen)	9	ἐ(ρ)ριψα		
			ρίς, ῥινος, ἡ	nose	32
			Σσ		

σάββατον, τό	sabbath (68)	22	συλλέξω, συνέλεξα		
σάλπιγξ, σάλπιγγος, ό	trumpet (11)	32	σύμμαχος, -ον	allied	23
σάρξ, σαρκός, ή	flesh (147)	32	συμφονέω,	I agree (6)	28
σεαυτόν, -ήν	thymself (43)	14	συμφονήσω,		
σέβομαι, -, έσέφθην	worship, I; honour with pious awe, I (10)	36	συνεφώνησα		
σεισμός, ό	earthquake (13)	35	σύν	with (dat) (128)	9
σελήνη, ή	moon (9)	35	συνάγω, συνάξω,	gather, I; bring together, I (59)	11
σημεϊον, τό, σημείου	sign, miracle (77)	41	συνήγαγον	lie at table with, I (7)	39
σήμερον	today (41)	21	συνανακειμαι	council (22)	42
σής, ό	moth (3)	40	συνείδησις ή,	conscience (30)	35
σιωπάω, σιωπήσω, έσιωπήσα	keep silent, I (10)	20	συνειδήσεως		
σκανδαλίζω, σκαναδαλίσω, έσκανδάλισα	cause to stumble I; give offence to I (29)	28	συνεσθίω,	eat together, I (5)	25
σκευός, σκεύους, τό	vessel (23)	34	συμφάγομαι,		
σκότος, σκότους, τό	darkness (31)	34	συνέφαγον		
σοφός, -ή, -όν	wise (20)	8	συνίσταμαι	stand together, I; held together, I am ( <i>intr</i> )	41
σπείρω, σπερῶ, έσπειρα	sow, I (52)	3, 24, 29	συνίστημι (15)	set together, I	41
σπέρμα, τό, σπέρματος	seed (43)	34	συντίθημι,	put together I; <i>also</i> , I	27
σπλαγχνίζομαι, -, έσπλαγχνισθην	have mercy upon, I (12)	39	συνθήσω, συνέθηκα	build, construct ( <i>Act</i> )	
στάδιον, τό	stade (7)	36		put together for myself, I ( <i>Mid</i> ) (3)	
σταυρός, ό	cross (27)	9	σφραγίζω,	I mark, usually with a seal (13)	38
σταυρώω,	crucify, I (42)	10	σφραγίσω,		
σταυρώσω, έσταύρωσα			έσφράγισα		
στάχυς, στάχυος, ό	ear of corn (4)	35	σχολή, ή	school <i>or</i> lecture hall (1)	15
στέλλω, στελῶ, έστείλα	send, I	29	σῶζω, σώσω, έσωσα	save, I (106)	2
στόμα, τό, στόματος	mouth (78)	34	σῶμα, σώματος, τό	body (142)	34
στρατηγός, ό	general	19	σωτήρ, σωτήρος, ό	saviour (24)	32
στρατιώτης, ό	soldier (26)	12	σωτηρία, ή	salvation (46)	5
στρατόπεδον	camp (1)	17	σωφρόνως	soberly (1)	37
στρατός, ό	army	37	Ττ		
στρέφω, στρέψω, έστρεψα	turn, I (22)	30	ταράσσω, ταράξω, έτάραξα	trouble, I; disturb, I (17)	16
συγκαλέω,	call together, I (8)	11	τάσσω, τάξω, έταξα	arrange, I; draw up, I (10)	16
συγκαλησω, συνεκάλησα			ταῦρος, ό	bull (4)	20
συλλαλέω,	speak with, I (6)	11	ταχέως	quickly (10)	37
συλλαλήσω, συνελάλησα			ταχύς, ταχεΐα, ταχύ	swift (1)	36
συλλαμβάνω, συλλήμφομαι, συνέλαβον	capture, I; arrest, I (16)	35	τε ... καί	both ... and	13
συλλέγω,	collect, I (8)	11	τείχος, τείχους, τό	wall (9)	34
			τέκνον, τό	child (99)	6
			τελέω, τελέσω, έτέλεσα	finish, I; complete, I (29)	40
			τέλος, το, τέλους	end (40)	34
			τέμνω, τεμῶ, έτεμον	cut, I	29
			τέρας, τέρατος, τό	a wonder (16)	34
			τέρμα, τέρματος, τό	boundary	41
			τεσσαράκοντα	forty (22)	10
			τέταρτος, τετάρτη, τέταρτον	fourth (9)	9

τέχνη, ἡ	art, skill (3)	15	φέρω, οἴσω,	bring, I; carry, I (66)	6,
τηρέω, τηρήσω,	keep, I (70)	10	ἦνεγκον		22
ἐτήρησα			φεύγω, φεύξομαι ,	flee, I (29)	8
τιμή, ἡ	honour (41)	4	ἔφυγον		
τίθηναι, θήσω,	place, I; put I (100)	26	φθείρω, φθερῶ,	destroy, I	29
ἔθηκα			ἔφθειρα		
τιμάω, τιμήσω,	honour, I (21)	10	φθόγγος, ὁ	voice, sound (2)	13
ἐτίμησα			φιλέω, φιλήσω,	love, I (25)	10
τίς; τί;	Who? Which? (555)	40	ἐφίλησα		
τολμάω, τολμήσω,	dare, I (15)	40	φίλος ὁ	friend (29)	8
ἐτόλμησα			φίλος	friendly	37
τόπος, ὁ	place (91)	7	φόβος, ὁ	fear (47)	14
τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη,	so great, so long, so	31	φοιτάω, φοιτήσω,	visit, I	21
τοσοῦτον	much		ἐφοίτησα		
τότε	then (160)	33	φόνος, ὁ	murder, homicide,	39
τράπεζα, ἡ	table (14)	26		slaughter (10)	
τραχύς, τραχεῖα,	rough (2)	36	φορτίον, τό	burden (5)	26
τραχύ			φράζω, φράσω,	say, I; speak, I	20
τρέπω, τρέψω,	turn, I (9)	24	ἔφρασα		
ἔτρεψα			φρόνιμος, -ον	thoughtful, prudent,	37
τρέφω, θρέψω,	nourish, I (9)	24		wise (14)	
ἔθρεψα			φυλακή, ἡ	guard, watch, prison	12
τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι,	run, I (19)	15		(47)	
ἔδραμον			φυλάσσω, φυλάξω,	guard, I (31)	16
τρίτος, τρίτη,	third (41)	9	ἐφύλαξα		
τρίτον			φυτεύω, φυτεύσω,	plant, I (11)	40
τροπαῖον τό	trophy	41	ἐφυτευσα		
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι	chance, I; happen, I	24	φωνέω, φωνήσω,	call, I; shout, I (43)	14
ἔτυχον	(12)		ἐφώνησα		
τύπτω, πατάξω,	hit, I (12)	18,	φωνή, ἡ, φωνής	voice (139)	12
ἐπάταξα		24	φῶς, τό, φωτός	light (73)	34
τυφλός -ἡ -όν	blind (50)	12	Χχ		
Υυ			χαίρω, χαρήσομαι,	rejoice, I, hail, I (74)	2
ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	water (76)	34	ἐχάρησα		
υἱός, ὁ	son (377)	7	χάλεπος, -η, -ον	difficult (2)	36
ὕλη	forest, wood, (1)	36	χαρά, ἡ	joy (59)	5
ὑπάγω	go away, I; depart, I	11	χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ	grace (155)	32
	(79)		χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ	storm, <i>also</i> winter	35
ὑπακούω,	obey, I (21)	11		(6)	
ὑπακούσω,			χείρ, χειρός, ἡ	hand (177)	32
ὑπέκουσα			χείριστος, -η, -ον	worst	37
ὑπάρχω, ὑπάρξω,	exist, I; am present, I	33	χείρων, -ον	worse (11)	37
ὑπῆρξα	(60)		χέω, χεῶ, ἔχεα	pour out, I	29
ὑπέρ	above (acc) (149)	9	χήρα, ἡ	widow (26)	5
ὑπέρ	on behalf of (gen)	9	χιλιάρχος, ὁ	chiliarch (22)	38
	(149)		χίων, χιόνος, ἡ	snow (2)	37
ὑπήκοος, -ον	subject (3)	39	χορεύω, χορεύσω,	dance, I	20
ὑπό, ὑπ', ὑφ'	under (acc) (220)	9	ἐχόρευσα		
ὑπό, ὑπ', ὑφ'	by (dat) (220)	9	χρῆμα, χρήματος,	a thing that one uses	34
ὑψηλός -ἡ, -όν	high (12)	36	το	or needs (7)	
ὕψος, τό, ὕψους	height (6)	40			
Φφ			χωλός, -ἡ, -όν	lame	19
φανερῶω,	appear, I (44)	10	χώρα, ἡ	country, land (28)	36
φανερῶσω,			Ψψ		
ἐφανέρωσα			ψευδής, ἐς	false (3)	39

<b>ψεύδομαι,</b>	deceive, I; lie, I (12)	25
<b>ψεύσομαι,</b>		
<b>ἐψευσάμην</b>		
<b>ψευδοπροφήτης ὁ,</b>	false prophet (11)	16
<b>ψυχή, ἡ</b>	soul, self, inner life (103)	4
<b>ψυχρός, -ά, -όν</b>	cold (3)	38
<b>Ἐω</b>		
<b>ἔδε</b>	here	41
<b>ἔρα</b>	hour (106)	14
<b>ὡς</b>	as, like	29
<b>ὥστε</b>	so that (83)	31



## Vocabulary English – Greek

<b>Aa</b>		
<b>a thing that one uses or needs (7)</b>	χρήμα, χρήματος, το	34
<b>a wonder (16)</b>	τέρας, τέρατος, τό	34
<b>abound, I (39)</b>	περισσεύω, περισσεύσω, ἐπερίσσευσα	14
<b>above (acc) (149)</b>	ὑπέρ	9
<b>according to (acc) (473)</b>	κατά, κατ', καθ'	9
<b>after (acc) (469)</b>	μετα, μετ', μεθ'	9
<b>again (141)</b>	πάλιν	38
<b>against (gen) (473)</b>	κατά, κατ', καθ'	9
<b>age, aeon (122)</b>	αἰών ὁ, αἰῶνος	32
<b>agree, I (6)</b>	συμφωνέω, συμφωνήσω, συνεφώνησα	28
<b>air (7)</b>	ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ	38
<b>all (1243)</b>	πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	36
<b>all (34)</b>	ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπν	36
<b>allied</b>	σύμμαχος, -ον	23
<b>allow, I (11)</b>	ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴασα	35
<b>already (61)</b>	ἤδη	34
<b>altar (23)</b>	θυσιαστήριον, τό	21
<b>always (7)</b>	ἀεί	35
<b>am able, I (210)</b>	δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, ἐδυνάσαμην	23
<b>am set in, I; stand in, I (intr)</b>	ἐνίσταμαι	41
<b>am, I (2462)</b>	εἰμί, ἔσομαι, ἦν	13
<b>amazed, I am (13)</b>	ἐκπλήσσω, ἐκπλήξω, ἐξέπληξα	41
<b>amazed, I am (intr)</b>	ἐξίσταμαι	41
<b>and</b>	καί	4
<b>and, but, so (2642)</b>	δέ	9
<b>announce, I (2)</b>	ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγειλα	2
<b>announce, I; preach, I (18)</b>	καταγγέλλω, καταγγελῶ, κατήγγειλα	11
<b>answer, I (231)</b>	ἀποκρίνομαι, ἀποκρινοῦμαι, ἀπεκρίθην	34
<b>Antichrist (4)</b>	ἀντίχριστος, ὁ	39
<b>apostle (80)</b>	ἀπόστολος ὁ, ἀποστόλου	12
<b>appear, I (44)</b>	φανερῶω, φανερώσω, ἐπφανερώσα	10
<b>apple</b>	μῆλον, τό	28
<b>arise, I</b>	αἴρω, ἄρω, ἦρα	29
<b>arm (3)</b>	βραχίον, ὁ, βραχίονος	35
<b>army</b>	στρατός, ὁ	37
<b>around (acc) (333)</b>	περί	9
<b>arrange, I; draw up, I (10)</b>	τάσσω, τάξω, ἔταξα	16
<b>art, skill (3)</b>	τέχνη, ἡ	15
<b>as great as, how great</b>	ὅσος, -η, -ον	31
<b>as, like</b>	ὡς	29
<b>ask, I (70)</b>	αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἦτησα	12
<b>at all times (38)</b>	πάντοτε	36
<b>attack, I</b>	προσβάλλω, προσβαλῶ, προέβαλον	37
<b>authority, power; tribunate (102)</b>	ἐξουσία, ἡ	22
<b>Bb</b>		
<b>bad (50)</b>	κακός, -ή, -όν	8
<b>bag, pouch</b>	μάρσιπος ὁ	32
<b>baptise, I; wash, I, dip, I (77)</b>	βαπτίζω, βαπτίω, ἐβάπτισα	2
<b>baptism (19)</b>	βάπτισμα, βαπτίσματος, τό	34
<b>barbarian (5)</b>	βάρβαρος, ὁ	37
<b>beach, shore (6)</b>	αιγιαλός, ὁ	37
<b>bear witness, I (76)</b>	μαρτυρέω, μαρτυρήσω, ἐμαρτύρησα	13
<b>beautiful (100)</b>	καλός, -ή, -όν	8
<b>beauty</b>	καλλονή, ἡ	29
<b>because of (acc) (667)</b>	διά	9
<b>beer</b>	οἶνος κριθέων πεποιημένος	38
<b>before (gen) (47)</b>	πρό	9
<b>beg, I (1)</b>	προσαιτέω, προσαιτήσω, προσήτησα	32
<b>beginning, first principle, rule (55)</b>	ἀρχή, ἡ	4
<b>behind, after (35)</b>	ὀπίσω	13
<b>believe, I; trust, I (241)</b>	πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα	2

<b>belonging to the foundation (15)</b>	θεμέλιος, -α, -ον	28
<b>beside with (dat) (194)</b>	παρά, παρ'	9
<b>best</b>	ἄριστος	37
<b>best</b>	βέλτιος	37
<b>bestow,; give I; add to I; I put to, I (18)</b>	προστίθημι, προσθήσω, προσέθηκα	26
<b>better</b>	ἀμείνων	37
<b>better</b>	βελτίων	37
<b>better (18)</b>	κρείσσων	37
<b>between (9)</b>	μεταξύ	13
<b>big, great (242)</b>	μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	36
<b>bite, I (1)</b>	δάκνω, δήξομαι, ἔδακον	24
<b>black (6)</b>	μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν	36
<b>blame, I (2)</b>	μέμφομαι, μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην	25
<b>blaspheme, I (34)</b>	βλασφημέω, βλασφημήσω, ἐβλασφήμησα	10
<b>blasphemy (17)</b>	βλασφημία, ἡ	35
<b>bless, I (41)</b>	εὐλογέω, εὐλογῆσω, ηὐλόγησα	10
<b>blessed (50)</b>	μακάριος, -ά, -όν	8
<b>blind (50)</b>	τυφλός -ή -όν	12
<b>blood (97)</b>	αἷμα, αἵματος, τό	34
<b>boast, I (37)</b>	καυχάομαι, καυχῆσομαι, ἐκαυχησάμην	40
<b>boat, ship (67)</b>	πλοῖον, τό, πλοίου	9
<b>body (142)</b>	σῶμα, σώματος, τό	34
<b>book</b>	βιβλίον, τό	12
<b>both ... and</b>	τε ... καί	13
<b>boundary</b>	τέρμα, τέρματος, τό	41
<b>boy, girl, child, servant (51)</b>	παῖς, ὁ, ἡ, παιδός	32
<b>brave</b>	ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον	8
<b>bread, loaf (97)</b>	ἄρτος, ὁ	7
<b>breadth (3)</b>	πλάτος, πλάτους, τό	40
<b>break, I (14)</b>	κλάω, κλάσω, ἔκλασα	22
<b>breastplate, also</b>	θώραξ, θώρακος	32

<b>part of the body covered by the breastplate (4)</b>	ὁ	
<b>bridge</b>	γέφυρα, ἡ	40
<b>bring forward, I; produce, I</b>	παρίσταμαι	41
<b>bring near, I, come near, I (42)</b>	ἐγγίζω, ἐγγιῶ, ἤγγισα	15
<b>bring towards, I (5)</b>	προσάγω, προσάξω, προσήγαγον	11
<b>bring, I; carry, I (66)</b>	φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεγκον	8
<b>bring, I, lead, I (67)</b>	ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον	6
<b>brother (343)</b>	ἀδελφός, ὁ, ἀδελφοῦ	6
<b>build, I (40)</b>	οἰκοδομέω, οἰκοδομήσω, ὠκοδόμησα	10
<b>bull (4)</b>	ταῦρος, ὁ, ταύρου	20
<b>burden (5)</b>	φορτίον, τό	26
<b>burn, I (12)</b>	καίω, καύσω, ἔκαυσα	35
<b>bury, I (11)</b>	θάπτω, θάψω, ἔθαψα	24
<b>but</b>	ἀλλά	4
<b>buy, I (30)</b>	ἀγοράζω, ἀγοράσω, ἠγόρασα	16
<b>by (dat) (220)</b>	ὑπό, ὑπ', ὑφ'	9
<b>Cc</b>		
<b>call on, I (30)</b>	ἐπικαλέω, ἐπικάλεσω, ἐπεκάλεσα	16
<b>call together, I (8)</b>	συγκαλέω, συγκαλήσω, συνεκάλησα	11
<b>call, I; summon, I (29)</b>	προσκαλέω, προσκάλεσω, προσεκάλεσα	16
<b>call, I; summon, I; invite, I (149)</b>	καλέω, κάλεσω, ἐκάλεσα	10, 16
<b>call, I; shout, I (43)</b>	φωνέω, φωνήσω, ἐφώνησα	14
<b>calling, shouting, invitation (11)</b>	κλήσις, κλήσεως, ἡ	39
<b>camp (1)</b>	στρατόπεδον, τό	17
<b>captive, prisoner (1)</b>	αἰχμαλωτός, ὁ	17
<b>capture, I; arrest, I (16)</b>	συλλαμβάνω, συλλήμψομαι, συνέλαβον	35



<b>carry, I (66)</b>	φέρω, οἶσω, ἤνεγκον	24	<b>congregation, assembly, church (114)</b>	ἐκκλησία, ἡ	5
<b>cause to stumble I; give offence to I (29)</b>	σκανδαλίζω, σκαναδαλίσω, ἐσκανδάλισα	28	<b>conquer, I (28)</b>	νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα	41
<b>chance, I; happen, I (12)</b>	τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι ἔτυχον	24	<b>conscience (30)</b>	συνείδησις, συνειδήσεως, ἡ	35
<b>child (52)</b>	παιδίον, τό	12	<b>consider I, ponder I, reason I (16)</b>	διαλογίζομαι, διαλογιούμαι, διελογισάμην	29
<b>child (99)</b>	τέκνον, τό	6	<b>cook, I</b>	ὀπτάω, ὀπτήσω, ὤπτησα	18
<b>chiliarch (22)</b>	χιλιάρχος, ὁ	38	<b>corrosion, rust (11)</b>	βρῶσις, βρώσεως, ἡ	40
<b>choose, I (22)</b>	ἐκλέγομαι, -, ἐξελεξάμην	36	<b>council (22)</b>	συνέδριον, τό	42
<b>citizen (4)</b>	πολίτης, ὁ	38	<b>count I, number I (3)</b>	ἀριθμέω, ἀριθτήσω, ἡρίθμησα	35
<b>city (162)</b>	πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ	35	<b>country, fatherland (2)</b>	πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ	36
<b>cleans, I (31)</b>	καθαρίζω, καθαριῶ, ἐκαθάρασα	16	<b>country, land (28)</b>	χώρα, ἡ	36
<b>cliff, crag, precipice (3)</b>	κρημνός, ὁ	33	<b>crag, precipice, cliff (3)</b>	κρημνός, ὁ	33
<b>climb, I (82)</b>	ἀναβαίνω, ἀναβήσομαι, ἀνέβην	11	<b>crops, fruit (66)</b>	καρπός, ὁ	7
<b>close, I (16)</b>	κλείω, κλείω, ἔκλεισα	16	<b>cross (27)</b>	σταυρός, ὁ	9
<b>clothes (60)</b>	ἱμάτιον, τό	7	<b>cross over, I (6)</b>	διαπεράω, διαπερήσω, διεπάρησα	36
<b>cloud (25)</b>	νεφέλη, ἡ	4	<b>crowd; army; people (175)</b>	ὄχλος, ὁ	6
<b>cold (3)</b>	ψυχρός, -ά, -όν	38	<b>crucify, I (42)</b>	σταυρόω, σταυρώσω, ἐσταύρωσα	10
<b>collect, I (8)</b>	συλλέγω, συλλέξω, συνέλεξα	11	<b>cry out, I (55)</b>	κράζω, κράξω, ἔκραξα	16
<b>come upon, I; stand by, (intr)</b>	ἐφίσταμαι	41	<b>cry out, I (1)</b>	ἀναβοάω, ἀναβοήσω, ἀνεβόησα	36
<b>come, I (632)</b>	ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον	25	<b>cup (31)</b>	ποτήριον, τό	10
<b>come, I; go I</b>	βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην	24	<b>cut, I</b>	τέμνω, τεμῶ, ἔτεμον	29
<b>comfort, I; urge, I; exhort, I (108)</b>	παρακαλέω, παρακάλεσω, παρακάλεσα	16	<b>come towards, I (86)</b>	προσέρχομαι, προσελεύσομαι, προσηλθον	25
<b>command, I; order, I (26)</b>	κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα	23	<b>Dd</b>		
<b>commandment (67)</b>	ἐντολή, ἡ	4	<b>dance, I</b>	χορεύω, χορεύσω, ἐχόρευσα	20
<b>commend, I; set before, explain (19)</b>	παρατίθημι, παραθήσω, παρέθηκα	26	<b>danger (8)</b>	κίνδυνος, ὁ	36
<b>compel, I (9)</b>	ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἠνάγκασα	23	<b>danger, I am in (4)</b>	κινδυνεύω, κινδυνεύσω, ἐκινδύνευσα	36
<b>concerning (gen) (333)</b>	περί	9	<b>dare, I (15)</b>	τολμάω, τολμήσω, ἐτόλμησα	40
<b>condemn, I (3)</b>	καταγινώσκω, καταγνώσομαι, κατέγνω	11			

<b>darkness (31)</b>	σκότος, σκότους, τό	34
<b>daughter (28)</b>	θυγατήρ, θυγατρός, ή	32
<b>day (388)</b>	ήμέρα, ή	5
<b>dead (128)</b>	νεκρός, -ή, -όν	29
<b>deaf (14)</b>	κωφός -ή -όν	12
<b>death (120)</b>	θάνατος, ό	6
<b>death, I put to (11)</b>	θανατόω, θανατώσω, έθανάτωσα	40
<b>deceive, I; lie, I (12)</b>	ψεύδομαι, ψεύσομαι, έψευσάμην	25
<b>deep (4)</b>	βαθύς, βαθεία, βαθύ	36
<b>demon (63)</b>	δαιμόνιον, τό	6
<b>denarius, a small silver coin (15)</b>	δηνάριον, τό	21
<b>deny, I (33)</b>	άρνέομαι, άρνήσομαι, ήρνησάμην	25
<b>depth (8)</b>	βάθος, βάθους, τό	40
<b>desert (48)</b>	έρημος, ή	8
<b>destroy, I</b>	φθείρω, φθερώ, έφθειρα	29
<b>devil (37)</b>	διάβολος, ό	10
<b>devour, I (14)</b>	κατεσθίω, κατέδομαι, κατέφαγον	33
<b>die, I</b>	άποθνήσκω, άποθανοῦμαι, άπέθανον	24
<b>difficult (2)</b>	χάλεπος, -η, -ον	36
<b>dinner, supper (16)</b>	δειπνον, τό, δείπνου	16
<b>disciple, student (261)</b>	μαθητής, ό, μαθητοῦ	5
<b>do, I; accomplish, I (39)</b>	πράσσω, πράξω, έπραξα	16
<b>door (39)</b>	θύρα, ή	16
<b>drag, I (2)</b>	έλκω, είλκύσω, είλκυσα	24
<b>drama</b>	δράμα, δράματος, τό	35
<b>drink, I (73)</b>	πίνω, πίομαι, έπιον	7
<b>drive, I</b>	έλαύνω, έλῶ, ήλασα	29
<b>dry (8)</b>	ξηρός, -ά, -όν	36
<b>Ee</b>		
<b>each, every</b>	έκαστος, -η, -ον	14
<b>ear (36)</b>	οὔς, τό, ώτός	34
<b>ear of corn (4)</b>	στάχυς,	35

<b>earnestly (3)</b>	στάχυος, ό έκτενῶς	38
<b>earth, land (250)</b>	γη, ή	4
<b>earthquake (13)</b>	σεισμός, ό	35
<b>easiest</b>	ράστος	37
<b>easily</b>	ράδιως	39
<b>eat together, I (5)</b>	συνεσθίω, συμφάγομαι, συνέφαγον	25
<b>eat, I (158)</b>	έσθίω, φάγομαι, έφαγον	7
<b>elephant</b>	έλέφας, έλέφαντος, ό	38
<b>encircle I; surround I (4)</b>	κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, έκυκλωσα	35
<b>end (40)</b>	τέλος, τέλους, το	34
<b>enemy</b>	πολέμιος, ό	28
<b>entreat, I (22)</b>	δέομαι	39
<b>establish, I; appoint, I; ordain, I evil (11)</b>	καθίστημι (21)	41
<b>evil, wicked (78)</b>	κακία ή πονηρός, -ή, -όν	36 40
<b>exhort, I; comfort, I; urge, I; (108)</b>	παρακαλέω, παρακάλεσω, παρεκάλεσα	16
<b>exist, I; am present, I (60)</b>	υπάρχω, υπάρξω, υπήρξα	33
<b>explain, I (6)</b>	έξηγέομαι, έξηγήσομαι, έξηγησάμην	40
<b>eye (100)</b>	όφθαλμός, ό	6
<b>eye-brow (1)</b>	όφρύς ό, όφρύος	35
<b>Ff</b>		
<b>face (76)</b>	πρόσωπον, τό	11
<b>faith (243)</b>	πίστις, πίστεως, ή	35
<b>fall, I (90)</b>	πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, έπεσον	24
<b>false (3)</b>	ψευδής, ές	39
<b>false prophet (11)</b>	ψευδοπροφήτης ό, ψευδοπροφήτου	16
<b>famine (12)</b>	λιμός ό	16
<b>far, at a distance (2)</b>	πόρρωθεν	35
<b>far, at a distance (4)</b>	πόρρω	25
<b>farm, field, country (36)</b>	άγρός, ό, άγροῦ	7
<b>farmer (18)</b>	γεωργός, ό	28
<b>father (413)</b>	πατήρ, πατρός, ό	32
<b>fattest</b>	πιότατος	37
<b>fear (47)</b>	φόβος, ό	14

<b>feeble, weak (26)</b>	ἀσθενής, ἀσθενές	36
<b>fewer</b>	ἥσσω	37
<b>fewer (4)</b>	ἐλάσσω	37
<b>fewest (13)</b>	ἐλάχιστος	37
<b>field, farm, country (36)</b>	ἀγρός, ὁ, ἀγροῦ	7
<b>fill, I (86)</b>	πληρώω, πληρώσω, ἐπληρώσα	10
<b>find, I (176)</b>	εὕρισκω, εὕρήσω, εὔρον	2, 22
<b>finger (9)</b>	δακτύλος, ὁ	24
<b>finish, I; complete, I (29)</b>	τελέω, τελέσω, ἐτέλεσα	40
<b>fire (71)</b>	πῦρ, τό, πυρός	34
<b>first (60)</b>	πρῶτος, πρώτη, πρῶτον	9
<b>fish (20)</b>	ἰχθύς, ἰχθύος, ὁ	35
<b>fisherman (5)</b>	ἀλιεύς, ἀλιέως, ὁ	35
<b>flee, I (29)</b>	φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον	8
<b>flesh (147)</b>	σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ	32
<b>flower</b>	ἄνθος, ἄνθους, τό	40
<b>flute player, flautist (2)</b>	αὐλητής, ὁ	20
<b>follow, I (90)</b>	ἀκολουθέω, ἀκολουθήσω, ἠκολούθησα	10, 13
<b>foolish (6)</b>	ἀνοήτος, -ον	16
<b>foot (93)</b>	πούς, ποδός, ὁ	32
<b>for (1041)</b>	γάρ	9
<b>for ever</b>	εἰς τον αἰῶνα	32
<b>for ever and ever</b>	εἰς τον αἰῶνα τῶν αἰῶνων	32
<b>for, in favour of (gen) (700)</b>	πρός	9
<b>forehead (8)</b>	μέτωπον τό	38
<b>forest, wood, (1)</b>	ῦλη, ἡ	36
<b>forgiveness (17)</b>	ἄφεσις, ἀφέσεως, ἡ	35
<b>forty (22)</b>	τεσσαράκοντα	10
<b>fourth (9)</b>	τέταρτος, τετάρτη, τέταρτον	9
<b>free (23)</b>	ἐλεύθερος, -η, - ον	9
<b>freedom (11)</b>	ἐλευθερία ἡ	13
<b>friend (29)</b>	φίλος ὁ	8
<b>friendly</b>	φίλος	37
<b>from (gen) (646)</b>	ἀπό, ἀπ', ἀφ'	9
<b>from beside, from</b>	παρά, παρ'	9

<b>(gen) (194)</b>		
<b>fruit, crops (66)</b>	καρπός, ὁ	7
<b>full (16)</b>	πλήρης, πλήρες	36
<b>Gg</b>		
<b>garden (5)</b>	κῆπος, ὁ, κήπου	7
<b>garment (60)</b>	ἱμάτιον, τό	7
<b>gate (10)</b>	πύλη, ἡ	16
<b>gateway (16)</b>	πυλών, πυλῶνος, ὁ	36
<b>gather, I; bring together, I (59)</b>	συνάγω	11
<b>general</b>	στρατηγός, ὁ	19
<b>gift (19)</b>	δῶρον τό	6
<b>give back, I; pay, I (48)</b>	ἀποδίδωμι, ἀποδώσω, ἀπέδωκα	27
<b>give, I (415)</b>	δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα	27
<b>glory (166)</b>	δόξα, ἡ	5
<b>gnat (1)</b>	κόνωψ, κόνωπος, ὁ	38
<b>go away, I (117)</b>	ἀπέρχομαι, ἀπελεύσομαι, ἀπῆλθον	25
<b>go away, I; depart, I (79)</b>	ὑπάγω	11
<b>go down, I (81)</b>	καταβαίνω	11
<b>go in I, enter I (194)</b>	εἰσέρχομαι, εἰσελεύσομαι, εἰσῆλθον	25
<b>go through, I (43)</b>	διέρχομαι, διελεύσομαι, διῆλθον	25
<b>go, I</b>	βαίνω	11
<b>go, I; walk, march (153)</b>	πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, ἐπορεύθην	25
<b>god, God (1317)</b>	θεός, ὁ	6
<b>good (102)</b>	ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν	8
<b>good news, gospel (76)</b>	εὐαγγέλιον, τό	12
<b>grace (155)</b>	χάρις ἡ, χάριτος	32
<b>greater (47)</b>	μείζων	37
<b>greatest (1)</b>	μέγιστος, -η, - ον	37
<b>greet, I (59)</b>	ἀσπάζομαι, ἀσπάζομαι, ἡσπασάμην	25
<b>grow, I, increase, I (23)</b>	αὐξάνω, αὐξήσω, ἠῦξησα	31
<b>guard, I (31)</b>	φυλάσσω, φυλάζω, ἐφύλαξα	16

<b>guard, watch, prison (47)</b>	φυλακή, ή	12
<b>guest (10)</b>	κλητός, ό	21
<b>guide, I; show the way, I (5)</b>	όδηγέω, οδηγήσω, ώδηγησα	13
<b>Hh</b>		
<b>half (5)</b>	ήμισυς, ήμίσεια, ήμισυ	36
<b>hall (12)</b>	αύλή, ή	15
<b>hand (177)</b>	χείρ, χειρός, ή	32
<b>hand over, I; betray, I (119)</b>	παραδίδωμι, παραδώσω, παρέδωκα	27
<b>happen, I; become, I (669)</b>	γίνομαι, γενήσομαι, έγενόμην	31
<b>harbour (2)</b>	λιμήν, λιμένος ό	36
<b>hart, stag</b>	έλάφος, ό	29
<b>hate, I (40)</b>	μισέω, μισήσω, έμίσησα	10
<b>have, I (708)</b>	έχω. έξω, έσχον	5
<b>have mercy upon, I (12)</b>	σπλαγχνίζομαι, έσπλαγχνισθην	39
<b>head (75)</b>	κεφαλή, ή	14
<b>hear, I (428)</b>	άκούω, άκούσομαι <i>or</i> άκούσω, ήκουσα	6
<b>hear, I, hearken, I (5)</b>	είσακούω, είσακούσω, είσήκουσα	11
<b>heart (156)</b>	καρδιά, ή	5
<b>heaven (273)</b>	ουρανός, ό	6
<b>heavy (6)</b>	βαρύς, βαρεΐα, βαρύ	36
<b>height (6)</b>	ύψος, ύψους, τό	40
<b>help, I (8)</b>	βοηθέω, βοηθήσω, έβοήθησα	10
<b>herald (3)</b>	κήρυξ, κήρυκος, ό	32
<b>here</b>	ώδε	41
<b>hide, I (18)</b>	κρύπτω, κρύψω, έκρυψα	19
<b>high (12)</b>	ύψηλός -ή, -όν	36
<b>high-priest, chief priest (122)</b>	άρχιερεύς, άρχιερέως, ό	35
<b>hill</b>	λόφος, ό	41
<b>himself, herself, itself (319)</b>	έαυτόν, -ήν, -ο	14
<b>hinder, I (23)</b>	κωλύω, κωλύσω, έκώλυσα	20

<b>hit, I (12)</b>	τύπτω, πατάζω, έπάταξα	18
<b>holiness, piety</b>	ευσέβεια, ή	29
<b>holy (233)</b>	άγιός, -ά, -όν	8
<b>holy, pure (8)</b>	όσιος, όσια, όσιον	42
<b>honey (4)</b>	μέλι, μέλιτος, τό	37
<b>honour (41)</b>	τιμή, ή	4
<b>honour, I (21)</b>	τιμάω, τιμήσω, έτίμησα	10
<b>hope (53)</b>	έλπίζ, έλπίδος, ή	32
<b>hope, I</b>	έλπίζω, έλπιδω, ήλπισα	29
<b>hope, I (31)</b>	έλπίζω, έλπιδω, ήλπισα	16
<b>horse (17)</b>	ίππος, ό	12
<b>hostile (32)</b>	έχθρός, -ά, -όν	23
<b>hostile, enemy (32)</b>	έχθρός, ό, έχθροϋ	9
<b>hour (106)</b>	ώρα	14
<b>house (114)</b>	οΐκος, ό, οΐκου	6
<b>house (93)</b>	οικία, ή	8
<b>How great?</b>	όπόσος	40
<b>How great? (27)</b>	πόσος	40
<b>How many?</b>	όπόσοι	40
<b>How many? (27)</b>	πόσοι	40
<b>How? (104)</b>	πώς;	40
<b>How? (53)</b>	όπως;	40
<b>Ii</b>		
<b>idol, false god (11)</b>	είδωλον, τό	39
<b>image (23)</b>	είκών, εικόνος, ή	32
<b>in (2752)</b>	έν	6, 9
<b>in a kindly manner</b>	εϋμενώς	37
<b>in, into (Acc) (1767)</b>	εις	6
<b>incredible, unbelievable, unbelieving (23)</b>	άπιστος, -ον	8
<b>inhabitant</b>	οικήτωρ, οικήτορος, ό	35
<b>inherit, I</b>	κληρονομέω, κληρονομήσω, έκληρονόμισα	19
<b>inheritance (15)</b>	κληρονομία ή	26
<b>injure, I (25)</b>	άδικέω, άδικήσω, ήδίκησα	13
<b>instead of, opposite (gen) (22)</b>	άντί	9
<b>intend, I (109)</b>	μέλλω, μελλήσω, έμέλλησα	23
<b>island</b>	νήσος, ή, νήσου	12
<b>it is necessary</b>	δει, δεήσει, έδέησε	31

<b>Jj</b>				<b>leave, I; forsake, I (24)</b>	καταλείπω, καταλείψω, κατέλιπον	11
<b>Jesus</b>	Ἰησοῦς, Ἰησοῦ	6		<b>left (4)</b>	ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν	26
<b>joy (59)</b>	χαρά, ἡ	5		<b>length (2)</b>	μῆκος, μήκους	40
<b>judge (19)</b>	κριτής, ό, κριτοῦ	12		<b>leper (9)</b>	λέπρος, ό, λέπρου	7
<b>judge, I (114)</b>	κρίνω, κρίνω, ἔκρινα	2		<b>lesson</b>	μάθημα, μαθήματος, τό	35
<b>judgement (27)</b>	κρίμα τό, κρίματος	34		<b>let, I (2)</b>	μισθόω μισθόσω ἐμισθωκα	39
<b>judgement (47)</b>	κρίσις, κρίσεως, ἡ	35		<b>letter, epistle (24)</b>	ἐπιστολή, ἡ	4
<b>just, righteous, right (79)</b>	δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	34		<b>lie at table with, I (7)</b>	συνανακεῖμαι	39
<b>Kk</b>				<b>lie at table, I (12)</b>	κατακεῖμαι	39
<b>keep silent, I (10)</b>	σιωπάω, σιωπήσω, ἐσιωπήσα	20		<b>lie at table, I (14)</b>	ἀνακεῖμαι	39
<b>keep, I; possess, I (18)</b>	κατέχω, καθέξω (κατασχέσω), κάτεσχον	32		<b>lie, I (24)</b>	κεῖμαι, κείσομαι	26
<b>keep, I (70)</b>	τηρέω, τηρήσω, ἐτήρησα	10		<b>life, living, way of life (135)</b>	ζωή, ἡ	14
<b>king (115)</b>	βασιλεύς ό, βασιλέως	35		<b>light (73)</b>	φῶς, φωτός, τό	34
<b>knock, I (9)</b>	κρούω, κρούσω, ἔκρουσα	41		<b>lion (9)</b>	λέων, λέοντος, ό	32
<b>know, I (316)</b>	οἶδα	39		<b>little, few (33)</b>	ὀλίγος -η -ον	12
<b>know, I, come to know, I, recognise, I (222)</b>	γινώσκω	2		<b>live, I (135)</b>	ζάω, ζήσω, ἔζησα	10
<b>knowledge (29)</b>	γνώσις, γνώσεως, ἡ	35		<b>long (5)</b>	μακρός, -ά, -όν	8
<b>Ll</b>				<b>look for, seek, I (117)</b>	ζητέω, ζητήσω, ἐζήτησα	10
<b>lame</b>	χωλός, -ή, -όν	19		<b>look into, I, look upon, I, gaze, I (12)</b>	ἐμβλέπω, ἐμβλέψω, ἐνέβλεψα	11
<b>lament, I (4)</b>	θρηνέω, θρηνήσω, ἐθρήνησα	20		<b>look up, I (25)</b>	ἀναβλέπω, ἀναβλέψω, ἀνέβλεψα	11
<b>last (49)</b>	ἔσχατος, -η, -ον	37		<b>loosen, I; release, I (42)</b>	λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα	2
<b>law, principle (194)</b>	νόμος, ό, νόμου	6		<b>Lord, master, the Lord (717)</b>	κύριος, ό, κυρίου	6
<b>lead away, I</b>	ἀπάγω, ἀπάξω, ἀήγαγον	11		<b>love, I (143)</b>	ἀγαπάω, ἀγαπήσω, ἤγαπησα	10
<b>lead into, I, introduce, I (11)</b>	εἰσάγω, εἰσάξω, εἰσήγαγον	11		<b>love, I (25)</b>	φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα	10
<b>lead up, I, bring up, I (23)</b>	ἀνάγω, ἀνάξω, ἀνήγαγον	11		<b>Mm</b>		
<b>lead, I</b>	ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον	24		<b>make a mistake, I; sin, I</b>	ἁμαρτάνω, ἁμαρτανῶ, (ἁμαρτήσομαι), ἤμαρτον	24
<b>lead, I (26)</b>	ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην	39		<b>make, I; do, I (568)</b>	ποιέω	10
<b>learn, I (25)</b>	μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον	2		<b>man, human (550)</b>	ἄνθρωπος, ό	6
<b>leave, I (6)</b>	λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον	11		<b>man, husband (216)</b>	ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ό	32
				<b>manna (4)</b>	μάννα, τό	32
				<b>many, much (395)</b>	πολύς, πολλά,	36

	πολύ	
<b>mark, I, usually with a seal (13)</b>	σφραγίζω, σφραγίσω, έσφράγισα	38
<b>market (11)</b>	άγορά, ή	8
<b>marvel, I wonder, I (43)</b>	θαυμάζω, θαυμάσω, έθαύμασα	16
<b>master, Lord, the Lord (717)</b>	κύριος, ό, κυρίου	6
<b>meek</b>	πρᾶος, -ον	19
<b>meet, I (2)</b>	άπαντάω, άπαντήσω, ήπάντησα	23
<b>member (34)</b>	μέλος, μέλους, τό	34
<b>mercy, compassion (27)</b>	έλεος, έλέους, τό	34
<b>message</b>	άγγελμα, άγγέλματος, τό	36
<b>message (2)</b>	άγγελία, ή	8
<b>messenger, angel (175)</b>	άγγελος, ό	6
<b>middle (54)</b>	μεσός, -ή, -όν	35
<b>mirror</b>	διόπτρον, τό	14
<b>month (18)</b>	μήν, μηνός, ό	32
<b>moon (9)</b>	σελήνη, ή	35
<b>more (3)</b>	πλέον	37
<b>more (51)</b>	πλείων	37
<b>more beautiful</b>	καλλίων	37
<b>most (4)</b>	πλείστος	37
<b>most beautiful</b>	κάλλιστος	37
<b>moth (3)</b>	σής, ό	40
<b>mother (83)</b>	μητήρ, μήτρος, ή	32
<b>mound, hill, cairn</b>	κολώνη, ή	41
<b>mountain (63)</b>	όρος, όρους, τό	34
<b>mouth (78)</b>	στόμα, στόματος, τό	34
<b>move out of place, I; astonish, I</b>	έξίστημι (17)	41
<b>move out of place, I; remove, I (5)</b>	μεθίστημι (also μεθιστάνω)	41
<b>move, I (8)</b>	κινέω, κινήσω, έκίνησα	36
<b>much, many (395)</b>	πολύς, πολλά, πολύ	36
<b>multitude (31)</b>	πλήθος, πλήθους, τό	34
<b>murder, homicide, slaughter (10)</b>	φόνος, ό	39
<b>music</b>	μουσική, ή	15
<b>myself (37)</b>	έμαυτόν, -ήν	14
<b>myth, story</b>	μύθος, ό, μύθου	12
<b>Nn</b>		

<b>name (231)</b>	όνομα, όνόματος, τό,	34
<b>narrate, I; describe, I (8)</b>	διηγέομαι, διηγήσομαι, διηγησάμην	30
<b>nations (161)</b>	έθνος, έθνους, τό,	34
<b>near (32)</b>	έγγύς	17
<b>near (dat) (700)</b>	πρός	9
<b>neighbour (4)</b>	γειτών, γείτονος, ό, ή	38
<b>neither ... nor (143)</b>	οὐδέ ... οὐδέ	36
<b>new (24)</b>	νέος, -ά, -όν	8
<b>new (50)</b>	καινός, -ή, -όν	8
<b>night (61)</b>	νύξ, νυκτός, ή	32
<b>nose</b>	ρίς, ρίνος, ή	32
<b>not (1055)</b>	μή	21
<b>not (1619)</b>	οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ	2
<b>nourish, I (9)</b>	τρέφω, θρέψω, έθρεψα	24
<b>now (147)</b>	νῦν	34
<b>Oo</b>		
<b>obey, I (21)</b>	ύπακούω, ύπακούσω, ύπέκουσα	11
<b>obtain, I; get, acquire (7)</b>	κτάομαι, κτήσομαι, έκτησάμην	33
<b>Of what kind? (33)</b>	ποῖος	40
<b>Of what kind? (5)</b>	όποῖος	40
<b>offer, I (47)</b>	προσφέρω, προσοίσω, προσήνεγκον	11
<b>often (16)</b>	πολλάκις	35
<b>oil (10)</b>	έλαιον, τό	22
<b>old (10)</b>	άρχαῖος, -α -ον	8
<b>old (19)</b>	παλαιός, -ά, -όν	8
<b>older; elder (66)</b>	πρεσβύτερος, ό	6
<b>on behalf of (gen) (149)</b>	ύπέρ	9
<b>One another (100)</b>	άλλήλους	15
<b>one's own</b>	ἴδιος, -α, -ον	21
<b>only (44)</b>	μόνος, -η, -ον	8
<b>open, I (77)</b>	άνοίγω, άνοίξω, άνέωξα (ήνοιξα)	16
<b>opinion, counsel (9)</b>	γνώμη, ή	26
<b>or (309)</b>	ή	34
<b>orator (1)</b>	ρήτωρ, ρήτορος, ό	32
<b>order, I; command, I (26)</b>	κελεύω, κελεύσω, έκέλευσα	23
<b>other</b>	έτερος, -α, -ον	15
<b>Other, another</b>	άλλος, άλλη,	15

(155)	ἄλλο	
out of (gen) (914)	ἐκ, ἐξ	9
outside, out of (gen) (44)	ἔξω	9
overseer, supervisor, ruler (5)	ἐπίσκοπος, ὁ	20
owe, I (35)	ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα	28
<b>Pp</b>		
parable (50)	παραβολή, ἡ	9
paradise (3)	παράδεισος, ὁ	30
paralytic (10)	παραλυτικός, ὁ, παραλυτικοῦ	7
part (42)	μέρος, μέρους, τό	34
pay, I; give back, I (48)	ἀποδίδωμι, ἀποδώσω, ἀπέδωκα	27
peace (92)	εἰρήνη, ἡ	4
pear	ἄπιον, τό	38
people (142)	λαός, ὁ, λαοῦ	6
persecute, I; pursue, I (45)	διώκω, διώξω, ἔδιώξα	9, 16
persuade, I (52)	πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα	16
pinch, I; compress, I (10)	θλίβω, θλίψω, ἔθλιψα	16
pinnacle (2)	πτερύγιον, τό	26
pious, God-fearing (3)	εὐσεβής, εὐσεβές	36
place (91)	τόπος, ὁ	7
place beside, I; bring, I; offer, I	παρίστημι (also	41
place myself, I; place for myself, I (intr)	παριστάνω) (41)	
	ἵσταμαι	41
place upon, I (39) (Act); put on myself, I or for myself (Mid)	ἐπιτίθημι, ἐπιθήσω, ἐπέθηκα	26
place, I	ἵστημι (154)	41
place, I; put I (100)	τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα	26
plant, I (11)	φυτεύω, φυτεύσω, ἐφυτευσα	40
play the flute, I	αὐλέω, αὐλήσω, ἠΰλησα	29
play the flute, I (1)	ἐμφυσάω, ἐμφυσήσω, ἐνεφύσησα	20

play the lyre, I	κιθαρίζω, κιθαρίσω, ἐκιθάρισα	29
powerful, strong, (29)	ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν	8
pray, I (85)	προσεύχομαι, προσεύξομαι, προσηυξάμην	31
poor (34)	πτωχός, -ή, -όν	8
possible, it is; allowed, it is	ἔξεστι, ἐξέσται, ἔξῃν	31
pour out, I	χέω, χεῶ, ἔχεα	29
power (119)	δύναμις, δυνάμεως, ἡ	35
praise, I (5)	ἐπαινέω, ἐπαίνησω, ἠπήνησα	24
pray, I (7)	εὐχομαι, εὕξομαι, εὐξάμην	25
prayer (3)	εὐχή ἡ	36
prayer (36)	προσευχή, ἡ	4
preach, I (54)	εὐαγγελίζομαι, εὐαγγελίσομαι εὐηγγελισάμην	39
precipice, crag, cliff (3)	κρημνός, ὁ	33
prepare, I (40)	ἐτοιμάζω, ἐτοιμασώ, ἠτοίμασα	16
priest (31)	ἱερεύς ὁ, ἱερέως	35
proclaim, I	ἀπαγγελλω, ἀπαγγελλῶ, ἀπήγγειλα	30
proclaim, I; preach, I (61)	κηρύσσω, κηρύξω, ἐκήρυξα	16
promise, I	ἐπαγγέλλομαι, -, ἐπαγγελιάμην	30
prophecy, I (28)	προφητεύω, προφητεύσω, ἐπροφήτευσα	12
prophet (144)	προφήτης, ὁ	5
prove, I, approve, I, test, I (22)	δοκιμάζω, δοκιμάσω, ἐδοκιμίμυσα	17
punish, I (2)	κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα	30
pure (27)	καθαρός, -ή, - όν	13
pursue, I, persecute, I (45)	διώκω, διώξω, ἔδιώξα	9, 16

<b>put away, I; remove, I; draw away, I</b>	ἀφίστημι (13)	41	<b>remember, I; hold in remembrance, I (21)</b>	μνημονεύω, μνημονεύσω, ἐμνημόνευσα	22
<b>put away, I (Act)</b>	ἀποτίθημι,	26	<b>repent, I (34)</b>	μετανοέω, μετανοήσω, μετενόησα	10
<b>put away from myself, I (Mid) (9)</b>	ἀποθήσω, ἀπέθηκα		<b>resist, I; oppose, I (14) (intr)</b>	ἀνθίσταμαι	41
<b>put on, I, wear, I (27)</b>	ἐνδύω, ἐνδύσω, ἐνέδυσσα	14	<b>resist, I; oppose, I(14) (intr)</b>	ἀνθίστημι (14)	41
<b>put to, I; give I; add to I; bestow, I (18)</b>	προστίθημι, προσθήσω, προσέθηκα	27	<b>resurrection (42)</b>	ἀνάστασις, ἀναστάσεως, ἡ	35
<b>put together I; also, I build, construct (Act)</b>	συντίθημι, συνθήσω, συνέθηκα	26	<b>return, I (2)</b>	ἐπανέρχομαι, ἐπανελεύσομαι, ἐπανῆλθον	36
<b>put together for myself, I (Mid) (3)</b>			<b>revelation (18)</b>	ἀποκάλυψις, ἀποκαλύψεως, ἡ	35
<b>put, I; set, I; place in, I</b>	ἐνίστημι (7)	41	<b>reward, wage (29)</b>	μισθός, ὁ, μισθοῦ	7
<b>Qq</b>			<b>rich (27)</b>	πλούσιος, -α, - ον	8
<b>queen</b>	βασίλισσα, ἡ (4)	32	<b>rider, horseman (2)</b>	ἵππευς, ὁ, ἵππεως	36
<b>quickly (10)</b>	ταχέως	37	<b>right (54)</b>	δεξιός -ά -όν	26
<b>Rr</b>			<b>righteous, just, right (79)</b>	δίκαιος, δικαία, δίκαιον	34
<b>race (20)</b>	γένος, γένους, τό	34	<b>righteousness, justice (92)</b>	δικαιοσύνη, ἡ	4
<b>rage, I (9)</b>	ὀργίζομαι, -, ὀργίστην	37	<b>river (17)</b>	ποταμός, ὁ	6
<b>raise, I, lift up, I (144)</b>	ἐγείρω, ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα	2	<b>road, way (101)</b>	ὁδός, ἡ, ὁδοῦ	6
<b>raise, I; set up, I</b>	ἀνίστημι (108)	41	<b>robber, thief (16)</b>	κλέπτης, ὁ	17
<b>read, I (32)</b>	ἀναγινώσκω, ἀναγνώσομαι, ἀνέγνω	11	<b>rock (14)</b>	πέτρα, ἡ	21
<b>reap, I; do summer work, I (19)</b>	θερίζω, θερίσω, ἐθήρισα	21	<b>rough (2)</b>	τραχύς, τραχεῖα, τραχύ	36
<b>rebuke, I (29)</b>	ἐπιτιμάω, ἐπιτιμήσω, ἐπετίμησα	17	<b>rule, I (86)</b>	ἄρχω, ἄρξω, ἤρξα	16
<b>receive, I (56)</b>	δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην	25	<b>ruler (37)</b>	ἄρχων, ἄρχοντας, ὁ	32
<b>reckon, I; consider, I (40)</b>	λογίζομαι, λογοῦμαι, ἐλογισάμην	25	<b>run, I (19)</b>	τρέχω, δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον	15
<b>recognise, I (44)</b>	ἐπιγινώσκω, ἐπιγνώσομαι, ἐπέγνω	11	<b>rush, I (5)</b>	ὀρμάω, ὀρμήσω ὄρμησα	33
<b>rejoice, I, hail, I (74)</b>	χαίρω, χαρήσομαι, ἐχάρησα	2	<b>Ss</b>		
<b>release, I (66)</b>	ἀπολύω, ἀπολύσω, ἀπέλυσα	12	<b>sabbath (68)</b>	σάββατον, τό	22
<b>remain, I; abide, I; stay, I (118)</b>	μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα	8	<b>sacrifice (29)</b>	θυσία, ἡ	34
			<b>sacrifice, I (13)</b>	θύω, θύσω, ἔθυσσα	36
			<b>safe (5)</b>	ἀσφαλής, ἐς	36
			<b>sail, I (6)</b>	πλέω, πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα	30
			<b>sailor (3)</b>	ναύτης, ὁ	17
			<b>salvation (46)</b>	σωτηρία, ἡ	4



<b>sanctify, I (28)</b>	ἀγιάζω, ἀγιάσω, 16 ἡγίασα		<b>set before, I; or set in front, I</b>	προϊστήμι (8)	41
<b>sand (5)</b>	ἄμμος, ἡ 26		<b>set free, I, liberate, I (7)</b>	ἐλευθερώω, 18 ἐλευθερώσω, ἡλευθέρωσα	
<b>save, I (106)</b>	σώζω, σώσω, 2 ἔσωσα		<b>set or place upon, I</b>	ἐφίστημι (21)	41
<b>saviour (24)</b>	σωτήρ, 32 σωτήρος, ὁ		<b>set together, I</b>	συνίστημι (15)	41
<b>say, I; speak, I</b>	φράζω, φράσω, 20 ἔφρασα		<b>settle, I; arrive, I; prevail, I; exist, I (intr)</b>	καθίσταμαι 41	
<b>say, I; speak, I; tell, I (2353)</b>	λέγω, ἐρῶ, 2 εἶπον		<b>sharp (7)</b>	ὄξύς, ὄξεια, ὄξύ 36	
<b>school or lecture hall (1)</b>	σχολή, ἡ 15		<b>shed tears, I weep, I (1)</b>	δακρύω, 20 δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσα	
<b>scribe (63)</b>	γραμματεὺς, 35 γραμματέως, ὁ		<b>sheep (39)</b>	πρόβατον, τό 7	
<b>sea, lake (91)</b>	θάλασσα, ἡ 5		<b>shining (8)</b>	λαμπρός, -ά, -όν 35	
<b>second (44)</b>	δεύτερος, 9 δευτέρη, δευτερον		<b>short (7)</b>	βραχύς, 36 βραχεῖα, βραχύ	
<b>See!, Behold! (200)</b>	ἰδοὺ 39		<b>shout, I; call, I (43)</b>	φωνέω, 14 φωνήσω ἐφώνησα	
<b>see, I (132)</b>	βλέπω, βλέψω, 2 ἔβλεψα		<b>show the way, I; guide, I (5)</b>	ὀδηγέω, 13 ὀδηγήσω, ὠδήγησα	
<b>see, I (454)</b>	ὄραω, ὄψομαι, 10, 24, εἶδον 29		<b>show, I (7)</b>	δηλώω, 10 δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα	
<b>see, I; observe, I (58)</b>	θεωρέω, 11 θεωρήσω, ἐθεώρησα		<b>sign, miracle (77)</b>	σημεῖον, τό 41	
<b>seed (43)</b>	σπέρμα, 34 σπέρματος, τό		<b>silver, money (20)</b>	ἀργύριον, τό 12	
<b>look for, I; seek, I (117)</b>	ζητέω, ζητήσω, 10 ἐζήτησα		<b>sin (173)</b>	ἁμαρτία, ἡ 10	
<b>sell, I (22)</b>	πωλέω, 10 πωλήσω, ἐπώλησα		<b>since, because, when (10)</b>	ἐπειδή 41	
<b>send away, I; send out, I (132)</b>	ἀποστέλλω, 13 ἀποστελῶ, ἀπέστειλα		<b>since, because, when (26)</b>	ἐπεὶ 41	
<b>send, I</b>	στέλλω, στελῶ, 29 ἔστειλα		<b>sinner (47)</b>	ἁμαρτωλός, ὁ 7	
<b>send, I (79)</b>	πέμπω, πέμψω, 2 ἔπεμψα		<b>sister (26)</b>	ἀδελφή, ἡ 4	
<b>servant, deacon (29)</b>	διάκονος, ὁ 7		<b>sit, I (91)</b>	κάθημαι, 39 καθήσομαι	
<b>serve, I (37)</b>	διακονέω, 10 διακονήσω, διηκόνησα		<b>sit down, I (46)</b>	καθίζω, καθιῶ, 31 ἐκάθισα	
<b>serve, I; heal, I (43)</b>	θεραπεύω, 6 θεραπεύσω, ἐθεράπευσα		<b>slave; slavish, servile (124)</b>	δοῦλος, ὁ 6	
<b>set aside, I, ignore, I (16)</b>	ἀθετέω, 26 ἀθετήσω, ἡθέτησα		<b>sleep, I (22)</b>	καθεύδω, 11 καθευδήσω, -	
<b>set before, I; commend, explain (19)</b>	παρατίθημι, 26 παραθήσω, παρέθηκα		<b>slow (2)</b>	βραδύς, 38 βραδεῖα, βραδύ	
			<b>small (46)</b>	μικρός, -ή, -όν 8	
			<b>smaller</b>	μείων 37	
			<b>snow (2)</b>	χίων, χιονος, ἡ 37	
			<b>so great, so long, so much</b>	τοσοῦτος, 31 τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτον	
			<b>so, thus, in this way (208)</b>	οὕτως, οὕτω 36	

<b>so that (83)</b>	ὥστε	31
<b>soberly (1)</b>	σωφρόνως	37
<b>soldier (26)</b>	στρατιώτης, ὁ	12
<b>something made, created, a work (2)</b>	ποίημα,	39
<b>son (377)</b>	υἱός, ὁ	7
<b>soul, self, inner life (103)</b>	ψυχή, ἡ	4
<b>sow, I (42)</b>	σπείρω, σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα	5
<b>speak against, I; say in opposition, I (11)</b>	ἀντιλέγω, ἀντερῶ, ἀντεῖπον	41
<b>speak with, I (6)</b>	συλλαλέω, συλλαλήσω, συνελάλησα	11
<b>speak, I; say, I (296)</b>	λαλέω, λαλήσω, ἐλάλησα	10
<b>spear</b>	αἰχμή, ἡ	18
<b>spirit, wind (379)</b>	πνεῦμα, τό, πνεύματος	34
<b>spring, I; jump, I (3)</b>	ἄλλομαι, ἀλοῦμαι, ἠλάμην	29
<b>spy (1)</b>	κατάσκοπος, ὁ	40
<b>stade (7)</b>	στάδιον, τό	36
<b>staff, rod (11)</b>	ῥάβδος, ὁ	41
<b>stand among, I; or in the midst of; change my position, I (intr)</b>	μεθίσταμαι	41
<b>stand away, I; keep far from, I (intr)</b>	ἀφίσταμαι	41
<b>stand in front, I; take the lead, I (intr)</b>	προίσταμαι	41
<b>stand together, I; held together, I am (intr)</b>	συνίσταμαι	41
<b>stand up, I; arise, I (intr)</b>	ἀνίσταμαι	41
<b>star (24)</b>	ἀστήρ, ἀστέρος ὁ	32
<b>steal, I; snatch, I; carry off (14)</b>	ἄρπάζω, ἄρπάσω, ἤρπασα	36
<b>steal, I (13)</b>	κλέπτω, κλέψα, ἔκλεψα	16
<b>steer, I; direct, I</b>	κυβερνάω, κυβερνήσω, ἐκυβέρνησα	18
<b>steersman, helmsman</b>	κυβερνήτης, ὁ	19
<b>stone (59)</b>	κυβερνήτου λίθος, ὁ	6

<b>stone, I (9)</b>	λιθάζω, λιθάσω, ἐλίθασα	28
<b>storm, also winter (6)</b>	χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ	36
<b>strange, terrible</b>	δεινός, -ή, -όν	35
<b>stranger (14)</b>	ξένος, ὁ	7
<b>strength (10)</b>	ισχύς, ισχύος, ἡ	35
<b>strong, powerful (29)</b>	ισχυρός, -ά, -όν	8
<b>subject (3)</b>	ὑπήκοος, -ον	39
<b>suddenly (5)</b>	ἐξαίφνης	29
<b>suffer, I (42)</b>	πάσχω, πείσομαι, ἔπαθον	24
<b>summer (3)</b>	θέρος, θέρους, τό	35
<b>summit (4)</b>	ἄκρον τό	13
<b>surround I; encircle I; (4)</b>	κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, ἐκυκλώσω	35
<b>sweet (4)</b>	γλυκύς, γλυκεῖα, γλυκύ	36
<b>swift (1)</b>	ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ	36
<b>sword</b>	ξίφος, ξίφους, τό	34
<b>Tt</b>		
<b>table (14)</b>	τράπεζα, ἡ	42
<b>take, I; receive, I; choose, I (258)</b>	λαμβάνω, λήμψομαι, ἔλαβον	2
<b>teach, I (97)</b>	διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα	2
<b>teacher (59)</b>	διδάσκαλος, ὁ	6
<b>teaching</b>	διδαχή ἡ, διδαχῆς	26
<b>tear apart, I (5)</b>	διαρήσω, διαρήξω, διέρηξα	35
<b>temple (71)</b>	ἱερόν, τό	11
<b>temple, shrine; palace (45)</b>	ναός, ὁ	6
<b>temptation, trial (21)</b>	πειρασμός, ὁ	41
<b>tenant</b>	μισθωτής, ὁ	39
<b>testament, covenant (32)</b>	διαθήκη, ἡ	8
<b>thank, I; thankful am I (38)</b>	εὐχαριστέω, εὐχαριστήσω, ἠύχαρίστησα	40
<b>that (1296)</b>	ὅτι	30
<b>that (265)</b>	ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνον	14
<b>theatre (3)</b>	θέατρον, τό	12
<b>themselves (319)</b>	ἑαυτούς, -άς, -α	14

<b>then (160)</b>	τότε	33
<b>there (105)</b>	ἐκεῖ	32
<b>therefore (499)</b>	οὖν	9
<b>thick</b>	παχύς, παχεῖα, παχύ	36
<b>thief, robber (16)</b>	κλέπτης, ὁ	26
<b>think, I (15)</b>	νομίζω, νομίσω, ἐνόμισα	30
<b>third (41)</b>	τρίτος, τρίτη, τρίτον	9
<b>this (1387)</b>	οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο	14
<b>thoughtful, prudent, wise (14)</b>	φρόνιμος, -ον	37
<b>threaten, I (2)</b>	ἀπειλέω, ἀπειλήσω, ἠπειλήσα	28
<b>throat (1)</b>	λάρυγξ, λάρυγγος, ὁ	32
<b>throne, seat (62)</b>	θρόνος, ὁ	14
<b>through (gen) (667)</b>	διά	9
<b>throw out, I (81)</b>	ἐκβάλλω	11
<b>throw stones, I; pelt with stones, I</b>	λιθοβολέω, λιθοβολήσω, ἐλιθοβόλησα	19
<b>throw, I (122)</b>	βάλλω, βαλῶ, ἔβαλον	2
<b>throw, I (8)</b>	ρίπτω, ρίψω, ἐ(ρ)ριψα	39
<b>thymself (43)</b>	σεαυτόν, -ήν	14
<b>time, season, opportunity (85)</b>	καιρός ὁ, καιροῦ	16
<b>to beside (acc) (194)</b>	παρά, παρ'	9
<b>to, towards (acc) (700)</b>	πρός	9
<b>today (41)</b>	σήμερον	21
<b>tomb, monument</b>	μνήμα, μνήματος, τό	41
<b>tomb, sepulchre (41)</b>	μνημεῖον, τό	13
<b>tomorrow (14)</b>	αὔριον	13
<b>tomorrow (17)</b>	ἐπαὔριον	13
<b>tongue, language (50)</b>	γλῶσσα ἢ	12
<b>torment, I, torture, I (12)</b>	βασανίζω, βασανίσω, ἐβασάνισα	20
<b>touch, I (39)</b>	ἄπτομαι, ἄψομαι, ἠψάμην	25
<b>towards (acc) (890)</b>	ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	9
<b>tower (4)</b>	πύργος, ὁ	25
<b>tradition (13)</b>	παράδοσις ἢ, παραδόσεως	35
<b>traitor (3)</b>	προδότης, ὁ	27

<b>travel, I (1)</b>	ὁδεύω, ὁδεύσω, ὠδευσα	23
<b>treasury (17)</b>	θησαυρός, ὁ	21
<b>tree (25)</b>	δένδρον, τό	7
<b>tribulation trouble, hardship (45)</b>	θλίψις ἢ, θλίψεως	35
<b>trophy</b>	τροπαῖον τό	41
<b>trouble, I; disturb, I (17)</b>	ταράσσω, ταράζω, ἐτάραξα	16
<b>true (26)</b>	ἀληθής, ἀληθές	36
<b>trumpet (11)</b>	σάλπιγξ, σάλπιγγος, ὁ	32
<b>truth, truthfulness (109)</b>	ἀλήθεια ἢ	13
<b>try, I; attempt, I (38)</b>	πειράζω, πειράσω, ἐπίρασα	23
<b>turn around (36)</b>	ἐπιστρέφω, ἐπιστρέψω, ἐπέστρεψα	36
<b>turn away, I (9)</b>	ἀποστρέφω, ἀποστρέψω, ἀπέστρεψα	35
<b>turn, I (22)</b>	στρέφω, στρέψω, ἔστρεψα	30
<b>turn, I (9)</b>	τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα	24
<b>Uu</b>		
<b>unclean (32)</b>	ἀκάθαρτος, -ον	8
<b>under (acc) (220)</b>	ὑπό, ὑπ', ὑφ'	9
<b>understand, I (1)</b>	καταμαθάνω, καταμαθήσομαι, κατέμαθον	28
<b>unrighteousness (25)</b>	ἀδικία, ἢ	11
<b>until, as far as (gen) (40)</b>	ἕως	9
<b>up (acc) (12)</b>	ἀνά	9
<b>up to, in the time of (gen) (890)</b>	ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	9
<b>upon or at (dat) (890)</b>	ἐπι, ἐπ', ἐφ'	9
<b>urge, I; exhort, I; comfort, I, encourage, I (108)</b>	παρακαλέω, παρακάλεσα, παρακέλεσα	16
<b>Used as a personal pronoun: 'He, she, it'.</b>	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	15
<b>Used as an emphasising pronoun 'himself, herself, itself'.</b>	αὐτός, αὐτή, αὐτό	15

<b>Used as an identical adjective meaning 'same'</b>	αὐτος, αὐτή, αὐτό	15	<b>who, that, what</b>	ὅς, ἥ, ὅ	20
<b>Vv</b>			<b>Who? Which? (152)</b>	ὅστις; ὅτι;	40
<b>vain (6)</b>	μάταιος, -αία, -αιον	39	<b>Who? Which? (555)</b>	τίς; τί;	40
<b>vessel (23)</b>	σκεῦος, σκεύους	τό, 34	<b>whole, all (109)</b>	ὅλος -ή -όν	12, 14
<b>village (27)</b>	κώμη, ἡ	6	<b>wicked, evil (78)</b>	πονηρός, -ή, -όν	40
<b>vine (9)</b>	ἄμπελος ἡ	32	<b>widow (26)</b>	χήρα, ἡ	5
<b>vineyard (23)</b>	ἀμπελών, ἀμπελῶνος, ὁ	32	<b>will (62)</b>	θέλημα, θελήματος, τό	34
<b>virgin, maiden (15)</b>	παρθένος, ἡ	22	<b>wind (31)</b>	ἀνέμος ὁ	13
<b>virtue (5)</b>	ἀρετή, ἡ	29	<b>wine (34)</b>	οἶνος, ὁ	7
<b>visit, I</b>	φοιτάω, φοιτήσω, ἐφοίτησα	21	<b>wise (20)</b>	σοφός, -ή, -όν	8
<b>voice (139)</b>	φωνή, ἡ	12	<b>wish, I; want, I (208)</b>	θέλω, θελήσω, ἐθέλησα	23
<b>voice, sound (2)</b>	φθόγγος, ὁ	13	<b>wish, I; want, I</b>	ἐθέλω, ἐθέλησω, ἠθέλησα	23
<b>Ww</b>			<b>with (dat) (128)</b>	σύν	9
<b>wage, reward (29)</b>	μισθός, ὁ, μισθοῦ	7	<b>with (gen) (469)</b>	μετα, μετ', μεθ'	9
<b>walk, I; walk around, I (95)</b>	περιπατέω, περιπατήσω, περιεπάτησα	11	<b>withdraw, I (4)</b>	ἀποχωρέω, ἀποχωρήσω, ἀπεχώρησα	34
<b>walker, one who walks</b>	βαδίζων, βαδίζοντος, ὁ	36	<b>within (2)</b>	ἐντός	34
<b>wall (9)</b>	τεῖχος, τείχους, τό	34	<b>without (4)</b>	ἄνευ	13
<b>wander, I (39)</b>	πλανάω, πλανήσω, ἐπλάνησα	10	<b>witness (35)</b>	μάρτυς, μάρτυρος, ὁ	32
<b>wash, I (13)</b>	νίπτω, νίψω, ἔνιψα	25	<b>woman, wife (215)</b>	γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ,	32
<b>washer, baptiser, Baptist (12)</b>	βαπτιστής, ὁ	11	<b>wondrous, marvellous (6)</b>	θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν	13
<b>water (76)</b>	ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, τό	34	<b>wood (3)</b>	ξύλον, τό	29
<b>wear, I, put on, I (27)</b>	ἐνδύω, ἐνδύσω, ἐνέδυσα	14	<b>word, speech, message; book, volume (330)</b>	λόγος, ὁ	6
<b>well-born, noble (3)</b>	εὐγενής, εὐγενές	36	<b>word, thing (68)</b>	ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό	34
<b>When?</b>	ὅποτε;	40	<b>work (169)</b>	ἔργον τό	16
<b>When? (17)</b>	πότε;	40	<b>work, I (40)</b>	ἐργάζομαι, ἐργάσομαι, ἡργασάμην	25
<b>Whence? (1)</b>	ὁπόθεν;	40	<b>workman (16)</b>	ἐργάτης, ὁ, ἐργάτου	5
<b>Whence? (27)</b>	πόθεν;	40	<b>world, mankind, earth; adornment, decoration (186)</b>	κόσμος, ὁ	7
<b>Where? (47)</b>	ποῦ;	40	<b>worse</b>	κακίων	37
<b>Where? (82)</b>	ὁποῦ;	40	<b>worse (11)</b>	χείρων	37
<b>wherefore, for what reason, because (23)</b>	διότι	36	<b>worship, I (60)</b>	προσκυνέω, προσκυνήσω, προσεκύνησα	11
<b>whether ... or ... (1)</b>	πότερον ... ἢ	40	<b>worship, I; cry, I (21)</b>	λατρεύω, λατρεύσω, ἐλάτρευσα	22
<b>white (25)</b>	λευκός -ή -όν	12			
<b>Whither?</b>	ὁποῖ;	40			
<b>Whither?</b>	ποῖ;	40			

<b>worship, I; honour with pious awe, I (10)</b>	σέβομαι, -, ἐσέφθην	36
<b>worst</b>	κάκιστος	37
<b>worst</b>	χείριστος	37
<b>worthy (6)</b>	ἄξιος, -α, -ον	20
<b>write, I, engrave, I, inscribe, I, record, I (191)</b>	γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα	2
<b>written document, scripture (50)</b>	γραφή, ἡ	4
<b>Xx</b>		
<b>Yy</b>		
<b>year (14)</b>	ἐνιαυτός, ὁ	9
<b>year (49)</b>	ἔτος, τό, ἔτους	34
<b>yesterday (3)</b>	ἐχθές	40
<b>youth, young man (4)</b>	νεανίας, ὁ	5
<b>Zz</b>		



## Proper names

### 46.1 Greek to English

<b>Ἀθηναῖος ὁ</b> , Ἀθηναίου	Athenian (2)	11
<b>Αἰσχύλος ὁ</b> , Αἰσχύλου	Aeschylus	31
<b>Βαρναβᾶς, ὁ</b> , Βαρναβᾶ	Barnabus (28)	26
<b>Εγλωμ</b>	Eglon	37
<b>Ἕλληνας ὁ</b> , Ἕλληνας	Greek (26)	32
<b>Ἐφεσῖος, ὁ</b> , Ἐφεσίου	Ephesian (5)	16
<b>Ἰησοῦς, ὁ</b> , Ἰησοῦ	Jesus	6
<b>Ἰούδας, ὁ</b> , Ἰούδα	Judas (44)	26
<b>Ἰωάννης, ὁ</b> , Ἰωάννου	John	16
<b>Κορινθῖος, ὁ</b>	Corinthian (3)	17
<b>Μαρία, ἡ</b>	Mary	19
<b>Μάρκος ὁ</b> , Μάρκου	Mark	12
<b>Μωϋσῆς, ὁ</b>	Moses	24
<b>Ξενοφών, ὁ</b> , Ξενοφόντος	Xenophon	42
<b>Παῦλος, ὁ</b> , Παύλου	Paul	7
<b>Πέτρος, ὁ</b> , Πέτρου	Peter	7
<b>Πιλάτος, ὁ</b> , Πιλάτου	Pilate (52)	11
<b>Σαούλ, ὁ</b> , Σαούλ	Saul	26
<b>Σατανᾶς ὁ</b> , Σατανᾶ	Satan (36)	26
<b>Σίλας, ὁ</b> , Σίλα	Silas (13)	34
<b>Σίμων ὁ</b> , Σίμωνος	Simon (46)	32
<b>Στέφανος, ὁ</b> , Στέφανου	Stephen (7)	7
<b>Τρώς, Τρωός, ὁ</b>	Trojan	36
<b>Τύραννος, ὁ</b> , Τυράννου	Tyrannus (1)	15
<b>Φαρισαῖος, ὁ</b> , Φαρισαίου	Pharisee	7
<b>Χριστιανός, ὁ</b>	Christian (3)	30
<b>Χριστός, ὁ</b> , Χριστοῦ	Christ (529)	9

### 46.2 English to Greek

Aeschylus	<b>Αἰσχύλος, ὁ</b>	31
Athenian (2)	<b>Ἀθηναῖος ὁ</b> , Ἀθηναίου	11
Barnabus (28)	<b>Βαρναβᾶς, ὁ</b> , Βαρναβᾶ	26
Christ (529)	<b>Χριστός, ὁ</b> , Χριστοῦ	9
Christian (3)	<b>Χριστιανός, ὁ</b>	30
Corinthian (3)	<b>Κορινθῖος, ὁ</b> , Κορινθίου	17
Eglon	<b>Εγλωμ</b>	37

Ephesian (5)	<b>Ἐφέσιος, ὁ, Ἐφεσίου</b>	16
Greek (26)	<b>Ἕλλην, ὁ, Ἕλληνας</b>	32
Jesus	<b>Ἰησοῦς, ὁ, Ἰησοῦ</b>	6
John	<b>Ἰωάννης, ὁ, Ἰωάννου</b>	16
Judas (44)	<b>Ἰούδας, ὁ, Ἰούδα</b>	26
Mark	<b>Μάρκος, ὁ, Μάρκου</b>	12
Mary	<b>Μαρία, ἡ</b>	19
Moses	<b>Μωϋσῆς, ὁ</b>	30
Paul	<b>Παῦλος, ὁ, Παύλου</b>	7
Peter	<b>Πέτρος, ὁ, Πέτρου</b>	7
Pharisee	<b>Φαρισαῖος, ὁ, Φαρισαίου</b>	7
Pilate	<b>Πιλάτος, ὁ, Πιλάτου</b>	11
Satan (36)	<b>Σατανᾶς, ὁ, Σατανᾶ</b>	26
Saul	<b>Σαούλ, ὁ, Σαούλ</b>	26
Silas (13)	<b>Σίλας, ὁ, Σίλα</b>	34
Simon (46)	<b>Σίμων, ὁ, Σίμωνος</b>	32
Stephen (7)	<b>Στέφανος, ὁ, Στέφανου</b>	7
Tyrannus (1)	<b>Τύραννος, Τυράννου</b>	15
Xenophon	<b>Ξενοφών, ὁ, Ξενοφόντος</b>	42
Trojan	<b>Τρώς, Τρωός, ὁ</b>	36



## Place names

### 47.1 Greek to English

<b>Ἀθῆναι, αἱ</b>	Athens (4)	12
<b>Αἴγυπτος, ἡ</b>	Egypt (19)	13
<b>Ἀντιόχεια, ἡ</b>	Antioch	30
<b>Γαλατία, ἡ</b>	Galatia (4)	25
<b>Γαλιλαία, ἡ</b>	Galilee	30
<b>Δαμασκός, ὁ</b>	Damascus (17)	37
<b>Ἔφεσος, ὁ</b>	Ephesus (17)	15
<b>Ἰεριχώ, ἡ</b>	Jericho (7)	14
<b>Ἱεροσόλυμα, τὰ</b>	Jerusalem	10
<b>Ἱερουσαλήμ, ἡ</b>	Jerusalem	10
<b>Ἰορδάνης, ὁ</b>	Jordan (15)	37
<b>Ἰσραήλ, ὁ</b>	Israel	7
<b>Καππαδοκία, ἡ</b>	Cappadocia (2)	25
<b>Κιλικία, ἡ</b>	Cilicia (8)	34
<b>Κόρινθος, ὁ</b>	Corinth (7)	17
<b>Κρήτη, ἡ</b>	Crete	30
<b>Κύπρος ἡ, Κύπρου</b>	Cyprus (5)	26
<b>Μυκῆναι, αἱ</b>	Mycenae	40
<b>Ῥώμη, ἡ</b>	Rome	30

### 47.2 English to Greek

Antioch	<b>Ἀντιόχεια, ἡ</b>	30
Athens (4)	<b>Ἀθῆναι, αἱ</b>	12
Cappadocia (2)	<b>Καππαδοκία, ἡ</b>	25
Cilicia (8)	<b>Κιλικία, ἡ</b>	34
Corinth (7)	<b>Κόρινθος, ὁ</b>	17
Crete	<b>Κρήτη, ἡ</b>	30
Cyprus (5)	<b>Κύπρος ἡ, Κύπρου</b>	26
Damascus (17)	<b>Δαμασκός, ὁ</b>	37
Egypt (19)	<b>Αἴγυπτος, ἡ</b>	13
Ephesus (17)	<b>Ἔφεσος, ὁ</b>	15
Galatia (4)	<b>Γαλατία, ἡ</b>	25
Galilee	<b>Γαλιλαία, ἡ</b>	30
Israel	<b>Ἰσραήλ, ὁ</b>	7
Jericho (7)	<b>Ἰεριχώ, ἡ</b>	14
Jerusalem	<b>Ἱεροσόλυμα, τὰ</b>	10

Jerusalem	Ἰερουσαλήμ, ἡ	10
Jordan (15)	Ἰορδάνης, ὁ	37
Mycenae	Μυκῆναι, αἱ	40
Rome	Ῥώμη, ἡ	30

## Excerpts from the New Testament

### 48.1 Introduction

The object of this section is to provide a companion to the Lessons in this book from 9 – 31. It is difficult to read continuous passages from the New Testament until one has tackled Participles which, unlike English but like Latin (only more so) decline in Greek according to number, case and gender. Studying Participles can only be accomplished much later in the course, since the declension of Participles relies upon a knowledge of the Third Declension of both nouns and adjectives, and the Third Declension can be a bit confusing at first. Another point is that the writers of the New Testament did not frame their use of grammar to accommodate learners of Greek 2000 years later.

From the point of view of the study of the original text it is an unfortunate fact that because the New Testament is so familiar to many people in the Western world, even to those who are not Christians and possibly even *anti-Christian*, that one can imagine one is reading Greek when in fact one is merely remembering one's favourite translation. For these reasons, continuous passages, *unadapted* from the New Testament are only included in this course from Lesson 45 onwards, after the study of Participles.

Nevertheless, recognising that students will wish to read at least *some* parts of the New Testament as soon as possible, this collection of very short extracts has been put together so as to give the reassurance (a reassurance which is much appreciated by beginners) that one can tackle at least short extracts.

Some very well-known passages have also been included, these are:

- the Lord's prayer, from both Matthew and Luke
- the Beatitudes, from Matthew
- the Grace from 2 Corinthians
- Nunc Dimittis from Luke
- Psalm 22 from the Septuagint

Translations have *not* been given only references.

The excerpts for lessons 23 – 31 have been included in this volume for ease of reference.

### 48.2 The Lord's Prayer

#### 48.2.1 Matthew

Πάτερ ἡμῶν ὁ ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς·  
ἁγιασθήτω τὸ ὄνομά σου·  
ἐλθέτω ἡ βασιλεία σου·  
γενηθέτω τὸ θέλημά σου·  
ὡς ἐν οὐρανῷ καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς·  
τὸν ἄρτον ἡμῶν τὸν ἐπιούσιον δὸς ἡμῖν σήμερον·  
καὶ ἄφες ἡμῖν τὰ ὀφειλήματα ἡμῶν,  
ὡς καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀφήκαμεν τοῖς ὀφειλέταις ἡμῶν·  
καὶ μὴ εἰσενέγκῃς ἡμᾶς εἰς πειρασμόν,  
ἀλλὰ ῥῦσαι ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τοῦ πονηροῦ.  
(ὅτι σοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ βασιλεία καὶ ἡ δύναμις καὶ ἡ δόξα εἰς τοὺς αἰῶνας ἀμήν)

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 6:9 – 13

### 48.2.2 Luke

Πάτερ,  
ἀγιασθήτω τὸ ὄνομά σου·  
ἐλθέτω ἡ βασιλεία σου·  
τὸν ἄρτον ἡμῶν τὸν ἐπιούσιον δίδου ἡμῖν τὸ καθ' ἡμέραν·  
καὶ ἄφες ἡμῖν τὰς ἀμαρτίας ἡμῶν,  
καὶ γὰρ αὐτοὶ ἀφίομεν παντὶ ὀφείλοντι ἡμῖν·  
καὶ μὴ εἰσενέγκῃς ἡμᾶς εἰς πειρασμόν,  
(ἀλλὰ ῥῦσαι ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τοῦ πονηροῦ)

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 11:2 – 4

### 48.3 The Beatitudes

Μακάριοι οἱ πτωχοὶ τῷ πνεύματι,  
ὅτι αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἡ βασιλεία τῶν οὐρανῶν.  
Μακάριοι οἱ πενθοῦντες,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ παρακληθήσονται..  
Μακάριοι οἱ πραεῖς,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ κληρονουμήσουσιν τὴν γῆν.  
Μακάριοι οἱ πεινῶντες καὶ διψῶντες τὴν δικαιοσύνην,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ χορτασθήσονται.  
Μακάριοι οἱ ἐλεήμονες,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ ἐλεηθήσονται  
Μακάριοι οἱ καθαποὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ τὸν θεὸν ὄψονται.  
Μακάριοι οἱ εἰρηνοποιοὶ ,  
ὅτι αὐτοὶ υἱοὶ θεοῦ κληθήσονται.  
Μακάριοι οἱ δεδιωγμένοι ἕνεκεν δικαιοσύνης,  
ὅτι αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἡ βασιλεία τῶν οὐρανῶν  
Μακάριοί ἐστε,  
ὅταν ὀνειδίσωσιν ὑμᾶς καὶ διώξωσιν καὶ εἴπωσιν πᾶν πονηρὸν καθ' ὑμῶν ψευδόμενοι ἕνεκεν ἐμοῦ.  
χαίrete καὶ ἀγαλλιᾶσθε. ὅτι ὁ μισθὸς ὑμῶν πολὺς ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς· οὕτως γὰρ ἐδίωξαν τοὺς προφῆτας τοὺς  
πρὸ ὑμῶν.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 5:3 – 11

### 48.4 The Grace

Ἡ χάρις τοῦ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ καὶ ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ ἡ κοινωνία τοῦ ἁγίου πνεύματος μετὰ πάντων  
ἡμῶν

Πρὸς Κορινθίους Β 13:13

### 48.5 Nunc Dimittis

νῦν ἀπολύεις τὸν δοῦλόν σου, δέσποτα,  
κατὰ τὸ ῥῆμά σου ἐν εἰρήνῃ·  
ὅτι εἶδον οἱ ὀφθαλμοί μου τὸ σωτήριόν σου,  
ὃ ἠτοίμησας κατὰ πρόσωπον πάντων τῶν λαῶν,

φῶς εἰς ἀποκάλυψιν ἐθνῶν  
καὶ δόξαν λαοῦ σου Ἰσραήλ.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 2:29 – 32

## 48.6 Psalm 22 from the LXX

1. Κύριος ποιμαίνει με, καὶ οὐδὲν με ὑστερήσει.
2. εἰς τόπον γλόης, ἐκεῖ με κατεσκήνωσεν,  
ἐπὶ ὕδατος ἀναπαύσεως ἐξέθρεψέν με,
3. τὴν ψυχὴν μου ἐπέστρεψεν,  
ὠδήγησέν με ἐπὶ τρίβους δικαιοσύνης  
ἕνεκεν τοῦ ὀνόματος αὐτοῦ.
4. ἐὰν γὰρ καὶ πορευθῶ ἐν μέσῳ σκιᾶς θανάτου  
οὐ φοβηθήσομαι κακά, ὅτι σὺ μέτ' ἐμοῦ εἶ·  
ἡ ράβδος σου καὶ ἡ βακτηρία σου, αὐταῖ με παρεκάλεσαν.
5. ἠτοίμασας ἐνώπιόν μου τράπεζαν ἐξ ἐναντίας τῶν θλιβόντων με·  
ἐλίπανας ἐν ἐλαίῳ τὴν κεφαλὴν μου  
καὶ τὸ ποτήριόν σου μεθύσκον ὡς κράτιστον.
6. καὶ τὸ ἔλεός σου καταδιώξεταιί με πάσας τὰς ἡμέρας τῆς ζωῆς μου  
καὶ τὸ κατοικεῖν με ἐν οἴκῳ κυρίου εἰς μακρότητα ἡμερῶν

## 48.7 Selected Passages

These passages are intended to be used with the Lessons noted.

### 48.7.1 Lesson 23

καὶ ἐκλεξάμενος ἀπ' αὐτῶν δώδεκα, οὓς καὶ ἀποστόλους ὠνομασεν.

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 6:13

Καὶ κατέπλευσαν εἰς τὴν χώραν τῶν Γερασηνῶν, ἣτις ἐστὶν ἀντιπέρα τῆς Γαλιλαίας

Κατὰ Λοῦκαν 8:26

### 48.7.2 Lesson 24

καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἐκεῖ ποιῆσαι οὐδεμίαν δύναμιν

Κατὰ Μάρκον 6:5

κύριε, θέλομεν τὸν Ἰσοῦν ἰδεῖν.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 12:21

### 48.7.3 Lesson 25

Καὶ ὁ λόγος σὰρξ ἐγένετο καὶ ἐσκήνωσεν ἐν ἡμῖν, καὶ ἐθεασάμεθα τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 1:14

ἦλθεν γὰρ Ἰωάννης μήτε ἐσθίων, μήτε πίνων, καὶ λέγουσιν· δαιμόνιον ἔχει

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 11:18

#### 48.7.4 Lesson 26

ὁ δὲ ἠρνήσατο ἔμπροσθεν πάντων λέγων· οὐκ οἶδα τί λέγεις.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 26:70

λέγει αὐτῇ Ἰησοῦς· μή μου ἄπτου.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 20:17

#### 48.7.5 Lesson 27

Συνγαλεσάμενος δὲ τοὺς δώδεκα ἔδωκεν αὐτοῖς δύναμιν καὶ ἐξουσίαν ἐπὶ πάντα δαιμόνια καὶ νόσους θεραπεύειν.

Κατὰ Λουκᾶν 9:1

εἶπεν κύριος τῷ κυρίῳ μου·

κάθου ἐκ δεξιῶν μου

ἕως ἂν θῶ τοὺς ἐχθρούς σου

ὑποκάτω τῶν ποδῶν σου.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 22:44

#### 48.7.6 Lesson 28

Καὶ παράγων εἶδεν ἄνθρωπον τυφλὸν ἐκ γενετῆς.

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 9:1

Οὐ γὰρ θέλομεν ὑμᾶς ἀγνεῖν, ἀδελφοί, ὑπὲρ τῆς θλίψεως ἡμῶν τῆς γενομένης ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ

Πρὸς Κορινθίους Β 1:8

#### 48.7.7 Lesson 29

Εἰσέλθατε διὰ τῆς στενῆς πύλης.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 7:13

ταῦτα δὲ εἰπὼν αὐτὸς ἔμειν ἐν τῇ Γαλιλαίᾳ

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 7:9

#### 48.7.8 Lesson 30

Καὶ ἔρχονται Σαδδουκαῖοι πρὸς αὐτὸν, οἵτινες λέγουσιν ἀναστάσιν μὴ εἶναι

Κατὰ Μάρκον 12:18

Ἦκούσατε ὅτι ἐρρέθη· ἀγαπήσεις τὸν πλησίον σου καὶ μισησεις τὸν ἐχθρόν σου.

Κατὰ Μαθθαῖον 5:43

#### 48.7.9 Lesson 31

Ὅταν ἔλθῃ ὁ παράκλητος ὃν ἐγὼ πέμψω ὑμῖν παρὰ τοῦ πατρός, τὸ πνεῦμα τῆς ἀληθείας

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 15:26

ἀπεκρίθη ὁ Ἰησοῦς· σὺ λέγεις ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐγὼ εἰμι

Κατὰ Ἰωάννην 19:37

## Index of Contents

### A

- 'Attic' Future, iv, 59, 63  
Adjectives, iv, vi, vii, viii, 2, 34, 51, 52, 55, 80, 101, 108, 118, 125, 127, 128, 129, 130, 134, 136, 137, 138, 141, 149, 152, 160, 207  
Comparative, vii, 134, 136, 137, 138, 140, 141  
Elative, vii, 141  
of one termination, vii, 125, 129, 130  
of three terminations, vii, 125, 128, 129  
of two terminations, vii, 125, 129  
Superlative, vii, 134, 136, 137, 138, 140, 141  
Adverbs, vii, ix, 108, 118, 128, 134, 136, 138, 140, 141, 142, 149, 160, 175, 176, 222  
Comparison, vii, 134, 141, 222

### C

- Consecutive Clauses, v, 78, 81, 83

### D

- Dative, v, ix, 39, 83, 91, 92, 109, 118, 119, 179, 186, 187

- Deponent Verbs, iii, 21, 23, 24, 26

### F

- Future Middle Tenses, iv, 59, 63

- Future Tenses, 59, 210

### H

- Hebrew Names, iii, 33, 39

### I

- Imperative, ii, iii, ix, x, 9, 16, 18, 26, 28, 35, 36, 37, 45, 47, 53, 146, 161, 162, 184, 188, 189, 193, 200, 202, 208, 209, 211, 212

- Indirect Speech, iv, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 83, 84, 177, 209

- Subordinate Clauses, iv, 68, 74

- Infinitive, ii, iii, iv, v, ix, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 9, 16, 17, 18, 26, 28, 35, 36, 37, 45, 47, 53, 71, 72, 74, 78, 81, 83, 163, 184, 188, 189, 192, 200, 205, 208, 209

- Articular, v, 78, 81

### M

- Middle Voice, iii, 4, 21, 24, 25, 34, 37, 47, 156, 201, 204, 218

### N

- Nouns, iv, v, vi, viii, 10, 23, 34, 45, 51, 52, 54, 61, 70, 80, 89, 90, 91, 98, 100, 105, 107, 108, 109, 115, 117, 119, 127, 136, 149, 151, 160, 174, 187, 207, 222

- Numbers, vi, vii, 125, 130

### P

- Parsing, iv, vi, viii, 51, 53, 97, 99, 148, 150

- Perfect, viii, 3, 13, 15, 28, 29, 72, 158, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 177, 188, 189, 191, 192, 193, 201, 204, 205, 208, 210, 212, 213, 222

- Pluperfect, viii, 13, 73, 158, 160, 161, 162, 166, 177, 188, 189, 201, 204, 208, 209, 212, 213, 222

- Principal Parts, ii, ix, 9, 13, 14, 15, 184, 189, 192

- Prolative Infinitive, 4, 5

- pronouns, vi, 72, 91, 115, 119

- Indefinite, vi, 115, 119, 187

- Interrogative, viii, ix, 115, 175, 176

- Purpose Clauses, v, 80, 81, 82

### Q

- Questions

- Deliberative, ix, 172, 175, 177

- Direct, i, viii, ix, 172, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 222

- Double, ix, 172, 175, 177, 179

- Indirect, iv, viii, ix, 5, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 83, 84, 172, 174, 176, 177, 178, 209, 222

### R

- Reduplication, viii, 158, 163, 164

### S

- Strong Aorist, ii, x, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 18, 35, 47, 64, 84, 164, 188, 189, 190, 207, 209, 210

- Strong Tenses, ii, 9, 11, 12

### T

- Temporal Clauses, v, 81, 82

- Third Declension, v, vii, 88, 91, 109, 125, 128, 258

- Dental Stems, v, 88, 93, 162

- Guttural Stems, v, 88, 92

Irregular, vi, vii, 91, 105, 109, 125, 129, 130, 140, 222

Labial Stems, v, 88, 92, 162

Liquids λ, ρ, v, 88, 93

Neuter, vi, 91, 105, 107, 109, 222

Stems in -vt, -κτ, v, 88, 93

ι and ευ, vi, 115, 118, 119

υ Stems, vi, 115, 118

V

Verbs, ii, iii, iv, v, vi, viii, ix, x, 2, 9, 13, 21, 23, 25, 29, 51, 52, 53, 59, 62, 64, 70, 73, 78, 80, 83, 90, 98, 99, 108, 117, 127, 136, 146, 149, 150, 160, 163, 174, 184, 186, 190, 192, 198, 207, 208, 211, 222

Compound, ix, 184, 192

Impersonal, v, 78, 80, 83

Indicative, iii, iv, ix, 18, 25, 35, 36, 37, 45, 47, 53, 71, 72, 73, 74, 155, 177, 187, 188, 189, 192, 200, 202, 203, 208, 209, 211, 212, 214

Intransitive, ix, 184, 186, 190, 191, 194

Liquid and Nasal, iv, 59, 62, 63, 64, 210

Moods, x, 35, 207, 208

Optative, x, 71, 74, 177, 200, 202, 208, 209, 211, 213, 214

Participle, 208

Subjunctive, x, 155, 177, 200, 202, 203, 208, 209, 211, 213, 214

Tenses, x, 11, 12, 207, 208

The augment, x, 207, 208

Transitive, ix, 184, 186, 190, 191, 193

## W

Weak Aorist, ii, 9, 13, 15, 18, 36, 47, 64, 162, 188, 189, 190, 192, 210

## Greek Index

### Γ

γίνομαι, v, 78, 80, 84, 226, 243

### Δ

δει, v, 1, 5, 21, 29, 51, 56, 58, 78, 80, 83, 84, 87, 95, 97, 98, 102, 112, 121, 132, 146, 148, 149, 154, 158, 167, 168, 180, 181, 195, 196, 198, 215, 216, 226, 243

δίδωμι, iii, viii, 35, 43, 45, 47, 48, 50, 158, 166, 226, 242

### I

ἴσθημι, ix, 4, 35, 117, 184, 186, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 222

### M

-μι verbs, 33

### O

οἶδα, viii, 158, 160, 167, 168, 231, 244, 260

ὄτι, 74, 76, 78, 87

### T

τίθημι, iii, viii, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 43, 48, 158, 166, 168, 195, 235, 246



## Document Control

Document Version Control	
Document Classification:	Language Courses
Document Title	ἐροῦμεν – Koine Greek Course Volume 2
Author:	Steve Watkins
Reviewer:	

Document History			
Issue Number	Date	Issued by	Change Description
0.1	15 Apr 2018	Steve Watkins	Initial Draft of Volume 2
0.2	21 May 2018	Steve Watkins	Numerous minor corrections
0.3	9 Jul 2018	Steve Watkins	Further minor corrections
0.4	1 Oct 2018	Steve Watkins	Revision of lesson 36
1.0	18 Feb 2019	Steve Watkins	Revision of format and renumbering
1.1	31 Jul 2019	Steve Watkins	Correction of errors, reformatting, renumbering
1.2	29 Aug 2019	Steve Watkins	Corrections to questions
1.3	19 May 2020	Steve Watkins	Minor updates and complete Lessons 26 & 27
1.4	29 Mar 2021	Steve Watkins	Final updates
1.5	30 Jun 2021	Steve Watkins	Further minor corrections
1.6	8 Mar 2022	Steve Watkins	Reformat and revision
1.7	3 Apr 2022	Steve Watkins	Addition of Index of Contents
2.0	18 Jul 2023	Steve Watkins	Updates and Correction